

Vesta



2012 OWNERS MANUAL
2013 OWNERS MANUAL

MONACO RV MOTORHOME LIMITED WARRANTY – 2012

WHAT THE PERIOD OF COVERAGE IS:

This Limited Warranty provided by Monaco RV, LLC (“Warrantor”) for your Monaco® or Holiday Rambler® motorhome covers those components, assemblies and systems of your new motorhome not excluded under the section “What The Warranty Does Not Cover” and when sold by an authorized dealer, for twelve (12) months from the original retail purchase date or the first 24,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first. However, this Limited Warranty covers the internal steel or aluminum structural support frames inside the walls and roof (excluding slide-outs) for sixty (60) months from the original retail purchase date or the first 50,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first. If you use your motorhome for any rental, commercial or business purposes whatsoever, the Limited Warranty provided by Warrantor covers your new motorhome when sold by an authorized dealer for ninety (90) days from the original retail purchase date or the first 24,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first, and it covers the internal steel or aluminum structural support frames inside the walls and roof (excluding slide-outs) for twelve (12) months from the original retail purchase date or the first 24,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first. A conclusive presumption that your motorhome has been used for commercial and/or business purposes arises if you have filed any tax or other form claiming any business use, ownership, or tax benefit related to your motorhome. The above Limited Warranty coverage periods apply to all owners, including subsequent owners, of the motorhome. However, a subsequent owner must submit a warranty transfer form by filing the form and paying the transfer fee. A subsequent owner’s warranty coverage period is the remaining balance of the warranty coverage period the prior owner was entitled to under this Limited Warranty. Warranty transfer forms can be obtained by contacting the Customer Relations Department. There is a one time, \$250 processing fee for the transfer.

LIMITATION AND DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES:

IMPLIED WARRANTIES, IF ANY, ARISING BY WAY OF STATE LAW, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY AND ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE TERM OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY AND ARE LIMITED IN SCOPE OF COVERAGE TO THOSE PORTIONS OF THE MOTORHOME COVERED BY THIS LIMITED WARRANTY. WARRANTOR DISCLAIMS ALL IMPLIED AND EXPRESS WARRANTIES, INCLUDING THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY AND THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ON COMPONENTS AND APPLIANCES EXCLUDED FROM COVERAGE AS SET FORTH BELOW. There is no warranty of any nature made by Warrantor beyond that contained in this Limited Warranty. No person has authority to enlarge, amend or modify this Limited Warranty. The dealer is not the Warrantor’s agent but is an independent entity. Warrantor is not responsible for any undertaking, representation or warranty made by any dealer or other person beyond those expressly set forth in this Limited Warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you.

WHAT THE WARRANTY COVERS:

Warrantor’s Limited Warranty covers defects in the manufacture of your motorhome and defects in materials used to manufacture your motorhome. “Defect” means the failure of the motorhome and/or the materials used to assemble the motorhome to conform to Warrantor’s design and manufacturing specifications and tolerances. Also see the section “What the Warranty Does Not Cover” set out below.

WHAT WE WILL DO TO CORRECT PROBLEMS:

Warrantor’s sole and exclusive obligation is to repair and/or replace, at its option, any covered defect if: (1) you notify Warrantor or one of its authorized servicing dealers of the defect within the warranty coverage period and within five (5) days of discovering the defect; and (2) you deliver your Motorhome to Warrantor or Warrantor’s authorized servicing dealer at your cost and expense. It is reasonable to expect some service items to occur during the warranty period. The performance of warranty repairs shall not extend the original warranty coverage period. Further, any performance of repairs after the warranty coverage period has expired or any performance of repairs to component parts and appliances that are excluded from coverage shall be considered “good will” repairs, which shall not alter the express terms of this Limited Warranty. If the repair or replacement remedy fails to successfully cure a defect after Warrantor received a reasonable opportunity to cure the defect(s), your sole and exclusive remedy shall be limited to Warrantor paying you the cost of having an independent third party perform repair(s) to the defect(s). Warrantor may use new and/or remanufactured parts and/or components of substantially equal quality to complete any repair.

Imperfections and/or damage to interior and exterior surfaces, trim, upholstery and other appearance items may occur at the factory during manufacture, during delivery of the motorhome to the selling dealer or on the selling dealer’s lot. Normally, any such imperfections are detected and corrected at the factory or by the selling dealer during the inspection process performed by the Warrantor and the selling dealer. If, however, you discover any such imperfection or damage when you take delivery of the motorhome, you must notify your dealer or Warrantor within thirty (30) days of the date of purchase to have repairs performed at no cost to you in accordance with this Limited Warranty. If not reported within this time, such imperfections are conclusively presumed to be the result of normal wear and tear.

If a servicing dealer is unable or unwilling to solve a problem you are convinced is covered by the Limited Warranty, or that concerns the safety of your motorhome, or that may involve local consumer protection or “lemon” laws, then you **must**, to the extent permitted by law, **notify Warrantor directly in writing** of the failure to successfully repair the defect(s) so that Warrantor can become directly involved in performing a successful repair.

HOW TO GET SERVICE:

For warranty service simply contact one of Warrantor’s authorized service centers for an appointment, then deliver your motorhome (at your expense) to the service center. If you need assistance in locating an authorized warranty service facility, contact Warrantor’s Warranty Department (1-877-466-6226).

HOW TO GET SERVICE (cont'd):

The Warrantor's mailing address is:

**91320 Coburg Industrial Way
Coburg, Oregon 97408**

The "Acknowledgement of Receipt of Warranty/Production Information" form must be returned to Warrantor promptly upon purchase to assure proper part replacement or repair of your towable product. Failure to return the "Acknowledgement of Receipt of Warranty/Production Information" form will not affect your rights under the Limited Warranty so long as you can furnish proof of purchase.

In the event the motorhome is inoperative due to malfunction of a warranted part, Warrantor will pay the cost of having the motorhome towed to an authorized repair facility provided you notify Warrantor prior to incurring the towing charges. Because Warrantor does not control the scheduling of service work by authorized servicing dealers, you may encounter some delay in scheduling and/or in completion of the repairs.

WHAT THE WARRANTY DOES NOT COVER:

This Limited Warranty does not cover: any motorhome sold or registered outside of the United States or Canada; exterior fiberglass and gel coat; items which are added or changed after the motorhome leaves Warrantor's possession; items that are working as designed but which you are unhappy with because of the design; normal wear and usage, such as fading or discoloration of fabrics, or the effects of moisture inside the motorhome; defacing, scratching, dents and chips on any surface or fabric of the motorhome; owner maintenance, including by way of example wheel alignments and resealing exterior sealant areas; the automotive chassis and power train, including, by way of example the engine, drivetrain, steering and handling, braking, wheel balance, muffler, tires, tubes, batteries and gauges; appliances and components covered by their own manufacturer's warranty including, by way of example the microwave, refrigerator, ice maker, stove, oven, generator, roof air conditioners, hydraulic jacks, VCR, television(s), water heater, furnace, stereo, radio, compact disc player, washer, dryer, inverter and cellular phone; or flaking, peeling and chips or other defects or damage in or to the exterior or finish caused by road hazards, airborne pollutants, salt, tree sap, hail, or any other cause. Component part and appliance manufacturers issue limited warranties covering portions of the motorhome not covered by the Limited Warranty issued by Warrantor. To learn more on what specific component parts and appliances are excluded from the Limited Warranty issued by Warrantor please contact your selling dealership or Warrantor directly or review the warranty packet inside the motorhome.

EVENTS DISCHARGING WARRANTOR FROM OBLIGATION UNDER WARRANTY:

Misuse or neglect, accidents, unauthorized alteration, failure to provide reasonable and necessary maintenance (see Owner's Manual), damage caused by off road use, collision, fire, theft, vandalism, explosions, overloading in excess of rated capacities or other utilization of the product contrary to its design instructions or intended uses, and odometer tampering shall discharge Warrantor from any express or implied warranty obligation to repair any resulting defect.

DISCLAIMER OF CONSEQUENTIAL AND INCIDENTAL DAMAGES:

THE ORIGINAL PURCHASER OF THE MOTORHOME AND ANY PERSON TO WHOM THE MOTORHOME IS TRANSFERRED, AND ANY PERSON WHO IS AN INTENDED OR UNINTENDED USER OR BENEFICIARY OF THE MOTORHOME, SHALL NOT BE ENTITLED TO RECOVER FROM WARRANTOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY DEFECT IN THE MOTORHOME, INCLUDING BY WAY OF EXAMPLE FUEL AND TRANSPORTATION EXPENSES TO DELIVER THE PRODUCT TO THE SERVICING DEALER, HOTEL ROOMS, LOST WAGES AND MOISTURE DAMAGE SUCH AS MOLD AND MILDEW. THE EXCLUSION OF CONSEQUENTIAL AND INCIDENTAL DAMAGES SHALL BE DEEMED INDEPENDENT OF, AND SHALL SURVIVE, ANY FAILURE OF THE ESSENTIAL PURPOSE OF ANY LIMITED REMEDY. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of consequential or incidental damages, so the above exclusions may not apply to you.

LEGAL REMEDIES:

THESE LIMITED WARRANTIES ARE NOT INTENDED TO, AND DO NOT "EXTEND TO FUTURE PERFORMANCE." ANY ACTION SEEKING REMEDIES FOR BREACH OF WARRANTY OR SEEKING TO ENFORCE THIS LIMITED WARRANTY OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES SHALL NOT BE COMMENCED MORE THAN ONE (1) YEAR AFTER THE EARLIER OF: (i) THE EXPIRATION OF THE WARRANTY COVERAGE PERIOD DESIGNATED ABOVE; (ii) THE FAILURE OF THE WARRANTOR TO REPAIR THE DEFECT AT ISSUE; OR, (iii) THE DATE ON WHICH THE BUYER'S ACTION ACCRUED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW. UNLESS PROHIBITED BY LAW, THE PERFORMANCE OF REPAIRS SHALL NOT SUSPEND THIS LIMITATIONS PERIOD FROM EXPIRING. THESE TERMS AND ALL WRITTEN AND IMPLIED WARRANTY DISPUTES BETWEEN WARRANTOR AND PURCHASER SHALL BE GOVERNED BY THE SUBSTANTIVE LAWS OF THE STATE OF OREGON, WITHOUT REGARD TO CONFLICTS OF LAW RULES. Some states do not allow the reduction in the statute of limitations, so the above reduction in the statute of limitations may not apply to you.

THIS WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS. YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS, WHICH VARY FROM STATE TO STATE.

LARGER PRINT VERSION AVAILABLE WITHIN THE OWNERS MANUAL AND UPON REQUEST ADDRESSED TO YOUR SELLING DEALER OR WARRANTOR'S WARRANTY DEPARTMENT.

ROADMASTER® CHASSIS LIMITED WARRANTY – 2012

WHAT THE PERIOD OF COVERAGE IS:

This Limited Warranty provided by Monaco RV, LLC (“Warrantor”) covers the components, assemblies and systems of your Roadmaster® Chassis not excluded under the section “What The Warranty Does Not Cover” for thirty-six (36) months from the original retail purchase date or the first 50,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first. If you use the Roadmaster Chassis that your motorhome is mounted upon for any rental, commercial or business purposes whatsoever, this Limited Warranty covers your new Roadmaster Chassis for ninety (90) days from the original retail purchase date or the first 24,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first. A conclusive presumption that the Roadmaster Chassis has been used for commercial and/or business purposes arises if you have filed any tax or other form claiming any business use, ownership, or tax benefit related to your motorhome. This Limited Warranty applies to all owners, including subsequent owners, of the Roadmaster Chassis. However, a subsequent owner must submit a warranty transfer form by filing the form and paying the transfer fee. A subsequent owner’s warranty coverage period is the remaining balance of the warranty coverage period the prior owner was entitled to under this Limited Warranty. Warranty transfer forms can be obtained by contacting the Customer Relations Department. There is a one time, \$250 processing fee for the transfer.

LIMITATION AND DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES:

IMPLIED WARRANTIES, IF ANY, ARISING BY WAY OF STATE LAW, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY AND ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE TERM OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY AND ARE LIMITED IN SCOPE OF COVERAGE TO THOSE PORTIONS OF THE CHASSIS COVERED BY THIS LIMITED WARRANTY. WARRANTOR DISCLAIMS ALL IMPLIED AND EXPRESS WARRANTIES, INCLUDING THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY AND THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ON COMPONENTS AND APPLIANCES EXCLUDED FROM COVERAGE AS SET FORTH BELOW. There is no warranty of any nature made by Warrantor beyond that contained in this Limited Warranty. No person has authority to enlarge, amend or modify this Limited Warranty. The dealer is not the Warrantor’s agent but is an independent entity. Warrantor is not responsible for any undertaking, representation or warranty made by any dealer or other person beyond those expressly set forth in this Limited Warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you.

WHAT THE WARRANTY COVERS:

Warrantor’s Limited Warranty covers defects in the manufacture of the Roadmaster Chassis and defects in materials used to manufacture the Roadmaster Chassis. “Defect” means the failure of the Roadmaster Chassis and/or the materials used to assemble the Roadmaster Chassis to conform to Warrantor’s design and manufacturing specifications and tolerances. Also see the section “What the Warranty Does Not Cover” set out below.

WHAT WE WILL DO TO CORRECT PROBLEMS:

Warrantor’s sole and exclusive obligation is to repair and/or replace, at its option, any covered defect if: (1) you notify Warrantor or one of its authorized servicing dealers of the defect within the warranty coverage period and within five (5) days of discovering the defect; and (2) you deliver your Roadmaster Chassis to Warrantor or Warrantor’s authorized servicing dealer at your cost and expense. It is reasonable to expect some service items to occur during the warranty period. The performance of warranty repairs shall not extend the original warranty coverage period. Further, any performance of repairs after the warranty coverage period has expired or any performance of repairs to component parts and appliances that are excluded from coverage shall be considered “good will” repairs, which shall not alter the express terms of this Limited Warranty. If the repair or replacement remedy fails to successfully cure a defect after Warrantor received a reasonable opportunity to cure the defect(s), your sole and exclusive remedy shall be limited to Warrantor paying you the cost of having an independent third party perform repair(s) to the defect(s). Warrantor may use new and/or remanufactured parts and/or components of substantially equal quality to complete any repairs.

Imperfections and/or damage to surfaces, trim, and other appearance items may occur at the factory during manufacture, during delivery of the motorhome to the selling dealer or on the selling dealer’s lot. Normally, any such damage is detected and corrected at the factory or by the selling dealer during the inspection process performed by the Warrantor and the selling dealer. If, however, you discover any such imperfection or damage when you take delivery of the motorhome, you must notify your dealer or Warrantor within five days of the date of purchase to have repairs performed at no cost to you in accordance with this Limited Warranty. If not reported within this time, such imperfections are conclusively presumed to be the result of normal wear and tear.

If a servicing dealer is unable or unwilling to solve a problem you are convinced is covered by the Limited Warranty, or that concerns the safety of your Roadmaster Chassis, or that may involve local consumer protection or “lemon” laws, then you **must**, to the extent permitted by law, **notify Warrantor directly in writing** of the failure to successfully repair the defect(s) so that Warrantor can become directly involved in performing a successful repair.

HOW TO GET SERVICE:

For warranty service simply contact one of Warrantor’s authorized service centers for an appointment, then deliver your Roadmaster Chassis (at your expense) to the service center. If you need assistance in locating an authorized warranty service facility, contact Warrantor’s Warranty Department (1-877-466-6226). The mailing address is:

**91320 Coburg Industrial Way
Coburg, Oregon 97408**

HOW TO GET SERVICE (cont'd):

In the event the Roadmaster Chassis is inoperative due to malfunction of a warranted part, Warrantor will pay the cost of having the motorhome towed to the nearest authorized repair facility provided you notify Warrantor prior to incurring the towing charges. Because Warrantor does not control the scheduling of service work by authorized servicing dealers, you may encounter some delay in scheduling and/or in the completion of the repairs.

WHAT THE WARRANTY DOES NOT COVER:

This Limited Warranty does not cover: any vehicle sold or registered outside the United States or Canada, modifications and alterations to the Roadmaster Chassis by others; the motorhome that is mounted upon the Roadmaster Chassis, including by way of example the motorhome manufacturer's design, manufacture, assembly and/or installation of the side walls, roof, windows, flooring, electrical system, plumbing system, LP-Gas system, appliances and slide outs; items that are working as designed but which you are unhappy with because of the design; normal wear and usage; routine maintenance, including by way of example wheel alignments; component parts covered by their own manufacturer's warranty, including by way of example the engine, radiator, transmission, tires, tubes, batteries, alternators, exhaust system and the emission control systems, leveling systems and their components, shocks, and HVAC systems and their components; and, flaking, peeling, rusting and chips or other defects or damage in or to the frame and frame cross members, whether caused by rocks or other road hazards, the environment, airborne pollutants, salt, or any other source. Component part manufacturers issue limited warranties covering portions of the Roadmaster Chassis not covered by the Limited Warranty issued by Warrantor. To learn more on what specific component parts are excluded from the Limited Warranty issued by Warrantor please contact your selling dealership or Warrantor directly or review the warranty packet inside the Motorhome.

EVENTS DISCHARGING WARRANTOR FROM OBLIGATION UNDER WARRANTY:

Misuse or neglect, accidents, unauthorized alteration, failure to provide reasonable and necessary maintenance (see Owner's Manual), damage caused by off road use, collision, fire, theft, vandalism, explosions, overloading in excess of rated capacities or other utilization of the product contrary to its design instructions or intended uses, and odometer tampering shall discharge Warrantor from any express or implied warranty obligation to repair any resulting defect.

DISCLAIMER OF CONSEQUENTIAL AND INCIDENTAL DAMAGES:

THE ORIGINAL PURCHASER OF THE ROADMASTER CHASSIS AND ANY PERSON TO WHOM THE ROADMASTER CHASSIS IS TRANSFERRED, AND ANY PERSON WHO IS AN INTENDED OR UNINTENDED USER OR BENEFICIARY OF THE ROADMASTER CHASSIS, SHALL NOT BE ENTITLED TO RECOVER FROM WARRANTOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY DEFECT IN THE ROADMASTER CHASSIS, INCLUDING BY WAY OF EXAMPLE FUEL AND TRANSPORTATION EXPENSES TO DELIVER THE PRODUCT TO THE SERVICING DEALER, HOTEL ROOMS, LOST WAGES AND WATER DAMAGE. THE EXCLUSION OF CONSEQUENTIAL AND INCIDENTAL DAMAGES SHALL BE DEEMED INDEPENDENT OF, AND SHALL SURVIVE, ANY FAILURE OF THE ESSENTIAL PURPOSE OF ANY LIMITED REMEDY. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of consequential or incidental damages, so the above exclusions may not apply to you.

LEGAL REMEDIES:

THESE LIMITED WARRANTIES ARE NOT INTENDED TO, AND DO NOT "EXTEND TO FUTURE PERFORMANCE." ANY ACTION SEEKING REMEDIES FOR BREACH OF WARRANTY OR SEEKING TO ENFORCE THIS LIMITED WARRANTY OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES SHALL NOT BE COMMENCED MORE THAN (1) ONE YEAR AFTER THE EARLIER OF: (i) THE WARRANTY COVERAGE PERIOD DESIGNATED ABOVE; (ii) THE FAILURE OF THE WARRANTOR TO REPAIR THE DEFECT AT ISSUE; OR, (iii) THE DATE ON WHICH THE BUYER'S ACTION ACCRUED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW. UNLESS PROHIBITED BY LAW, THE PERFORMANCE OF REPAIRS SHALL NOT SUSPEND THIS LIMITATIONS PERIOD FROM EXPIRING. THESE TERMS AND ALL WRITTEN AND IMPLIED WARRANTY DISPUTES BETWEEN WARRANTOR AND PURCHASER SHALL BE GOVERNED BY THE SUBSTANTIVE LAWS OF THE STATE OF OREGON, WITHOUT REGARD TO CONFLICTS OF LAW RULES. Some states do not allow the reduction in the statute of limitations, so the above reduction in the statute of limitations may not apply to you.

THIS WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS. YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS, WHICH VARY FROM STATE TO STATE.

LARGER PRINT VERSION AVAILABLE WITHIN THE OWNERS MANUAL AND UPON REQUEST ADDRESSED TO YOUR SELLING DEALER OR WARRANTOR'S WARRANTY DEPARTMENT.



<i>Section 1 General Information.....</i>	<i>3</i>
<i>Section 2 Driving and Safety.....</i>	<i>9</i>
<i>Section 3 Exterior and Interior Care.....</i>	<i>47</i>
<i>Section 4 Appliances</i>	<i>71</i>
<i>Section 5 Equipment</i>	<i>93</i>
<i>Section 6 Water Systems.....</i>	<i>117</i>
<i>Section 7 Propane Systems.....</i>	<i>135</i>
<i>Section 8 House Electrical</i>	<i>147</i>
<i>Section 9 Chassis Electrical</i>	<i>169</i>
<i>Section 10 Chassis.....</i>	<i>187</i>
<i>Index</i>	<i>233</i>

The information contained in this document is intended to reflect standard and optional equipment included in a typically equipped model at the time of delivery to the initial retail owner. Your actual unit may vary from this document as a result of optional equipment that is not generally offered on this model. In the case that you are not the initial retail owner of the unit, this document will not reflect modifications that may have been performed by previous owners.

Product information and specifications are shown herein as of the time of printing. The motorhome manufacturer reserves the right to change product specifications, designs and standard equipment without notice and without incurring obligation.

©Copyright Monaco RV, LCC. All rights reserved. All other trademarks or registered trademarks are property of their respective holders. Brand name products of other companies mentioned in this manual are not endorsed by the manufacturer of the motorhome.

Check online for Addendums or Tech Tips
that may apply to your motorhome.

MANUAL ADDENDUMS & TECH TIPS

www.monaco-online.com

Click on the **brand** logo, then click
on **SERVICE** link and choose either
MANUAL ADDENDUMS or **TECH TIPS**
from the menu.

General Information

Section 1

WARRANTY INFORMATION FILE	4
REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS	4
SAFETY TERMS	4
GLOSSARY OF TERMS	5
LIMITED WARRANTY TRANSFER APPLICATION	7

CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 WARNING:

Most vehicles, including this one, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust and a wide variety of vehicle fluids, components, and parts—including building materials used in the interior furnishings in this vehicle—contain and/or emit these chemicals, including formaldehyde. In addition, battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling. Consult with your doctor or other health professional for further advice concerning exposure from this vehicle to chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm.

WARRANTY INFORMATION FILE

In addition to this Owner's Manual, a Warranty Information File Box can be found in the motorhome. This box contains valuable documents about the motorhome's systems and equipment. Many of the component manufacturer warranty registration cards can be found in the box. They will need to be filled out and mailed. Careful reading and understanding of all the information in this box will help in the safe operation, maintenance and troubleshooting of the systems and equipment.

Additional Information:

Changes, additions and supplemental information in the form of Manual Addendums and "Tech Tips" can be obtained by visiting our Web Site at www.monaco-online.com. Select one of the products from the product lineup. Go to the Service menu. A submenu will appear.

It may also be helpful to browse the "Tech Tips" menu for the other product lines. The tips may not completely apply to a particular model, but information contained therein can be useful.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

If you believe that your motorhome has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Monaco RV, LCC.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall or remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer or Monaco RV, LCC. To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hot line toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, Washington, DC, 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

SAFETY TERMS

Many of the safety terms are personal safety instructions. Definitions for the terms are listed below. It is important to thoroughly read and understand the safety instructions displayed throughout the manual. Failure to comply with specific instructions may result in personal injury or death. Many instructions are required by National Safety Associations.

WARNING:

Warnings contain information regarding personal safety and/or pertaining to potential extensive or permanent damage to the motorhome or its components by means of hazards or improper use.

POISON:

A warning or caution pertaining to safety and/or use of a poisonous substance or harmful chemical.

CAUTION:

Cautions pertain to potential damage to the motorhome and/or its components.

NOTE:

Information and reminders concerning proper operation of the motorhome and/or its components.

INSPECTION:

Inspection of the motorhome and/or its components is required. Additional instruction may follow.

INFORMATION:

References to additional information regarding operation of the motorhome and/or its components found in additional sources, other than the Owner's Manual. Also refers to the Warranty Information File, found within the Warranty Information Box in the motorhome.

TIP:

Tips contain information, helpful hints and/or suggestion for ease of operation of the motorhome or its components.

LUBE:

Lubrication, or addition of a lubricant product, to the motorhome and/or a specified component or part is required. Additional instruction may follow.

ASSEMBLE or REPAIR:

Assembly, disassembly or installation of a component or part, and/or repair to the motorhome may be required. Assistance of Technical Support or Technician may be necessary.

GLOSSARY OF TERMS

AC Electricity - Alternating current also known as shore power.

Air Compressor - Pumps air to and builds air pressure in an air system.

Air Dryer - Cools, filters and dries the air delivered by an air compressor.

Air Governor - Controls the operation of the air compressor by constantly monitoring air pressure in the supply tank of the air system. The air governor initiates the unload cycle when the cut-out pressure is reached.

Alternating Current (AC) - A current that varies in magnitude and polarity. A battery does not deliver alternating current. Also referred to as shore power, utility power, inverter power (if equipped), generator power, etc.

Ampere (Amp) - The measure of electron flow rate (current) through a circuit.

Ampere-hour (Ah, A•h) - A unit of measure obtained by multiplying the current in amperes by hours of discharge time.
Example: A battery which delivers 5 amperes for 20 hours, delivers 5 amperes times 20 hours, or 100 Amp hour of capacity.

ANSI - American National Standards Institute.

ASTM - American Society for Testing and Materials.

Black Water - Term associated with the sewage holding tank. The toilet drains directly into this tank.

CCA - Cold Cranking Amperage is the amount of current a battery can deliver for 30 seconds at 0° F without dropping below a specified voltage, usually 10.5 Volts DC.

Chassis Battery - Powers chassis 12 Volt accessories and starts engine.

Circuit - An electric circuit is the path of an electric current. A closed circuit has a complete path. An open circuit has a broken or disconnected path.

City Water - A term associated with the water supply at campgrounds. It is called city water because water is pulled from a central source (like in a city) and not the fresh water tank.

Compressor Load Cycle - The time during which the air compressor is building air pressure in an air system.

Compressor Unload Cycle - The time during which the air compressor is idling and is not building air pressure in an air system.

Curbside - This refers to the side of the motorhome that faces the curb when it is parked. Often called the door side or the passenger side.

Current - The rate of flow of electricity or the movement rate of electrons along a conductor. It is comparable to the flow of a stream of water. The unit of measure for current is the ampere.

Cut-In Pressure - The pressure level in the air system supply tank which triggers the compressor load cycle.

Cut-Out Pressure - The pressure level in the air system supply tank which triggers the compressor unload cycle.

Cycle - A battery discharge and subsequent recharge equals one cycle.

Desiccant - A granular substance that has a high affinity for water and is used to retain moisture from the air stream flowing through the air dryer cartridge.

DC Electricity - Direct current also known as battery power.

Direct Current (DC) - Power that is stored in a battery bank or supplied by photovoltaics, alternator, chargers and DC generators. Direct current is also known as battery power. Current only flows one way.

Drain Trap - This is a curve that is in all drains. Water is trapped in the curve and this creates a barrier so tank odors cannot escape through the drain.

Dry Camping - Camping in the motorhome when there is no city water hook-up or shore power. In other words, using only the water and power that is in the motorhome and not from another source.

Drying Cycle - The time during which the air dryer cools, filters and removes moisture from the air delivered by the air compressor. The drying cycle begins and ends the same as the compressor load cycle.

Dump Station - A site where the waste (grey) and sewage (black) tanks can be drained. In most states it is illegal to drain waste tanks anywhere other than at a dump station.

Dump Valve - Another name for the gate valve used to drain the sewage (black) and waste (grey) tanks.

Escape (Egress) Window - The formal name for the emergency exit window located in the motorhome. Egress windows are identified by their red handles.

Full Hook-Up Site - A campground that has city water, shore power and sewer hook-ups or connections available.

Grey Water - Term associated with the waste water holding tank. Water from the sink drains, the shower and the washer-dryer (if equipped) go into this tank.

House Battery - Powers 12 Volt DC lights and accessories inside the motorhome.

HVAC - Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning

LED (Light Emitting Diode) - Indicator light.

Liquid Lead Acid Battery (LLA) - A type of battery that uses liquid as an electrolyte. This type of battery requires periodic maintenance such as cleaning the connections and checking the electrolyte level.

Low Point Drain - The lowest point in the plumbing. Drains are placed here so water will drain out of the lower end of the motorhome.

OEM - Original Equipment Manufacturer.

OHM - A unit for measuring electrical resistances.

Ohm's Law - Expresses the relationship between Volt (E), amperes (I) in an electrical circuit with resistance (R). It can be expressed as follows: $E = IR$. If any two of the three values are known, the third value can be calculated by using the above formula.

Potable Water - Water that is safe for human consumption.

Potentiometer - A device for measuring an unknown potential difference or electromotive force.

Pounds Per Square Inch Gauge (psig) - Pressure measured with respect to that of the atmosphere. This is a pressure gauge reading in which the gauge is adjusted to read zero at the surrounding atmospheric pressure. It is commonly called gauge pressure.

Purge - The initial blast of air (decompression) from the air dryer purge valve at the beginning of the air compressor.

Purge Cycle - The time during which the air dryer is undergoing purge and regeneration. This cycle starts at the beginning of the compressor unload cycle and normally ends well before the beginning of the compressor load cycle.

Regeneration - The mild backflow of air through the air dryer and out the purge valve that begins immediately after the purge and lasts normally 10 to 15 seconds. This backflow of air, from the air system and through the air dryer, removes moisture from the desiccant cartridge and prepares the air dryer for the next compressor load cycle.

Roadside - The side of the motorhome that faces the road while parked. Often called the off-door side or the driver side.

SCA - Term for Supplemental Coolant Additive. Chemical added to coolant for diesel engines to help prevent cylinder liner pitting and internal corrosion.

Shore Line - The electrical cord which runs from the motorhome to the campground 120/240 Volt AC electrical supply.

Stinger - An arm attachment on a tow truck that is used to lift the motorhome slightly for towing.

Volt - The unit of measure for electric potential.

Watt - The unit for measuring electrical power, i.e. the rate of doing work, in moving electrons by or against an electric potential.

Wet Cell Battery - A type of battery that uses liquid as an electrolyte. This type of battery requires periodic maintenance to clean the connections and check the electrolyte level.

LIMITED WARRANTY TRANSFER APPLICATION/CHANGE OF OWNER INFORMATION

Mail to:

**Monaco RV LLC
Warranty Transfer
91320 Coburg Industrial Way
Coburg, OR 97408**

Please read terms and representations below before signing.

Submitted By:

Name: _____

Address: _____

City: _____ State: _____ Zip: _____

Phone: (_____) _____

☐ Limited Warranty Transfer

☐ Address Change

A. Current Owner Information:

First Name Initial Last Name

Vehicle Identification Number Unit # (15 digits) - (6 digits) Model/Year

B. New Owner Information, Transfer Coverage To:

First Name Initial Last Name

(_____)
Phone Number Street Address City State Zip

Date of Transfer (If Applicable) Odometer Reading at Transfer (If Applicable)

C. Signatures:

(New) Owner's Signature Date Selling Dealer's Signature (If Applicable) Date

Terms & Representations

By your signature(s) on face side of this form, and in order to induce Monaco RV, LLC to transfer its Limited Warranty, you represent the following:

1. That you have received and read a copy of the Limited Warranty.
2. You understand that the unit is to be used only for family camping and cross country travel on improved roads.

3. All information provided by you on face side of this form is true and correct.
4. You understand that you are purchasing a pre-owned recreational vehicle and Monaco RV, LLC does not make any representation as to its present condition.

TEAR OFF PAGE. MAIL WARRANTY TRANSFER FORM AND PAYMENT TO:

WARRANTY TRANSFER, MONACO RV, LLC.
91320 COBURG INDUSTRIAL WAY
COBURG, OR 97408

This image shows a blank sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

Driving & Safety

Section 2



DRIVING & SAFETY	10	EMERGENCY ROADSIDE PROCEDURES	25	WEIGHING THE MOTORHOME	34
Inspections	10	In Case of Flat Tire	25	Tire Pressure.....	36
Familiarize Yourself.....	10	Dead Chassis Battery	25	Scales	37
Mirror Adjust.....	10	TOWING PROCEDURES	27	Four-Point Weighing	37
Safety Seat Belts	11	Disabling Parking Brake.....	28	Weight Record Sheet.....	40
DRIVING TIPS	12	TIRES	28	SMOKE DETECTOR	41
Adjust to Driving Conditions	13	Importance of Air Pressure.....	29	Operation	41
TRIP PREPARATION	15	Load Inflation Table	29	Testing	41
HITCH	16	Inspecting & Pressure	30	Maintenance	41
Using the Rear Receiver	16	Air Pressure Checklist	31	Troubleshooting	41
Tow Plug Connection.....	19	Tire Support When Leveling	31	CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTOR	42
REAR VISION SYSTEM	19	Tire Vibration.....	31	Operation	43
BACKING UP A MOTORHOME	20	Tire Rotation	31	Alarm.....	43
SET-UP PROCEDURES	21	Tire Replacement	32	Testing	43
DRY CAMPING	22	Storage of Tires - Long Term	32	Cleaning & Maintenance	44
BREAKING CAMP	23	WHEEL MOUNTING	33	FIRE EXTINGUISHER	44
				Maintenance	44
				ESCAPE (EGRESS) WINDOW	45

DRIVING & SAFETY

Section Two contains information on driving tips, emergency situations, towing, safety devices, weighing the motorhome and tires.

NOTE:

The motorhome has electronic data recording device(s) that may record information about direction, road speed, engine speed, brake application, steering attitude or other vehicle operating data. Data recording devices can be present in engines, transmissions, ABS (Antilock Brake Systems) or other systems affiliated with operation of the vehicle. Information from data recording devices can be examined in case of an accident. Contact the component manufacturer to learn more about these devices.

Inspections

Differences between a passenger automobile and a motorhome are significant. Always be aware of these differences when traveling. The key to safely operating a motorhome is **inspection**. Undetected problems could cause problems on the road and may result in lost time and increased repair costs. Several states require a special license endorsement and motorhome inspection prior to registration. Know and observe the laws of the states in which the motorhome will be traveling. Laws may vary from state to state. A systematic inspection conducted prior to moving the motorhome can help ensure nothing is overlooked and will assist in familiarizing the owner with the motorhome.

Prior to moving the motorhome perform a general **inspection**. Examine the condition of the motorhome and the surrounding area. Look high and low when walking around the motorhome.

Familiarize Yourself

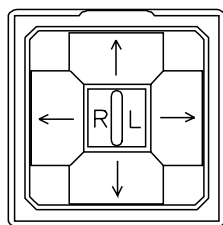
Because the location of the driver's seat in the motorhome is higher and farther to the left than most vehicles, a different perspective of the roadway is created. Rely on the outside mirrors to line up with the center of the road and to check conditions behind the motorhome. The dashboard may include more gauges and controls than are normally found in passenger automobiles. Become familiar with these gauges and their indications before starting out.

Mirror Adjust

Adjust the mirrors prior to starting out. Have an assistant help to simplify the mirror adjustment process.

Mirror Adjusting:

- ◆ Tools needed: Allen wrench.
- ◆ Adjust the driver seat to the travel position.



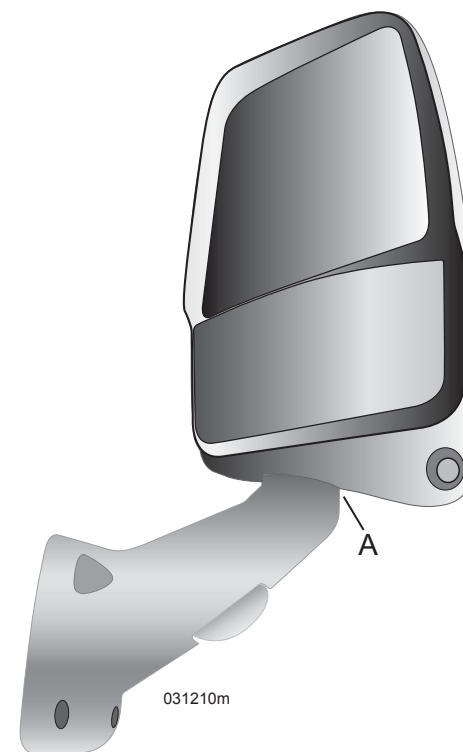
080378

Mirror adjust switch on
Driver's armrest

- ◆ To adjust the "head" of the mirror, loosen one of the Allen set screws located below the mirror head shown as point A. Adjust the head of the mirror to obtain best view.
- ◆ Manually adjust the bottom section of the mirror.
- ◆ Tighten set screw(s) once the proper view is obtained.
- ◆ Repeat procedure for passenger side mirror.

TIP:

Use the mirror adjust switch located on the driver's armrest to fine tune view of the top mirror.



Safety Seat Belts

All occupants must be furnished with and use seat belts while the motorhome is moving. The driver's seat, and all other seats designed to carry passengers while the motorhome is in motion, are equipped with safety seat belts. Do not occupy beds or seats that are not equipped with a safety belt while the motorhome is in motion. The driver's seat must be locked in the forward facing position while motorhome is in motion. Seat belts are designed for individual use. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person.

To fasten the seat belt, pull the belt out of the retractors and insert the tab into the buckle; a click will sound when the tab locks into the buckle. Seat belt lengths automatically adjust to each occupants size and sitting position. Do not route belts over armrest or under the arm.

WARNING:

Safety belts are supplied at affixed seating positions. Do not occupy seats not equipped with safety belts while the motorhome is in motion. Seat belts must only be used on permanently mounted seats. Do not use a single seat belt on more than one person. Pilot and Co-pilot seats must be locked in a forward facing position with seat belts fastened while the motorhome is in motion. Do not rotate the seat while in transit.

Child Passenger Safety:

Child restraint requirements are determined by age *and* weight. According to NHTSA (National Highway Traffic Safety Administration), there are four stages to child restraint safety.

WARNING:

Refer to the manufacturer of the child seat for installation guidelines. Adhere to all instructions, cautions and warnings for proper securement of the child safety seat or booster seat.



Step 1:

For the best possible protection keep infants in the back seat, in rear-facing child safety seats, as long as possible up to the height or weight limit of the particular seat. At a minimum, keep infants rear-facing until a minimum of age 1 and at least 20 pounds.



Step 2:

When children outgrow their rear-facing seats (at a minimum age 1 and at least 20 pounds) they should ride in forward-facing child safety seats, in the back seat, until they reach the upper weight or height limit of the particular seat (usually around age 4 and 40 pounds).



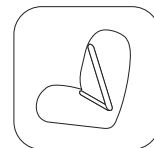
Step 3:

Once children outgrow their forward-facing seats (usually around age 4 and 40 pounds), they should ride in booster seats, in the back seat, until the vehicle seat belts fit properly. Seat belts fit properly when the lap belt lays across the upper thighs and the shoulder belt fits across the chest (usually at age 8 or when they are 4', 9" tall).



Step 4:

When children outgrow their booster seats, (usually at age 8 up to age 12 or when they are approximately 4'9" tall) they can use the adult seat belt in the back seat, if it fits properly (lap belt lays across the upper thighs and the shoulder belt fits across the chest). All children under age 13 should ride in the back seat.



NOTE:

The motorhome manufacturer is not the author of Child Passenger Safety. The information provided is reprinted from the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration's website. Visit NHTSA's website at www.nhtsa.gov for the most recent and up to date information.

Tips:

- Go to www.nhtsa.gov and choose "Child Safety Seat Information" from the menu or click on the child passenger safety icon. The site includes child safety seat installation tips, product ratings, recalls and other useful information.

- ♦ For more information about child safety seats, booster seats, inspection/fitting stations in your area, seat belts, air bags, and other highway safety issues, call the DOT Vehicle Safety Hotline at: **1-888-327-4236**.
- ♦ A certified child passenger safety technician can check your installation and answer questions. To find a technician or an inspection station near you, go to **www.nhtsa.gov**, click on the child passenger safety icon, and then click on the Fitting/Inspection Station link, or go to **www.seatcheck.org**.

The child safety seat can be positioned in two places: the front passenger (co-pilot) seat and forward facing permanently mounted booth dinette seat equipped with safety belts.

NOTE:

Individual states and Canadian provinces may have laws that can exceed the requirements as described in this section. It is the responsibility of the owner to know and comply with the laws in the state or province in which the motorhome will travel.

NOTE:

Use of a safety or booster seat in the front seat may be prohibited in some states and Canadian provinces.

WARNING:

Do not transport children unrestrained. Infants must be placed in approved safety seats - small children must be restrained in child safety seats. Do not use a single seat belt on more than one child. Failure to comply with these rules can lead to injury or death.

WARNING:

Because many styles of safety and booster seats are available, refer to the safety seat OEM manual for proper installation and how to properly install and secure the safety or booster seat.

Seat Belt Care:

Keep the belt clean and dry. Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water. Do not use bleach, dye or abrasive cleansers that may weaken the belt material. Periodically inspect belts for cuts, frays or loose parts, and replace damaged parts. Do not disassemble or modify the system. Replace the seat belt assembly after a severe impact, even when damage is not

DRIVING TIPS

The motorhome is a complex vehicle that requires increased driving awareness because of its size and various components. Turning radius will be much wider than that of a standard automobile due to increased length. Pay close attention to the perimeter of the motorhome including front, sides, rear, roof and undercarriage. Ensure the surrounding area is clear of obstacles. Use the mirrors to observe traffic conditions as well as the exterior including tires, bay doors, blind spots, etc.

Use a push-pull method of steering, with both hands parallel on the steering wheel. The motorhome is considerably heavier than an automobile and has a higher center of gravity. These factors will necessitate advanced reaction time. Swerving and sharp cornering performed high speeds could result in loss of control.



Keep size and weight of the motorhome in mind. Drive with increased caution to avoid situations that might require quick momentum changes. Increase reaction time by paying attention to traffic and road conditions 12 to 15 seconds ahead.

The motorhome will travel safely and comfortably at highway speed limits. However, it takes more time to reach highway speed. When passing another vehicle, allow extra time and space to complete the pass due to increased length.

Manually shift to a lower gear when descending a long hill. Begin the descent at a slow speed. Do not allow the motorhome to gain momentum before trying to slow down. Use the exhaust brake in conjunction with the service brakes to help maintain a slow, safe descent. The transmission and engine will help control downhill speed and can extend the service life of the brake lining. Distance required to stop the motorhome is greater than an automobile. Practice stopping away from traffic to get the feel of distance required to stop.

Note weight limits of bridges before crossing. Signs should be posted at bridge entrances. Check posted height of all overpasses and situations where overhead clearance is limited. Keep in mind road surfaces may be repaved or packed with snow; therefore, the actual posted clearance would be less in such conditions.

Use the pilot seat controls to comfortably position the seat. Stay seated and adjust the outside mirrors if necessary to gain a clear line of vision down both sides of the motorhome.

Adjust to Driving Conditions

Road, weather and terrain will vary. It is necessary to adapt to these changing conditions to safely operate the motorhome. Pay attention to road signs that advise of local road hazards and weather conditions. Do not operate the motorhome when road, weather and terrain conditions can be perceived as unsafe.

The cockpit, dash area and windshield are larger than those found on passenger cars and trucks. Keep the windshield clear of humidity in the form of water or ice. Start the motorhome and turn on the dash defrost to help remove moisture from inside the windshield. It may be necessary to use a clean cloth to wipe away moisture. Do not operate the motorhome if the windshield is not clear. Keep windshield wipers in good working order at all times.

Driving Cautions:

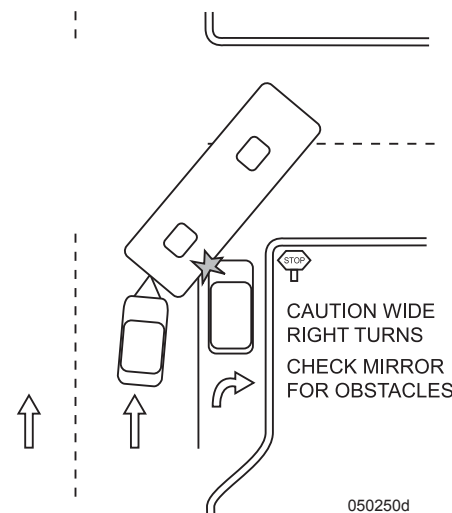
- ◆ Avoid getting too close to the shoulder of the road, which may be too soft to support the weight of the motorhome.
- ◆ Side spacing is best maintained by keeping the motorhome centered in the driving lane.
- ◆ Driving lanes in work zones can be uneven, congested and more narrow than usual.
- ◆ Be cautious of road debris that can damage the undercarriage of the motorhome or become lodged in the dual tires and cause damage to the tires, wheel rims or tow vehicle.

- ◆ On back roads and single divided roads, tree branches and shrubbery can protrude into the roadway. Watch for low hanging branches especially during inclement weather. Rain and snow will cause branches to hang lower than usual.
- ◆ Keep in mind that posted speed signs are usually passenger automobile rated. Be extra aware of driving conditions and use the appropriate speed for a motorhome when necessary, especially on corners and mountain roads.
- ◆ Downgrade speed should be at least 5 mph less than upgrade speed, or downgrade speed should be attainable within three seconds of a brake application.
- ◆ Use a four second rule when following other vehicles at speeds under 40 mph. Use a five second rule when following at speeds over 40 mph.

Right Turns:

Negotiating a right hand turn in a motorhome can be difficult. Many drivers fear they cannot make the turn without entering into the other lane or jumping the curb. Here are a few tips to make a right hand turn easier:

- ◆ As the turn approaches, look into the mirror to ensure the lane to the left is clear, then move wide over to the left.
- ◆ When making the right turn, the left rear wheel should touch the center line of the road and the driver's hips should be parallel to the roadside curb of the corner being turned to aid in avoiding a premature turn.
- ◆ Make the turn slowly.



- ◆ Make the turn slowly.
- ◆ Check mirrors frequently. Stay aware of necessary clearance and space management of the motorhome while negotiating the turn.

Left Turns:

- ◆ Do not proceed with the turn until the driver's seat is aligned with the center of the intersection. If two lanes are available, use the right hand lane. Vehicles or objects are more easily seen by the driver on the left hand side.

Ascending a Grade:

When approaching a grade, assess the grade and length before ascending. Prepare early for a long ascent. Unlike gasoline engines, diesels do not necessarily produce more power by pressing further on the accelerator.

Power output from a diesel depends on the following circumstances:

- ♦ **RPM** - Every engine has a RPM range that produces the most efficient torque curve.
- ♦ **Fuel/Air Mixture** - Even though the engine is equipped with a turbocharger, there is a limit to how much air can be compressed into the combustion chamber. Conversely there is a limit to how much fuel can be injected to produce the most efficient state of combustion.

The drivetrain is more efficient when temperatures remain stable during long grades.

IMPORTANT SAFETY TIP:

Turn on the hazard lights if road speed decreases to the point where the motorhome is moving significantly under the posted speed. Use pullouts if traffic is accumulating. Once in a pullout, if there is sufficient clearance for safety, idle the engine for a while to allow the exhaust and the turbo to cool. While these are cooling, the transmission will also cool. Continually monitor the gauges while waiting.

Descending a Grade:

Prepare to descend a grade at the crest of the hill. Observe any signs indicating grade angle and duration. The sign may suggest maximum downhill speed according to Gross Combined Weight (the combined weight of the motorhome and a trailer/tow car). At the crest of the hill, manually shift the transmission into a lower gear. Do not allow the motorhome to gain momentum before slowing down. Use the exhaust brake to help maintain a slow, safe downhill speed.

Road speed may still increase with the exhaust brake is applied. The transmission may automatically upshift to the next higher gear to prevent engine over-speed. Apply the service brakes using moderately heavy pressure on the brake pedal to reduce speed then manually downshift the transmission to maintain a safe, slow speed. Do not pump the brakes. This can result in a loss of air pressure. Riding the brakes can cause the brakes to overheat. Either method can result in loss of brake effectiveness or even brake failure.

Night Driving:

- ♦ Be well rested and alert. If necessary, find a safe to stop and rest until ready to continue.
- ♦ Avoid using interior lights that create a glare on the windshield and decrease visibility.
- ♦ Dim dash lights to a comfortable level to reduce glare.

Extreme Heat/Hot Weather Conditions:

- ♦ Frequently observe all gauges. Variations from normal conditions should be promptly evaluated.
- ♦ Check tire pressure before traveling in hot conditions. Tire air pressure increases with heat. Do not let air out of a hot tire. When the tires cool down they will return to the correct/previous tire pressure.
- ♦ Pay extra attention to hoses and belts that are more susceptible to fatigue in extreme heat.

Winter and Cold Climate:

- ♦ The motorhome should be prepared for cold weather use.
- ♦ Keep speeds slow and steady. Make moves gradually and look further ahead to increase reaction distance.
- ♦ During cold weather tire air pressure will decrease. Check tires and ensure tires are at proper inflation pressure.
- ♦ If road or weather conditions are treacherous, find a safe place to stop until conditions improve.
- ♦ Avoid downshifting or using the exhaust brake on wet or slippery surfaces that can cause the drive wheels to skid.
- ♦ Wiper blades should be in good condition. Fill the washer reservoir with antifreeze formula window washer fluid.
- ♦ Use mirror heat to keep mirrors clear.
- ♦ Remove any ice build-up from the entry step to avoid accidental slipping.



080384e
Located
on Driver's
Console

Wet Conditions:

- ♦ Worn or improperly inflated tires can increase risk of hydroplaning.
- ♦ Heavy rain or deep standing water can cause brakes to apply unevenly or grab.

Refueling:

- ♦ Truck stops are good refueling points.
- ♦ Check overhead clearance before pulling into the fuel island.
- ♦ Be aware of concrete/steel posts installed around fuel islands.

- ◆ Avoid running over the fuel hose as it can get hung up on the motorhome and cause body damage.
- ◆ Use of gloves is recommended for refueling. Store gloves in the outside compartment.
- ◆ To prevent grease and fuel deposits from being tracked into the motorhome when refueling, change shoes before entering. Store the extra pair of shoes near the entry door.

WARNING:

Propane and gasoline are highly flammable and can ignite, resulting in explosion, fire or death. Ensure all flames are extinguished and all propane appliances are turned off and the primary propane shut-off valve is turned off prior to refueling.

Fuel Economy:

Driving style, wind resistance, terrain, vehicle weight, and engine-driven accessories are some of the factors that affect fuel economy.

Guidelines to Help Increase Fuel Efficiency:

- ◆ When starting out, apply the throttle lightly and accelerate gradually. Avoid excess throttle and accelerating quickly.
- ◆ Check the tire pressure. A low tire is not only a safety hazard but also increases rolling resistance and fuel consumption. Keep the engine at a low to mid operating range of 1100 to 1500 RPM, which requires less fuel than operating at higher RPM.

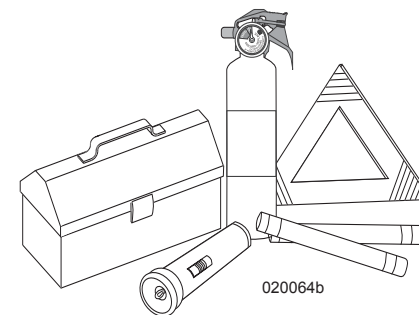
- ◆ Avoid using full throttle when ascending a long hill. This wastes fuel and increases engine operating temperature from incomplete combustion. Manually shift to a lower gear and use less throttle. Fuel will burn more efficiently.
- ◆ Avoid extended idling to warm-up the engine. Start the engine and wait for normal oil pressure to register. Engage the high idle feature until the engine coolant temperature gauge rises. The engine is now ready for travel. Whenever coolant temperature is below operating temperature (idling engine) incomplete combustion occurs, causing carbon build-up and raw fuel to wash lubricating oil from the cylinder walls and dilute the crankcase oil.
- ◆ Excessive idling (more than 10 or 15 minutes) can potentially damage the emission system.
- ◆ Operate the transmission with the Mode function set to Economy whenever possible; this allows for earlier shifts and enhanced fuel economy. Shift points are also lower if the cruise power switch is on. Turn off the cruise power and set the transmission to normal mode when in mountainous terrain and congested traffic.
- ◆ Follow the maintenance schedule for the engine.

TRIP PREPARATION

The following suggestions are general guidelines to follow when preparing for a trip:

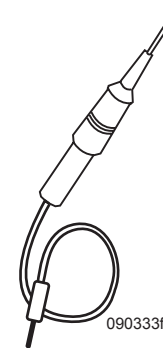
Items to Carry:

- ◆ An emergency road kit containing a flashlight, road flares, warning signs and a fire extinguisher.



Tool Box & Emergency Road Supplies

- ◆ Local, State and National Maps, as well as a 'Motor Carrier' road atlas (for refueling station and truck repair facility locations).
- ◆ Hand tools, a 12 Volt DC test light, a 120 Volt AC polarity tester, battery hydrometer, an assortment of blade fuses, mini-fuses and alternator belt.
- ◆ Potable and non-potable water hoses, a water pressure regulator and various termination connectors for sewage.



Test Light



Polarity tester

Inspection:

- ◆ Ensure all exterior items are stowed or secured (i.e. TV antenna, ceiling vents and windows).
- ◆ Check belts, hoses, battery and engine fluid levels. Inspect the engine, transmission and generator per the OEM manuals.
- ◆ Evenly distribute and secure cargo. Store heavy items near the rear axle and lighter items toward the front to prevent uneven stress and abnormal handling.
- ◆ Check all tires for accurate inflation pressure and physical condition. Look around, above and under the motorhome for obstruction or leaks. Test all exterior lighting: headlamps, taillights, brake and clearance lights.
- ◆ Inside the motorhome, store and secure heavier objects in the lower cabinets to maintain a low center of gravity for sway reduction.
- ◆ Secure loose items to prevent weight shifts.
- ◆ Store lighter items in the overhead cabinets.
- ◆ Close and secure all cabinet doors and drawers, shower and pocket doors.
- ◆ Turn off interior lighting.
- ◆ Adjust exterior mirrors and check dash gauges for proper operation.

INFORMATION:

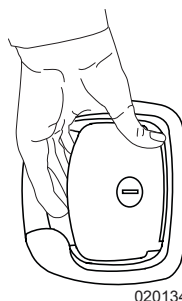
For chassis maintenance details refer to chassis section 10.

CAUTION:

Open the bay doors slowly. Cargo may shift during travel.

WARNING

To avoid injury, never place hands or fingers near the edges of the bay door when opening or closing. Always use the latch handle. Apply pressure with the other hand just above the latch handle.

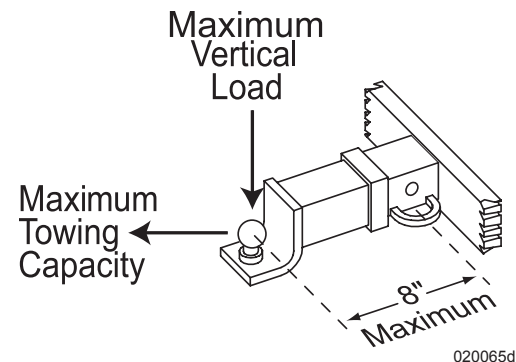
**TIPS**

Multi-purpose items, versatile clothing and periodic removal of unused cargo will streamline cargo storage.

HITCH***Using the Rear Receiver***

When using the rear hitch receiver, remember that the motorhome is intended for towing light loads and is primarily designed as a recreational vehicle. Safety and durability of the hitch receiver requires proper use. Avoid excessive towing loads or other misuse of the receiver. Towing will affect fuel economy.

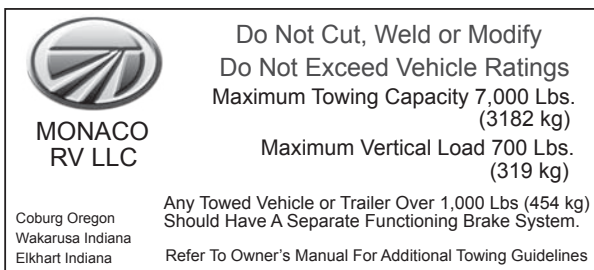
Weight pushing down on the rear hitch (tongue weight) must not exceed 10% of maximum tow capacity. It is recommended to weigh the motorhome when fully loaded to ensure proper weight distribution of the GCVW (Gross Combined Vehicle Weight).

**WARNING:**

Most states and Canadian provinces require trailers and/or towed vehicles to have adequate auxiliary brakes. Failure to comply with these State and Canadian province requirements may result in fines and/or pose a safety hazard, which may result in an accident.

WARNING:

Do not tow a trailer or vehicle that exceeds the rated capacity of the hitch receiver. Overloading the hitch receiver can cause unusual handling characteristics and overstress the hitch receiver and chassis. It could also void the warranty. If there are any questions, call customer support.

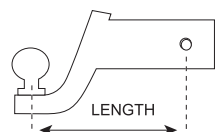


Example 7,000 pound hitch sticker

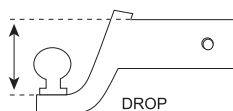
Ball Mount:

Ball mounts come in various configurations and weight limitations. There are three things to consider when selecting a ball mount: weight rating, pin to ball center length and rise/drop. The weight rating of the ball mount, tongue weight and tow weight must meet or exceed the total load weight.

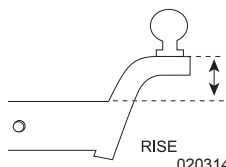
Pin to ball center should not exceed 8". Ball mounts of longer length will significantly reduce the weight rating of the hitch receiver. Observe weight reduction percentages that may be listed on ball mounts longer than 8". Selecting how much rise or drop a ball mount will need is relative to hitch receiver height and height of the towed load with respect to the type of towing equipment between the motorhome and towed load.



Distance from the center of the hitch ball hole to the center of the pin hole.



Distance from the shank to the top of the hitch ball platform.



Distance from the top of the shank to the top of the hitch ball platform.

Hitch Ball:

The hitch ball is what the trailer attaches to. A hitch ball is available in three common diameters, 1-7/8", 2" and 2-5/16". The larger the diameter of the hitch ball, the higher the weight rating. The diameter of the hitch ball shank also factors into weight rating. Match shank diameter with the hole in the ball mount or weight distributing head. Shank clearance should not exceed 1/16". There should be at least two additional threads extending past the nut when the hitch ball is secure.

Safety Chains:

Safety chains are required by law when towing any load. The chains and any fasteners used to attach the chains to the hitch receiver must be rated for the load being towed. Attach chains so they crisscross under the towing equipment. Allow just enough slack in the chains to make sharp corners. Too much slack will allow the chains to drag on the road surface. If towed load should become uncoupled from the hitch ball, the towing equipment will be cradled by the safety chains. If the towed load does uncouple, do not attempt to make a sudden stop and exacerbate the situation. Apply the brakes with gentle, steady pressure. Pull over to the side of road at a safe location.

Tow Capacity and Class Ratings:

Several components may comprise a tow hitch system. The weight rating of individual components that are part of the towing system must be greater than the gross weight of the load being towed.

Components are classified into weight groups to help define weight capacity of towing equipment. Maximum tow capacity is limited to the component with the lowest weight rating in the tow hitch system. Example: a ball mount may have a weight rating of 5,000 lbs., but the hitch ball is rated 3,500 lbs. Maximum tow capacity is reduced to 3,500 lbs. Many times a component will have a Class weight rating. These groups are shown in chart:

WARNING:

Be sure the weight ratings of the ball mount, tow ball and safety chains are equal to or greater than the load. Use of an extension to the receiver or extended ball mount will significantly reduce hitch receiver weight ratings. Modifications to the hitch receiver, or use of the hitch receiver other than intended, can void the warranty of the hitch receiver, chassis or both.

Weight Distributing Hitches:

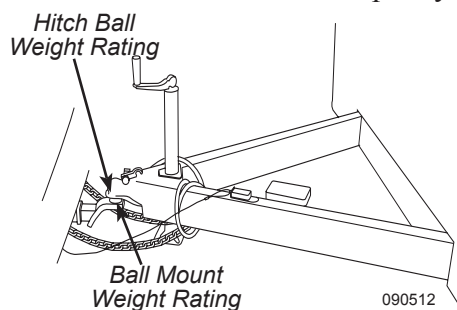
A weight distributing hitch uses spring bars of spring steel to compensate for lack of adequate rear suspension of the tow vehicle. This type of hitch is generally used for towing heavier loads as tongue weight and gross tow weight increases. The spring bars attach to the hitch head assembly and the trailer frame.

	CLASS I	CLASS II	CLASS III	CLASS IV	CLASS V
Weight Carrying Hitch	TW - Up to 200 lbs.	WC TW - Up to 350 lbs.	TW - Up to 500 lbs.	TW - Up to 750 lbs.	TW - Up to 1,200 lbs.
	GTW - Up to 2,000 lbs.	WC GTW - Up to 3,500 lbs.	GTW - Up to 5,000 lbs.	GTW - Up to 7,500 lbs.	GTW - Up to 12,000 lbs.
Weight Distributing Hitch	---	---	---	TW - Up to 1,200 lbs.	TW - Up to 1,400 lbs.
	---	---	---	GTW - Up to 12,000 lbs.	GTW - Up to 14,000 lbs.

- ◆ **GTW** = Gross Trailer Weight. Weight of trailer fully loaded.
- ◆ **TW** = Tongue Weight. Weight pushing down on Tow Ball.
- ◆ **WC** = Weight Carrying. Weight carrying capacity of the Ball Mount.
- ◆ **WD** = Weight Distributing. Weight carrying capacity of a weight distributing hitch.

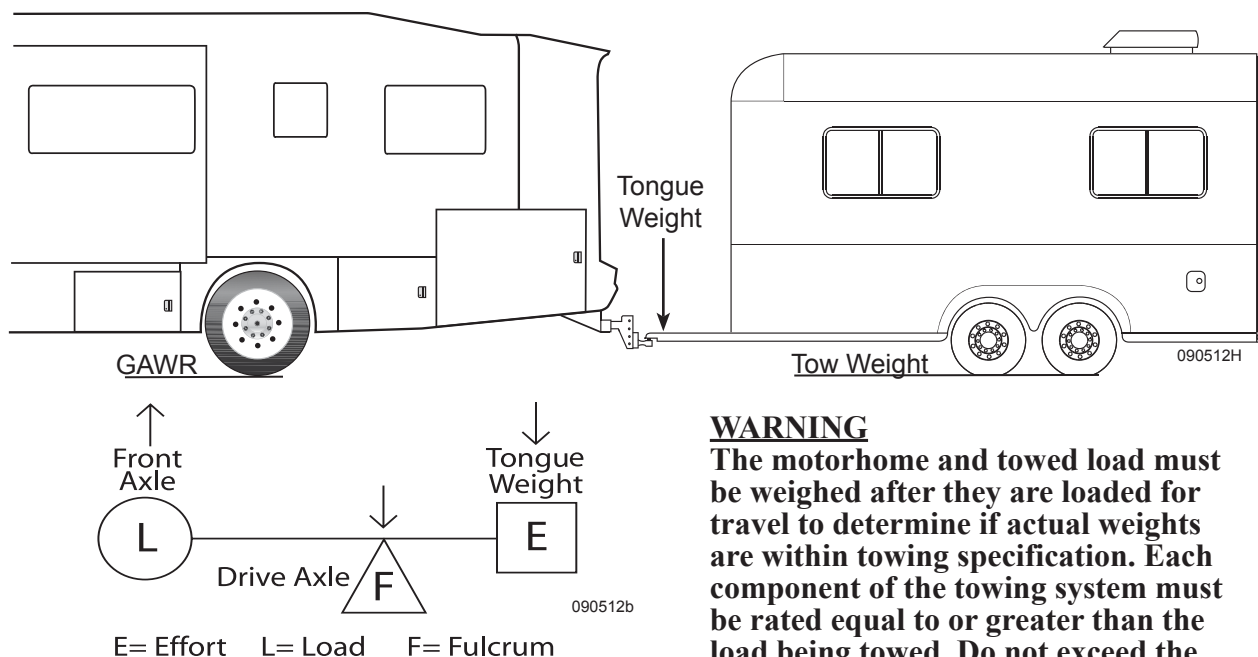
Calculating Tow Capacity:

Several variables must be reviewed and calculated to properly determine towing capacity. Limiting factors include GCWR (Gross Combination Weight Rating), GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating), hitch receiver weight rating and the weight rating of each piece of towing equipment. One or some of these variables will limit tow capacity.



Example: The motorhome has a GCWR of 35,000 lbs. The motorhome in a fully loaded, ready for travel condition, weighs 29,500 lbs. The hitch receiver is rated at 700 lbs. tongue, 7000 lbs. tow. The load being towed weighs 4,200 lbs. with a tongue weight of 400 lbs. However, the hitch ball is rated at 3,500 lbs. In this case tow capacity is limited to 3,500 lbs. due to the rating of the hitch ball, even though the rest of the towing equipment, hitch receiver and vehicle GCWR are within specifications.

It is possible to be within the GCWR but exceed the GAWR. When tongue weight is applied, mechanical advantage increases with distance (lever) from the hitch ball to the drive axle. The drive axle now becomes a pivot point (fulcrum).



As tongue weight increases (effort), weight on the drive axle also increases (fulcrum) while weight on the front axle decreases (load) as weight is displaced from the front axle.

It may be necessary to weigh both the tow vehicle and towed load as an assembly to ensure the GAWR has not been exceeded.

It is also possible to be within the rating of the hitch receiver and yet exceed the GCWR.

Due to changes in weight, the motorhome must be weighed in a loaded, ready for travel condition that includes passengers, cargo and liquids. Subtract the weight of the motorhome in a loaded, ready to travel condition from the GCWR to determine tow capacity. Whether towing a vehicle or trailer, the load being towed must be weighed to ensure the towed weight, when added to the tow vehicle, will not exceed the GCWR and the weight ratings of each tow system component are equal to or greater than the load being towed.

WARNING

The motorhome and towed load must be weighed after they are loaded for travel to determine if actual weights are within towing specification. Each component of the towing system must be rated equal to or greater than the load being towed. Do not exceed the Gross Combination Weight Rating.

Taillight Configuration:

Taillights come in a 2-wire or 3-wire configuration. A 2-wire configuration has all red lens. A 3-wire configuration usually has red and amber lens. Amber is used for turn signals only and red for taillight and brake light. These systems are electrically different. Whenever hooking a 2-wire system to a 3-wire system, or vice versa, a converter box must be installed for correct taillight function. A taillight converter is available from auto and RV supply stores. Do not attempt to wire a tow plug connector if unfamiliar with these systems. A trained technician will install the proper converter so the taillights and turn signals work correctly on the motorhome and towed vehicle or trailer when the tow plug connection is made.

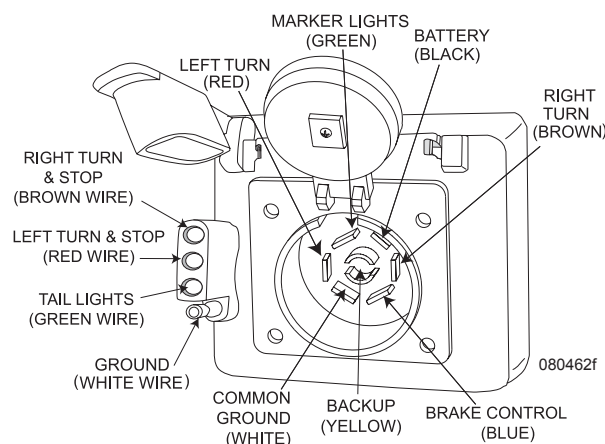
Towing Weight Checklist				
Towed Load	(Tongue Weight) _____	(Overall) _____	Yes	No
Towing Equipment	(Ball Mount) _____	(Hitch Ball) _____	Yes	No
Hitch Receiver	(Tongue) _____	(Tow) _____	Yes	No
GAWR	(Rated) _____	(After Hitching) _____	Yes	No
GCWR	(Rated) _____	(After Hitching) _____	Yes	No

Insert Weight Ratings: Check Yes or No if within specifications.

Tow Plug Connection

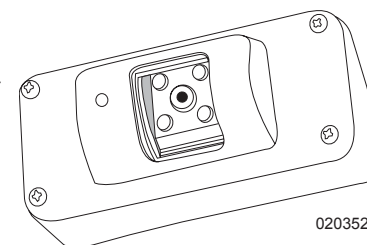
The motorhome is pre-wired from the factory with an electrical connection for towing. The connection is located on the rear cap, near the hitch receiver. Convoluted tubing protects the tow harness wires. Current draw should not exceed 10 Amps for each designated light circuit. Within the electrical connection is a positive terminal for use when towing a trailer equipped with a battery. The positive terminal maintains the charge of the trailer battery.

When preparing a tow plug connection, strip the wires 3/8". Twist the wire strands and place under the clip and secure the screw. Make sure there are no loose strands of wire that could short against the case or other terminals. Be careful to not accidentally mirror image wire locations when making the trailer connection.

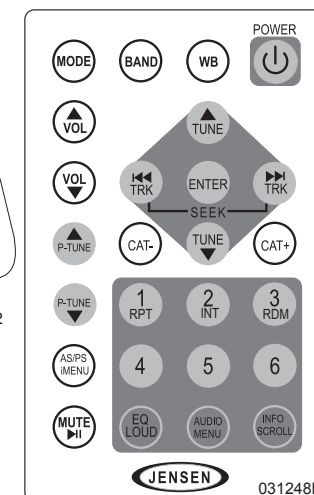


To Tow Car or Trailer:

- ◆ Connect a tow car or trailer to the motorhome with safety chains rated for the weight being towed.
- ◆ Make the electrical connection and perform a light check before starting a trip and at each rest stop.
- ◆ Check the tires frequently. Flat tires on a towed vehicle cannot be detected from the motorhome while driving. A flat tire is a safety hazard and will cause extensive damage.



Rear Camera

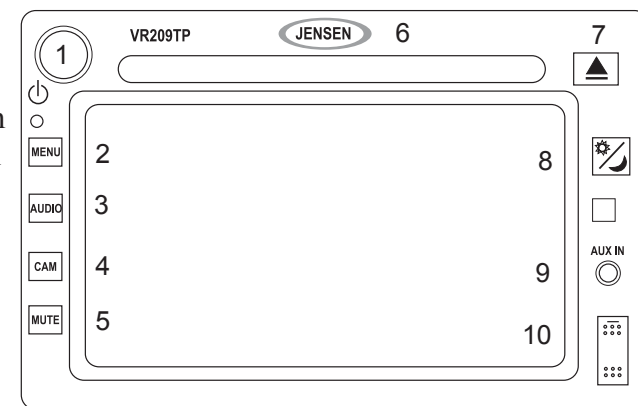


Jensen monitor remote

REAR VISION SYSTEM

The dash radio is equipped with a rear vision camera and two side vision cameras located in the side mirrors. The rear vision system may be used while driving in forward, reverse or when parked.

The rear vision camera is designed to provide the driver with a view of the rear when backing up. The monitor will display the corresponding side camera automatically when the turn signal is activated. The monitor will default to the rear vision camera when the turn signal is cancelled. The system must be powered on for use.



Rear vision system

INFORMATION:

Refer to the OEM manual for detailed operating and programming instructions.

NOTE:

See Section 5 Dash Radio for radio operation

Features:

1. Power On/Off and Volume: Press to turn system On/Off. Turning the system on will allow continuous operation of the rear vision system when ignition key is on.
2. Menu: Press to display menu items.
3. Audio Controls: Used to adjustment bass, treble, fade and balance.
4. Cam: Press to navigate camera options and camera selection.
5. Mute: Mutes sound.
6. CD player: Insert CD to play music.
7. Eject/Pause: Ejects CD or pause CD play.
8. Day/Night: Screen display brightness for day or night viewing. Brightness settings are adjustable through menu settings.
9. Aux In: Auxiliary audio input for use with an iPod.
10. USB Connection: Connects portable USB device. Plays MP3 and WMA files.

NOTE:

The rear vision system will automatically turn on when the gear selector is placed in reverse.

NOTE:

The side cameras will display either the left or right view when a corresponding turn signal is activated.

Using the System While Parked:

- ◆ Turn on house and chassis batteries.
- ◆ Turn on interior house power.
- ◆ Turn on monitor.
- ◆ Press the Cam button.

Select:

- Ch1 - Rear Camera.
- Ch2 – Roadside Camera.
- Ch3 – Curbside Camera.

BACKING UP A MOTORHOME

Whether a long time owner of recreational vehicles or just starting out, backing up can be a challenge. Following some simple guidelines may help to reduce that challenge. When backing up, the driver (pilot) should be comfortable using the mirrors, the back-up camera and the co-pilot's directions (ground guide) for assistance.

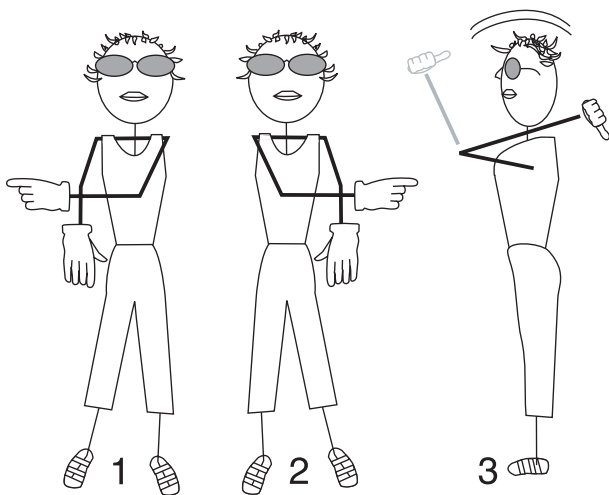
Practice backing up with the co-pilot's guidance in a large unobstructed parking lot. Backing up is a team effort. The backing process should begin while the motorhome is in forward motion. Maneuver the motorhome to align with the chosen site. Aligning the motorhome with the site after the backing process begins may require more than one attempt. When the motorhome is properly aligned with the site, the parking area will be visible in both mirrors. Use road markings as reference points when possible.

When pull-through sites are not available, pick a solid, level site on the left side for a better field of vision using the roadside mirror. If the site is on the right, use the curbside mirror for backing up, but stay aware of blind spots. Get out and walk the area prior to backing in. Look for potential hazards or obstacles that may damage the motorhome. If the site is satisfactory, prepare to back in carefully. Have the co-pilot provide guidance using the five hand signals. Use of walkie-talkies will also aid in guidance.

The co-pilot will perform just as important a job as the driver. When guiding the driver, the co-pilot should be located safely at the left rear corner of the motorhome, facing forward, while remaining visible in the roadside mirror at all times. The co-pilot should make a conscious effort to maintain sight of the driver through the roadside mirror as the motorhome maneuvers. If the driver loses sight of the co-pilot, stop the backing up process until the co-pilot returns to view. To avoid mishaps, the co-pilot should be focused only on what the driver is doing, with brief observation moments.

If necessary, stop the backing up process to have co-pilot **inspect** other areas or angles of concern. The driver should receive directions only from the co-pilot. When the co-pilot is guiding the driver, five clearly defined signals should be used, with only one signal given at a time. Flailing arms with indecisive signals confuse the driver. Signals should be given with purpose and confidence. Directional signals are directing travel of the rear of the motorhome.

If the desired direction is left, the co-pilot points left. **For example:** The co-pilot will use his/her right arm and forefinger pointing distinctly left with arm and finger held on a horizontal plane, indicating desired direction of travel of the rear of the motorhome. The directional signal given should remain steady until the desired movement is complete.



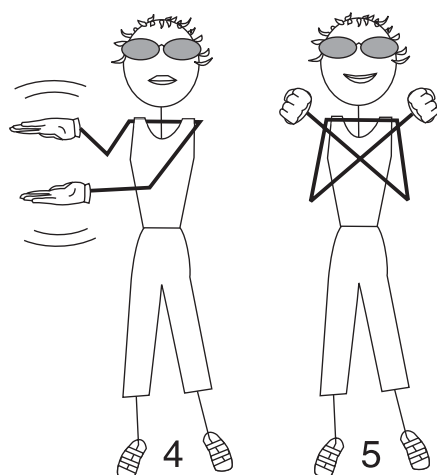
Five Directional Signals:

1. Co-pilot uses left hand and arm held horizontal, with forefinger pointing right, to direct rear of motorhome to the right.
2. Co-pilot uses right hand and arm held horizontal, with forefinger pointing left, to direct rear of motorhome to the left.
3. Co-pilot uses both arms and hands parallel with thumbs pointing up and to rear in a waving vertical motion. This signals driver to maintain a straight back direction.
4. Co-pilot holds arms horizontally, hands open with palms facing one another. Start with a wide separation, gradually closing distance of hands in a rate appropriate to vehicle speed to indicate amount of distance to the stop point.
5. Closed fists and crossed arms indicate **STOP**.

Backing Up Trailers:

Towed vehicles using a tow bar or tow dolly have more than one pivot point and are not suitable for backing. Attempting to back up the motorhome while connected to a tow bar or tow dolly can jack-knife the towing device. Damage to towing device, tow car and motorhome can occur. If necessary, disconnect the tow vehicle to avoid a backing up situation.

Trailers have one pivot point and may be backed up. The same rules for backing a motorhome can be applied to backing a trailer.



020083h

When preparing to back the trailer into a space, maneuver the motorhome sweeping wide. Turn back to the opposite direction to maneuver the trailer into the space. Turn the bottom of the steering wheel in the desired direction of travel for the trailer.

Example: If the desired direction of the trailer is left, rotate the bottom of the steering wheel left. If the trailer moves in an undesired direction, pull forward just far enough to re-align the trailer with the space. The co-pilot should stand safely at the left rear corner of the trailer within view of the driver in the roadside mirror, using the five hand signals for guidance.

CAUTION:

Tow bars or car dollies are generally made to travel in a forward direction only. Most towing equipment of this type is not designed for backing. Never attempt short back up distances with a tow bar or tow dolly. Damage to the motorhome, vehicle or towing device will result.

SET-UP PROCEDURES

If the site for the motorhome provides full hook-ups, use this quick reference as a guide only. This information is an overview on hooking up the utilities and preparing appliances for use. Specific information on slide room, awning, leveling system, water system, entertainment and propane operations is discussed in detail in other sections.

1. Level the Motorhome:

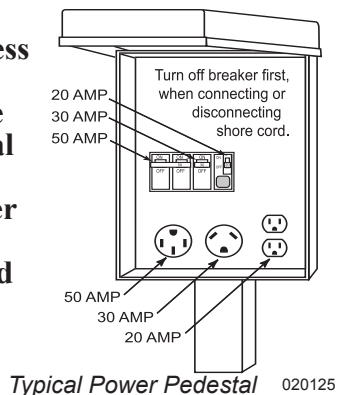
- ◆ Follow procedures and guidelines for extending the slideout rooms in section 5 “*Slideout Operation*” then “*Leveling the Motorhome*” in Section 10.

2. Hook up utilities and prepare appliances for use:

- ◆ Open the primary propane valve on the propane tank.
- ◆ Prepare the shore cord for connection. Uncoil and inspect the cord. Install proper electrical adapters if 50 Amp service is not available. Operate electrical appliances in sequence when hooked to limited shore power service. Turn shore power circuit breaker OFF prior to plugging in the shore cord.
- ◆ If hooked to less than 50 Amp service, operate appliances in sequence rather than at the same time to avoid shore power overload. Start the water heater and furnace (if needed).

NOTE:

If shore power is less than what is rated for the motorhome (50 Amp), electrical adapters will be required and power consumption must be reduced to avoid tripping the shore power breaker.



CAUTION:

Do not remove cover from the shore power supply to troubleshoot electricity to the motorhome. Serious personal injury or death may occur. If there is no power to the motorhome, inform the park manager. It is the park manager's responsibility to fix any problems with the power pedestal at the site.

CAUTION:

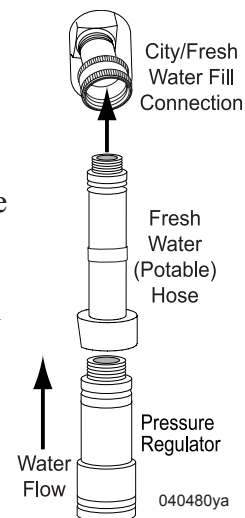
If shore power service is limited to 15 or 20 Amps, use of light duty extension cords and electrical adapters will create a voltage loss through the cord and at each electrical connection. Line voltage loss and the resistance at each electrical connection can be a hazardous combination. Damage to sensitive electronic equipment may result.

NOTE:

To avoid shore power overload when hooked to 30 Amp service, determine appliance current load prior to turning on appliances or using interior outlets.

- ◆ If cable service is provided, hook up a 75 Ohm RG59 or RG6 cable to the cable connection in the roadside rear compartment.
- ◆ A phone connection port is provided in the water service compartment. Phone utility outlets are placed throughout the motorhome, including a phone line to be attached to a satellite receiver for Pay-Per-View movies and events.
- ◆ Hook the potable water hose to the city water connection in the water service center.

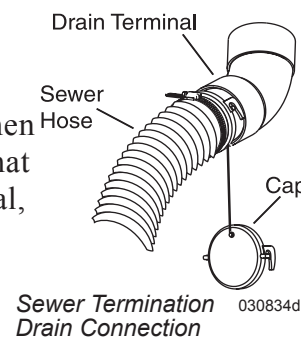
- ◆ Hook-up the sewer hose. Sewer drain pipe diameters are generally either three or four inches. Proper sewer hose adapters will ensure against leaks or spillage. With the sewer hose properly connected open the grey water valve (liquid waste drain). The black water valve (solid waste drain) remains closed until the tank is full or until time of departure.



DRY CAMPING

Plan ahead and conserve resources when staying at a location that does not have electrical, water or sewage hookups.

Before arriving at the site, ensure the house batteries are fully charged and properly maintained (see Section 8 in Batteries - House under “*Battery Maintenance*”), the fresh water tank and water heater are full and waste holding tanks are empty.



To conserve water and fuel:

- ◆ Operate the refrigerator on propane. Plan what is needed from the refrigerator prior to opening. Conserve propane by cooking over a campfire.
- ◆ Turn the water heater on about twenty minutes prior to use. Once heated, water will remain hot for several hours. Turn the water heater off when not in use.
- ◆ Set the thermostat temperature slightly lower than desired to prevent frequent cycling of the heating system.
- ◆ Know tank capacities and routinely check fluid and propane levels especially during cold weather.
- ◆ Use ventilation fans or open windows to reduce use of the roof air conditioner.
- ◆ Reduce water consumption when showering by turning the water off when soaping down then back on to rinse. When water conservation is critical, take a sponge bath or use campground shower facilities if available. Do not fill the sink with water to wash only a few dishes. Use disposable dishes when possible.

To conserve battery power:

- ◆ Do not allow batteries to fully discharge before operating the generator. If possible, run the generator twice a day, morning and afternoon, to charge the batteries.

- ◆ Turn off the inverter when not in use.
- ◆ Turn off interior 12 Volt DC power whenever possible. Refrigerator, battery charging and inverter operation is not affected. Turn off small battery operated items i.e., porch, bay exterior step and compartment lights, etc. Turn off the antenna boost when not watching TV. One light left on can quickly reduce battery reserves.

Typical Current Draw	
Battery Cut-out	1.5 Amps
13" TV	1.7 Amps
Rope Light (10 ft.)	1.3 Amps
Porch Light	2.0 Amps
Fluorescent Bulb (1)	2.1 Amps
Halogen Ceiling Light (1)	.09 Amps

- ◆ Keep a working flashlight handy for night trips through the campsite and inside the motorhome. When interior lighting is desired, use one light in a central location such as the vanity.
- ◆ Turn on the water pump only when using water.
- ◆ If weather does not permit or no outdoor table is available, eat at the dinette table by candlelight.
- ◆ Operate the generator when using convection microwave oven.

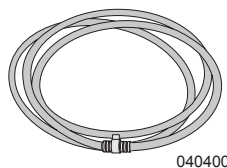
BREAKING CAMP

Preparing the motorhome for travel will require several small tasks. Properly securing and storing items will help to prevent them from getting lost or damaged. Below is a checklist guide to reference when preparing to break camp.

Outside Checklist:

- ◆ Disconnect the cable TV.
- ◆ Disconnect and stow the telephone line.
- ◆ Retract awnings and secure them for travel.
- ◆ Close the primary propane shut-off valve on the propane tank.
- ◆ Connect the sewer hose.
- ◆ Drain and flush holding tanks. Start by closing the grey water valve. Run enough cold water down sink and shower drains to fill the grey tank at least 50%. Use caution to avoid overfilling or flooding the grey tank. Open the black tank valve and allow adequate time for black tank to drain. If applicable, connect a non-potable water hose to the "Tank Flush" connection and flush the black tank system. Close black tank valve and open grey water valve. Water from the grey tank will help to flush the drain hose. Once evacuated, close grey water valve. Disconnect the sewer hose and flush with clean water from a non-potable hose. Store the hose. Replace the sewer cap.

Screw the ends of the hose together before storage to prevent leakage and to prevent dust and insects from entering the hose.



- ◆ Fill the fresh water tank then disconnect fresh water hose from the source. If applicable, remove the water pressure regulator from the city water faucet and store.
- ◆ Turn shore power breaker off and disconnect shore line. Wind up and store shore cord. Secure door.
- ◆ Check all tire pressures.
- ◆ Inspect tires and wheels.
- ◆ Secure all compartment doors.
- ◆ Check for fluid leaks under and around the motorhome.

Engine Checklist:

- ◆ Inspect the engine, transmission and the engine compartment for fluid leaks.
- ◆ Inspect the area under the motorhome for fluid leaks or puddles.
- ◆ Check all fluid levels: oil, antifreeze, transmission, hydraulic fluid and washer fluid.
- ◆ Inspect belts and hoses for wear.
- ◆ Inspect wiring for loose, frayed or corroded connections.
- ◆ Start engine and listen for unusual noise.
- ◆ Inspect gauges and controls for proper operation.

Interior Checklist:

- ◆ If applicable, start the engine allowing the air suspension to obtain proper ride height.
- ◆ Clear the slide room path, clean the floor and move the driver and passenger seats forward. Ensure cabinet doors are closed to prevent contact damage then retract the slide room.

CAUTION:

To extend or retract the slideout room, the ignition must be off and the park brake set and the motorhome supported by air suspension. Do not operate the slideout room with the air suspension (air springs) deflated. Damage to the slideout room, mechanism or seals can occur. Confirm the house batteries are fully charged.

- ◆ Secure and fasten all interior doors. Lock the shower door.
- ◆ Close roof vents and windows.
- ◆ Secure all loose, heavy or sharp objects in case of a sudden stop.
- ◆ Close all cabinet doors and drawers.
- ◆ Turn off interior lights.
- ◆ Turn off the water pump.
- ◆ Check the fuel level gauge and all other dash gauges for operation and correct level indications.

Departure Checklist:

- ◆ Check items in storage bays to ensure shifting or damage of items will not occur.
- ◆ Look around, above and under the motorhome for obstructions. Check for debris stuck between the rear dual tires.
- ◆ Outside compartment doors should be closed and locked.
- ◆ Check operation of all exterior lights, headlamp, taillamp, brake and clearance lights.
- ◆ Secure all awning and travel locks.
- ◆ Secure and lock the entry door for travel.
- ◆ Pull forward out of the campsite. Ensure the site is clean and no items are forgotten.

EMERGENCY ROADSIDE PROCEDURES

If an emergency situation occurs, use the appropriate braking technique and pull off the roadway a safe distance from traffic (if possible). Set the parking brake and turn on the hazard warning flashers, especially when parked alongside traffic lanes. In the event of an emergency stop due to a mechanical breakdown or other motorhome related problems, contact the manufacturer's customer support or an emergency service provider.

Road flares or reflective warning signs should be displayed if the motorhome is on the side of the road for any length of time. Guidelines for placing warning triangles depend upon the road characteristics and visibility. **For example:** The standard placement is 10, 100 and 200 ft. from the rear of the motorhome when on a divided highway or one-way road. On a two-way road, with traffic traveling both directions, the same placement is required at the front of the motorhome. Roads with curves and hills may require the placement of the last/furthest triangle to be 500 ft. behind the motorhome in order to safely warn approaching traffic.

EMERGENCY SERVICE PROVIDER		
Equipment	Provider	Emergency Number
Motorhome	Monaco Customer Support	1-877-466-6226
Chassis:	Roadmaster	1-877-466-6226
Engine: International	Customer Assistance Center	1-800-448-7825
Transmission	Allison Transmission	1-800-524-2303
Towing	Owner's Advantage Program	1-877-211-8135
Tires:	Continental	1-800-461-1776

In Case of Flat Tire

In the event of a flat tire, it is recommended to call for roadside assistance. The size and weight of the motorhome and its tires require proper equipment to change the tire. A professional service technician will have the equipment and training needed to repair or replace the tire. In the case of sudden tire failure, avoid heavy braking. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually decrease speed. Slowly move to a safe off-road place which should be a firm level spot. Turn the ignition off and turn the hazard flasher system on. Save the old tire for possible warranty coverage.

WARNING:

DO NOT crawl under the motorhome for any reason if a wheel has been removed. Any number of circumstances could cause the motorhome to suddenly fall, resulting in severe injury or death.



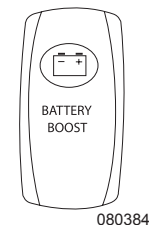
070175

Dead Chassis Battery

A discharged battery will not supply the amount of amperage necessary to crank and start the engine. If the engine fails to crank, or cranks slowly due to a discharged chassis battery, the Battery Boost switch will allow a temporary connection of the house battery to the chassis battery to increase amperage.

Battery Boost Switch:

The Battery Boost switch engages a heavy-duty solenoid to electrically connect the house batteries to the engine battery in the event the engine will not crank or cranks slowly. The solenoid is designed for short-term high-current intermittent use. Engaging the boost solenoid for an extended period will damage the solenoid.



080384f

Located on
dash

Jump Starting Using Battery Boost Switch:

- ♦ With ignition key Off, press and hold the Battery Boost switch for ten seconds. After ten seconds, continue to hold the switch and attempt to crank the engine.
- ♦ If the engine fails to crank or does not crank fast enough, discontinue the attempt. Continued attempts will only diminish any remaining surface charge in the chassis battery and end future alternative attempts.
- ♦ Next, start the generator. This may require using the Battery Boost switch for the generator to start from the engine battery. Once the generator is operating, the electrical combination of the generator and the inverter will charge the batteries.

- ◆ Allow the generator to run approximately ½ hour before attempting to crank the engine.
- ◆ Press the Battery Boost switch and attempt to crank the engine.
- ◆ If the engine fails to crank, or does not crank fast enough to start the engine, the chassis battery may be depleted and the motorhome will require a jump start or connect an external charger to the chassis battery.

Jump Starting Using an External Source:

When using jumper cables to start the engine, the cables must connect in a parallel configuration. That is, positive (+) to positive and negative battery (-) to negative chassis (-). Always connect the positive (+) before connecting the negative (-). To prevent arcing when disconnecting the cables; disconnect the negative (-) before disconnecting the positive (+).

WARNING:

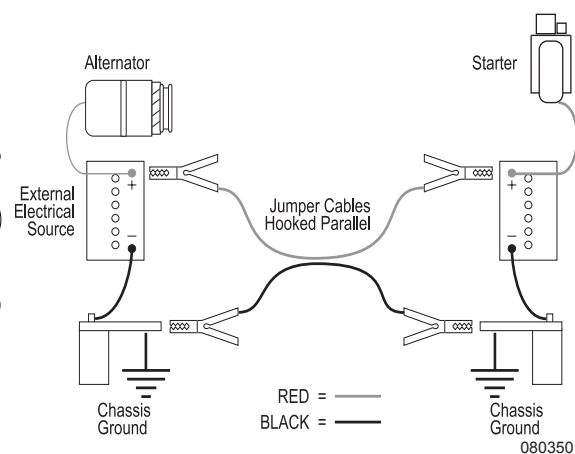
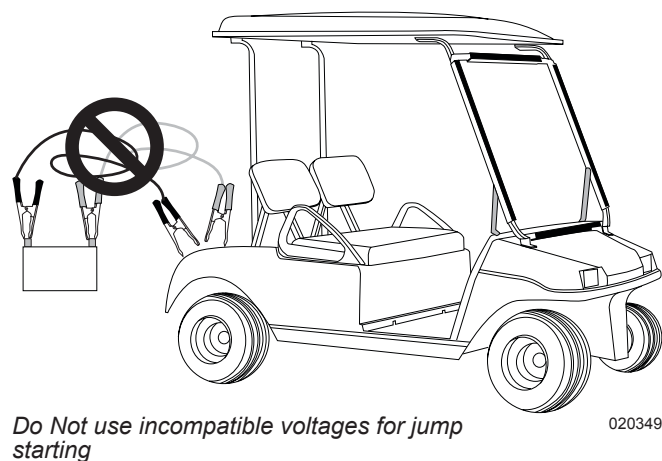
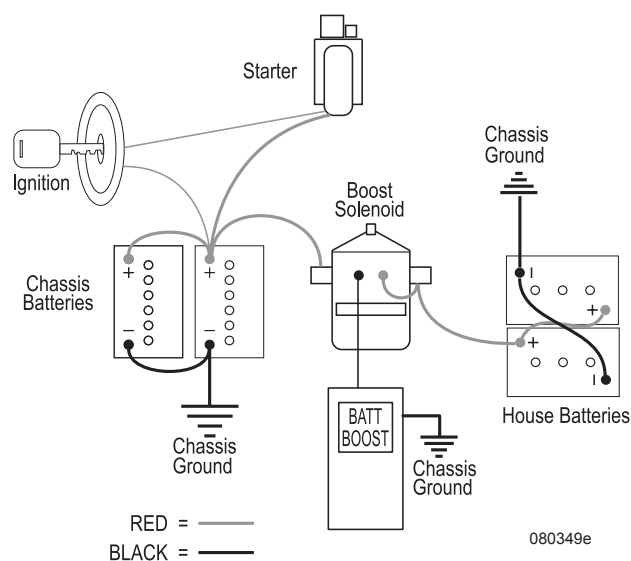
Always ventilate the battery compartment prior to any work or service to the batteries. Gas emitted by the batteries can explode when exposed to smoking material, flames, sparks or other sources of ignition, resulting in injury or vehicle damage. Batteries contain sulfuric acid that can burn skin, eyes and clothing. Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. Connect only to the chassis, away from the battery.

CAUTION:

A large amount of electrical current is required to jump-start an engine. The sizes of the battery, alternator and jumper cables supplying the “jump” are current limiting factors. Wait a sufficient amount of time for a surface charge to build before attempting to start the engine. Voltage fluctuations that occur during a jump-start procedure can damage sensitive electronic equipment and charging systems. If a jump-start is necessary, it is recommended to call Roadside Assistance. They will have the equipment necessary to jump-start the motorhome.

CAUTION:

Do not use the towed vehicle for jump-starting. The charging system of the towed vehicle does not supply the amperage necessary to jump-start the motorhome. Voltage sensitive equipment on the towed vehicle can be damaged and render the towed vehicle disabled.

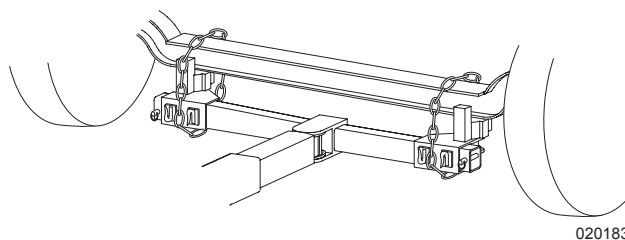
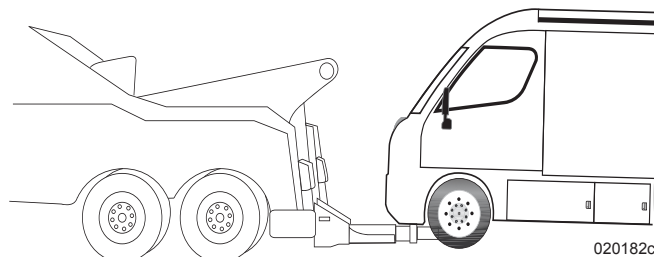


- ◆ When using an external electrical source to connect to the chassis battery, turn the chassis and house battery disconnect switches off prior to hooking up the jumper cables.
- ◆ Hook up the cables then wait several minutes to allow a surface charge to build in the chassis battery before attempting to start the engine.
- ◆ Turn on the chassis and house battery disconnect switches and attempt to start the engine. **Do not** crank the engine more than a few seconds.
- ◆ After the engine starts, disconnect the cables. Disconnect the negative (-) cables before disconnecting the positive (+) cables to prevent arcing.
- ◆ If the engine does not crank, or cranks slowly, **DO NOT CONTINUE**. Extensive damage, fire or injury can occur. Obtain help from a qualified technician.

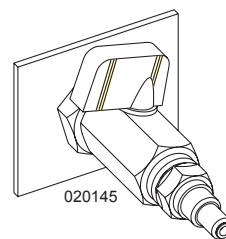
TOWING PROCEDURES

If calling a towing company for service, it is recommended to use a lowboy or landoll type of trailer. If a tow truck is used it needs to have a support arm that goes under the motorhome and secures to the front axle. Inform the tow company of the axle weights and total weight of the motorhome.

Other important information is the length of the motorhome, number of passengers and milepost location. Two tow trucks may be necessary to tow the motorhome and to tow a trailer or tow vehicle if it is not operational.

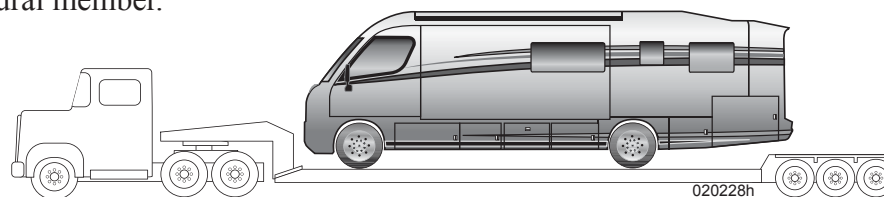


The towing company may need to locate the air nipple to release the air brakes. The air nipple is located in the front generator compartment and should be used by towing personnel only. Generally, if the motorhome ever needs to be towed, use the following instructions.



Air Nipple: Located roadside next to radiator above steering gear.

- ◆ Secure any loose or protruding parts if the motorhome is damaged.
- ◆ Inspect the points of attachment on a disabled motorhome. If attachment points are damaged, select other attachment points at a substantial frame structural member.



2012 Vesta

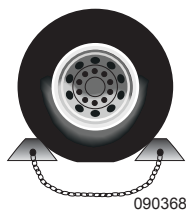
- ◆ **Never** allow anyone under a motorhome while it is being lifted by towing equipment unless the disabled motorhome is adequately supported by safety stands.
- ◆ **Do not** tow the motorhome from the rear. Towing from the rear will severely overload the front tires and suspension, possibly resulting in tire and/or front suspension failure. Rear frame extensions are not designed to support weight loads imposed by lifting the motorhome from the rear.
- ◆ If the rear wheels are disabled, place the motorhome on a flat bed trailer, or use a heavy duty dolly under the rear wheels and tow the motorhome from the front.
- ◆ The drive shaft must be removed to prevent damage to the transmission. Secure end caps to prevent losing or contaminating the needle bearings.
- ◆ The mud flap may need to be removed to prevent damage due to limited ground clearance.

WARNING:

In case the motorhome requires towing, ensure all precautions are followed. The drive shaft must be disconnected and the mud flap may need to be removed. The manufacturer WILL NOT cover damage to the motorhome caused by a towing company.

Disabling Parking Brake

The park/emergency brakes apply to the drive axle only. The brakes can be released manually if the air system will not build sufficient air pressure to release them. This emergency procedure is to be used by trained technicians or towing personnel to move the motorhome to a safe location or repair facility.



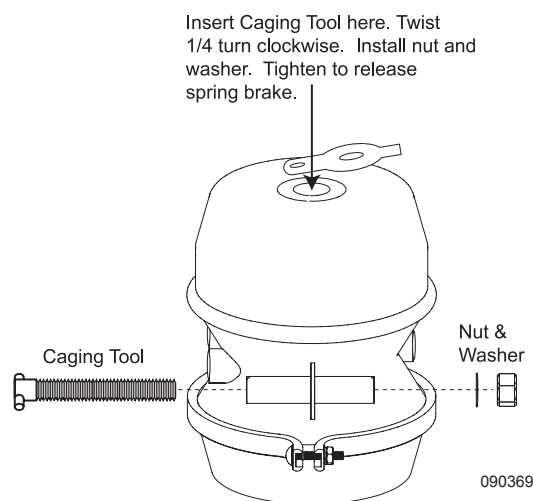
Example of a properly chocked wheel.

WARNING:

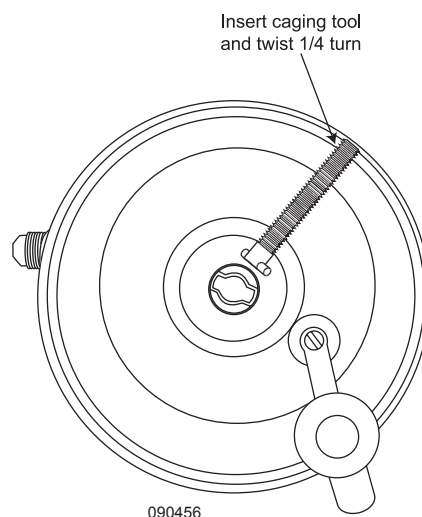
Only trained personnel should perform this procedure. Brake chamber spring is under high pressure. Removal of retaining band could result in serious injury or death.

Disabling Brakes:

- ◆ Place wheel chocks firmly against the wheel before performing this procedure.
- ◆ Remove the plug from the center of rear brake chamber on the drive axle.



Brake Chamber



- ◆ Remove the caging tool from its holder on the brake chamber and insert the tool into hole. Turn clockwise to engage.
- ◆ Screw nut and washer onto caging tool. Use a wrench to tighten the nut, compressing the internal spring to release the brake.
- ◆ Repeat procedure for the other side.

Enabling Brakes:

- ◆ After towing, or when air pressure is again available, loosen the nut and remove the tool. Return the caging tool to its original location and replace the plug.
- ◆ Repeat for the other side.

WARNING:

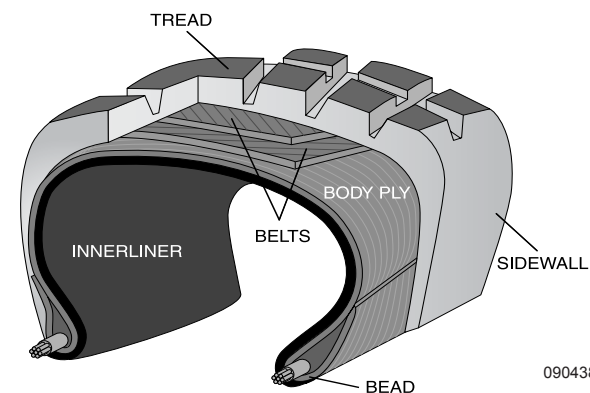
Failure to securely chock the wheels can result in the motorhome rolling when the spring brakes are released. Severe injury or death can occur.

TIRES

Maintaining proper tire inflation pressure is important for proper tire load carrying capacity and wear. Improper pressure will lead to abnormal wear and/or sudden tire failure. Weigh the motorhome fully loaded for travel to determine proper tire inflation pressure. If one tire position on the axle is heavier than the other side, inflate both sides according to the heaviest side. This will provide correct tire inflation pressure across the axle while cornering. To obtain the maximum wear and best service from tires, it is helpful to understand their components and functions.

Tire Components:

- ◆ **Tread:** Provides traction and cornering grip.
- ◆ **Belts:** Stabilize and strengthen the tread.
- ◆ **Sidewall:** Protects the side of the tire from road and curb damage.
- ◆ **Body Ply:** Provides tire strength and flexibility.
- ◆ **Bead:** Assures an air-tight fit with the wheel.
- ◆ **Inner Liner:** Keeps air inside the tire.



Importance of Air Pressure

The most important factor in maximizing the life of the tires is maintaining proper inflation pressure. Driving with an underinflated or overinflated tire is dangerous and may cause premature wear, tire damage, sudden tire failure that can result in loss of control of the motorhome.

An underinflated tire will cause excessive heat that can exceed design limits of the rubber and radial cords and could result in sudden failure. An underinflated tire will also cause poor motorhome handling, rapid and/or irregular tire wear and an increase in rolling resistance that results in decreased fuel economy.

An overinflated tire will reduce the tire's footprint/contact patch with the road, thus reducing traction, braking capacity and handling of the motorhome. Overinflation of a tire for the load will result in a harsh ride, uneven tire wear and is susceptible to impact damage. Maintaining correct tire inflation pressure is of the utmost importance and should be a part of regular maintenance checks.

WARNING:

Driving on a tire that is underinflated can exceed the design limits of the tire and may damage the sidewall. A damaged sidewall can burst upon inflation resulting in serious damage, injury or death. Aged tires are also susceptible to sidewall damage.

The motorhome manufacturer is not the author of this chart and makes no representation or warranty concerning the accuracy of the information disclosed by the chart. Monaco is not responsible for the accuracy of the information disclosed or for any errors within the Load Inflation Chart.

WARNING: Do not exceed tire manufacturer's maximum speed rating.

Load Inflation Table

Federal law requires the size of the tire, the tire's maximum inflation pressure and load capacity as well as load range be molded into the sidewall of the tire. The amount of inflation pressure to use is dependent upon the weight of the motorhome when fully loaded ready for travel. The load inflation table indicates inflation pressure based on weight.

Always comply with the tire manufacturer's recommended inflation pressure. This requires the motorhome be weighed in a loaded, ready to travel condition, to determine actual weight carried by the tires. Actual weight of the motorhome can vary significantly depending on how it is loaded. For optimum tire wear, ride and optimum handling always comply with the manufacturer's suggested inflation pressure. From the factory, tires are inflated to pressure(s) appropriate for the actual weight on each axle in the unloaded, as shipped condition. When the motorhome is loaded ready for travel, check and adjust inflation pressure on each tire as indicated in the load inflation table.

WARNING:

Do not overinflate or underinflate tires. Sudden tire failure can result.

Tire Size	Max Speed Rating (MPH)	Single (S) Dual (D)	Inflation PSI								
			80	85	90	95	100	105	110	115	120
255/70R22.5	75	S	4190	4370	4550	4675	4895	5065	5205	5400	5510(H)
		D	3970	4110	4275	4410	4455	4610	4675	4915	5070(H)

The Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) of the axles listed on the federal certification label attached to the motorhome is the maximum allowable loaded weight on an axle.

When the actual loaded weight of the motorhome and the weight on each axle is unknown, follow the recommended tire inflation pressure(s) listed on the federal certification label. When loading a motorhome never exceed the motorhome's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the GAWR for each axle. Contact the tire manufacturer for further information concerning proper tire pressure inflation and other tire issues.

NOTE:

The motorhome is equipped with Continental 255/70R/22.5 HSR Load Range H radial tires at the time of printing. The motorhome manufacturer will not be responsible for substitution of an incorrect tire size or load range. Verify actual tire brand, size and load range before obtaining replacement tires.

Understanding the Load Inflation Table:

The tire size is listed in the left margin of the table. Inflation pressure and weight rating will vary depending if the wheel position has a single tire indicated by S or a dual wheel position (drive axle) indicated by a D. Locate the corresponding psi at the top columns to obtain the correct inflation pressure for a given wheel position. All tires on any axle must be inflated to the heaviest wheel position on that axle due to weight transfer that occurs when cornering.

NOTE:

Every load range has a maximum rating as well as a minimum rating. Do not exceed those ratings.

NOTE:

If weight of a wheel position is under the minimum weight rating, the tire(s) must be inflated to the minimum weight rating as listed in the table.

WARNING:

Do not exceed the tire manufacturer's maximum speed rating.

Inspecting & Pressure

Inflation pressure is rated at a cold psi. Cold psi is defined as early in the morning before the day's ambient temperature, sun's radiant heat or the heat generated while driving have caused the inflation pressure to temporarily increase. Check tire inflation pressure every morning before driving. Use a quality truck tire gauge with an angle airhead to ensure access to the dual wheel positions of the drive axle.

Ensure the valve cap is replaced on the stem after the inflation pressure is checked. Use valve stem caps with a positive seal to prevent air escaping from the valve stem. If there are extension hoses on the valve stem, make sure they are good quality reinforced stainless steel braid. Attach hoses securely to the outer wheel.

The valve stem cap guarantees the valve core will remain free of dirt and foreign material. Material lodged between the valve core and internal stem can cause slow leaks resulting in tire failure.

Optimum tire performance is achieved at proper inflation pressure for the load carried. Do not mix tires of different tread patterns, size or construction on the same axle. The difference in traction could cause rear end gear bind and mechanical damage to the drive train.

CAUTION:

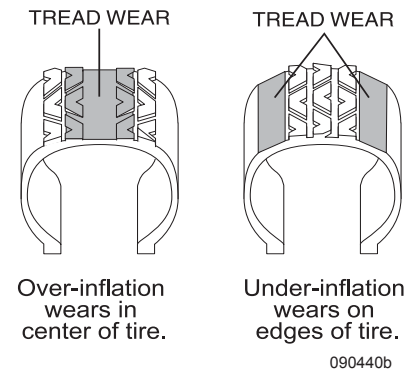
Never let air out of a hot tire.

Over-inflation can cause:

- ◆ Hard ride.
- ◆ Tire bruising or carcass damage.
- ◆ Rapid tread wear in the center of the tire.

Under-inflation can cause:

- ◆ Tire squeal on turns.
- ◆ Separations.
- ◆ Rapid and uneven wear on the edges of the tread.
- ◆ Circumferential breaks.
- ◆ Tire container may bruise or rupture.
- ◆ Higher risk of road hazard.
- ◆ Tire cord breakage.
- ◆ Loss of casing durability.
- ◆ Excessive tire temperature.
- ◆ High fuel consumption.
- ◆ Reduced handling quality.

**WARNING:**

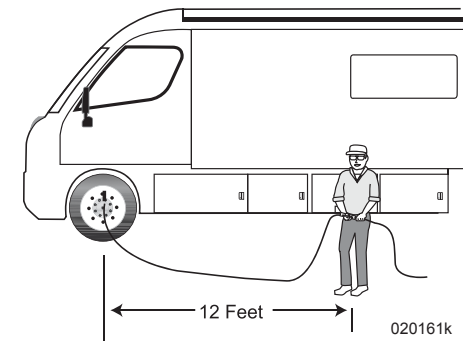
A slow leak may go unnoticed on one of the dual tires. This can cause the good tire to fail by exceeding the load limit. Tires with damaged sidewalls can burst upon inflation. A flat or nearly flat tire can also generate enough heat from friction to ignite.

Unequal tire pressures on same axle can cause:

- ◆ Uneven braking.
- ◆ Swerve upon acceleration.
- ◆ Steering lead.
- ◆ Torque steer.
- ◆ Reduced handling quality.

WARNING:

For safety purposes, clear the area of people and pets during tire inflation. Inflate tires using a remote inflation device.



Air Pressure Checklist

- ◆ When inspecting the tires, confirm the tires are cool before increasing or reducing air pressure. Driving a short distance can heat up tires.

NOTE:

If the motorhome must be driven a distance to get air, check and record the tire pressure first and add the recorded calculation when reaching the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as driven. Do not reduce air pressure when tires are hot.

- ◆ Remove the cap from the valve on one tire.
- ◆ Firmly press a tire gauge onto the valve and record reading.
- ◆ Add air to achieve recommended air pressure.
- ◆ If the tire is overfilled, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Recheck the pressure with the tire gauge.
- ◆ Replace the valve cap.
- ◆ Repeat with each tire.
- ◆ Visually **inspect** all the tires for nails or other objects that could be embedded or puncture the tire and cause an air leak.
- ◆ Check the sidewalls for gouges, cuts, bulges, or other irregularities.

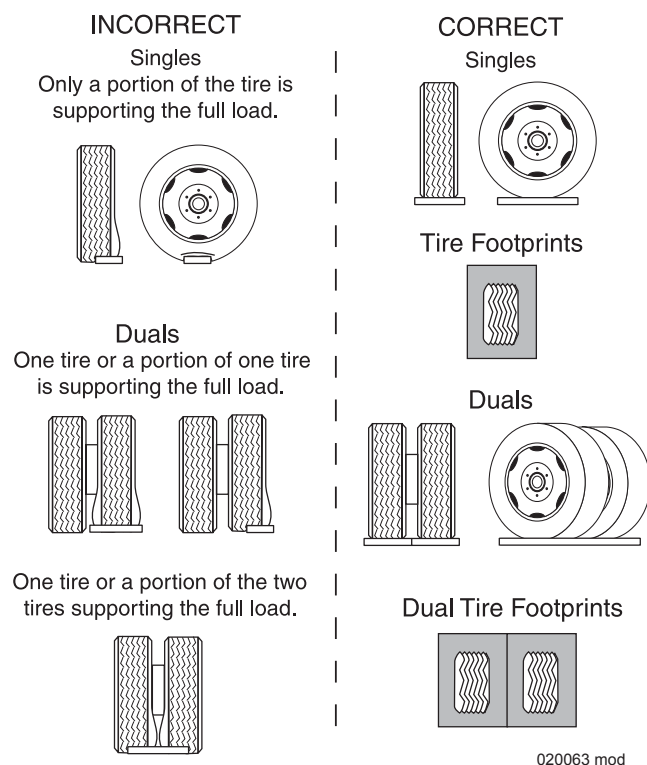
NOTE:

Air pressure in a tire increases (warm weather) or decreases (cold weather) one to two pounds for every 10° F of temperature change.

Tire Support When Leveling

Extreme caution must be taken to ensure the tires are fully supported when placing blocks under the tires. The load on the tire should be evenly distributed on the support block. In the case of dual tires, distribute the load evenly on blocks for both tires. If not properly supported, the steel cables in the sidewall of the tires may be damaged and could lead to premature fatigue of the sidewall.

Tire "Support" Methods



CAUTION:

Supporting the tires prevents damage to the sidewall of the tires but does not prevent tire roll.

Tire Vibration

Sudden tire failure is often preceded by tire vibration. Symptoms that can cause tire failure are a bulge in the sidewall or swelling in the tire carcass. Striking an object or large hole in the road surface can damage a tire. Inspect the tires periodically thereafter as rotational forces can continue to stress damaged areas and later manifest in tire failure. If an unusual vibration begins or a bulge is noticed in the sidewall, have the tires evaluated by a qualified professional as soon as possible.

Tire Rotation

Tire rotation can increase the useful life of the tires by achieving uniform wear on all of the tires. Have the tire manufacturer determine the rotation pattern. The first tire rotation is the most important in determining which rotation pattern to use. Any unusual or unique wear patterns, or indications of uneven wear that may have developed, should be evaluated for possible tire rotation. Misalignment, imbalance or other mechanical problems may exist and will need to be corrected prior to rotation.

Tire Replacement

As represented within the tire manufacturer's published tire data guide, the size and rated load carrying capacity of the original equipment tires on your motorhome meet or exceed the motorhome's maximum axle weight/load ratings. Criteria used to determine when tire replacement is necessary are road hazard damage, wear, and age. Tire replacement based on wear is determined by either measuring the tire's groove depth or a visual inspection of wear bars. Replace tires when the groove depth is 2/32" or less on rear tires and 4/32" or less on front tires. Wear bars are raised areas cast into the groove of the tire. Replace the tire when the wear bar in the groove is even (preferably before) with the road surface contact patch. A worn out tire cannot adequately channel water through the groove, which will result in hydroplaning.

The tire manufacturer determines tire replacement based on age. While ozone inhibitors in the rubber help extend the life expectancy of a tire, exposure to the elements slowly breaks down the rubber, which can then suddenly fail when put to use. Tires that are five to seven years old (depending upon environment) are considered age worn and need to be replaced for safety even though the tire may not outwardly show age weathering and still has considerable tread.

Replacement tires on any axle, must be of the same manufacturer brand, model, size, and load range and must have a load rated carrying capacity equal to or greater than the original equipment tires. Mixing tires on any axle of a different brand, model, size, load rating and load range can cause unusual handling and uneven braking due to different traction coefficient and could result in sudden tire failure or loss of control due to non-symmetrical handling.

WARNING:

Any and all replacement tires must have a rated load carrying capacity equal to or greater than the gross axle weight/load ratings as identified by the federal certification label located adjacent to the Pilot's seat.

WARNING:

In many instances tire life is not determined by mileage or wear but by age. Tires are subject to weathering. Weathering cracks can appear in the sidewall and also run along the edge of the tire. Though the sidewall of the tire may look structurally sound, weathering can occur inside the groove of the tread. If any tire exhibits age weathering, replace all tires.

CAUTION:

Signs of irregular tread wear, exhibited by scalloping or unusually smooth areas on the tire surface, are cause for concern. Immediately have the tire manufacturer inspect the tires.

Built in tread wear indicators, or wear indicators that look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread, appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 2/32". The tire should be replaced when wear indicators appear.

Visually check tires for signs of uneven wear. Irregular tread wear is usually exhibited by low or unusually smooth areas on the tire surface. Consult the tire manufacturer as soon as possible.

Storage of Tires - Long Term

A cool, dry garage with a sealed cement floor is the preferred method of storage. Tires stored outside may prematurely age.

Prior to Storage:

- ◆ Thoroughly clean the tires.
- ◆ Unload the motorhome to reduce weight on the tires.
- ◆ Ensure the surface is reasonably level, firm, clean and has good drainage.
- ◆ Inflate the tires to the maximum inflation pressure as indicated on the Federal Certification Label.

During Storage:

- ◆ Cover the tires to block direct sunlight.
- ◆ Periodically ensure tires are at proper pressure.
- ◆ Move the motorhome every three months to prevent cracking in bulge areas, as well as flat spotting from prolonged sidewall strain and tread deflection.

Removal from Storage:

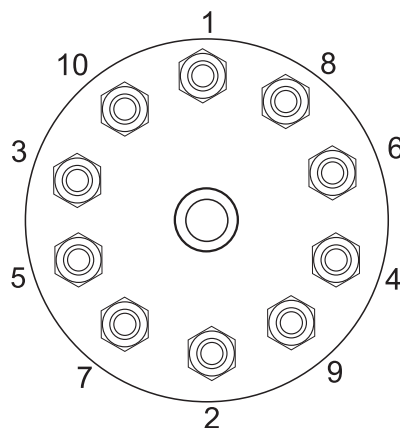
Before removing the motorhome from long-term storage thoroughly **inspect** each tire's tread area and air pressure. If the tires have lost air during storage, inflate them to the correct pressure.

WHEEL MOUNTING**Hub Piloted Mounting:**

- ◆ Flange nuts generate higher clamping force. Always use grade eight studs with hub mount wheels.
- ◆ Before installing the wheels, lubricate the hub pilot pads with a drop of oil to prevent galling. **Do not** lubricate any other wheel or hub surface.
- ◆ For a hub with intermittent pilot pads, position a pad at the twelve o'clock position to center the wheel and reduce runout.

NOTE

Loosen and tighten lug nuts in sequence (see illustration). Sequence tighten to 50 ft. lbs. first, then sequence tighten to 500 ft. lbs. Over-tightening can cause distortion.



Nut Tightening Sequence

090268 copy2

WARNING:

Never use wheels or lug nuts different than the original equipment as this could damage the wheel or the mounting system. Damage to the wheel or mounting system could cause a wheel to come off while the motorhome is in motion.

Front Wheels:

Slide the front wheel over the studs. Use caution to avoid damaging stud threads. Snug the nuts in sequence. When all nuts have been seated, tighten the nuts to 500 ft. lbs. in sequence (as in illustration).

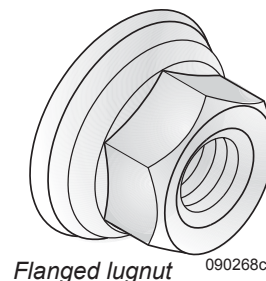
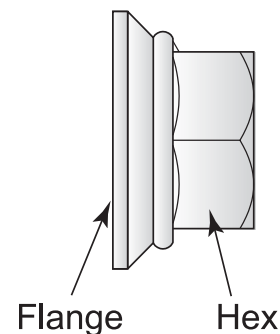
Dual Rear Wheels:

Slide the inner dual wheel over the studs. Use caution to avoid damaging threads. Align the handholds for valve access and slide the outer dual wheel over the studs, again using caution to avoid damaging the stud threads. When all nuts are seated, tighten the nuts to 500 ft. lbs. in sequence (as in illustration). The hub mount wheels use two-piece flange cap nuts for both front and rear applications. No inner cap nuts are required.

Torque the Nuts Properly:

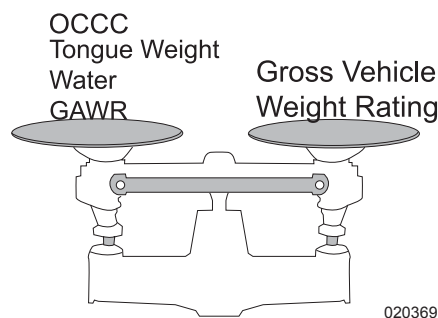
- ◆ Tighten the wheel nuts to the recommended lug nut torque. Do not over-tighten.
- ◆ Maintain the nut torque at the recommended level through planned periodic checks or at 10,000 mile intervals, whichever comes first.
- ◆ If air wrenches are used, they must be periodically calibrated for the proper torque output. Use a torque wrench to check air wrench output and adjust line pressure for the correct torque.

For used nuts add two drops of oil between flange and hex.



WEIGHING THE MOTORHOME

Proper weight distribution, load management and operating within established limitations will aid in safe and enjoyable travel. The information in this section outlines guidelines and provides information on the proper techniques for weighing to accurately determine total weight, axle weights, balance and tire inflation pressure. According to the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, most tire failures are a result of under-inflated tires.



Load management, weight distribution and properly inflated tires are the responsibility of the operator. The motorhome must be weighed in a loaded, ready to travel condition to correctly determine how much weight is placed on each wheel position, then added to determine the overall weight upon a single axle.

This may require one or more adjustments and the motorhome subsequently weighed again to verify proper and adequate adjustments. The first thing to determine is the maximum allowable weight of the motorhome. This information is found on the Federal Certification Label located adjacent to the driver seat under Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. This is the maximum allowable gross weight and cannot be exceeded.

Federal Certification and Weight Labels:

There will be two Federal Certification build labels and as many as three Federal Weight label(s) affixed to the motorhome.

Incomplete Vehicle Manufactured By –

This certification label lists the name of the chassis manufacturer, date of completion and location of construction. The gross vehicle weight rating and gross axle weight ratings. The tire size, load range and appropriate tire inflation pressure based on gross axle weight ratings when compared to the tire manufacturer load inflation table. Confirms the chassis conforms to U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) under their respective guidelines. The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is located at the lower right.

INC VEH MFD BY: MONACO RV LLC COBURG, OREGON		XXXXXX		ROADMASTER DIV.	
		Date of Manufacture: XX/XXXX			
GVWR	XXXXX(XXXXXX)	GAWR/FRT	XXXXX(XXXXXX)	GAWR/REAR	XXXXX(XXXXXX)
AXLE	TIRE SIZE - LR	RIM	XXXX(XXXX)	kPa(PSI)	COLD
FRT	XXX/XXR-XX.XH	XX.XH-XX.XX	XXX(XXX)	SINGLE	
REAR	XXX/XXR-XX.XH	XX.XH-XX.XX	XXX(XXX)	DOUBLE	

THIS INCOMPLETE VEHICLE CONFORMS TO U.S. FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS 102, 106, 119, 120, 121, 124 AND MAY BE MANUFACTURED AS A MULTIPURPOSE PASSENGER VEHICLE (MPV). THE COMPLETED VEHICLE WILL CONFORM TO THE AFOREMENTIONED STANDARDS IF NO ALTERATIONS ARE MADE TO IDENTIFIED COMPONENTS.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NO: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
100230a

Incomplete Vehicle Manufactured by Certification Label.

Manufactured By –

This certification label lists the body builder company and designate name, date of completion and location of construction and the name of the incomplete vehicle manufacturer. The gross vehicle weight rating and gross axle weight ratings. The tire size, load range and appropriate tire inflation pressure based on gross axle weight ratings when compared to the tire manufacturer's load inflation table. Confirms the completed vehicle conforms to all applicable U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards in effect as of the date of completion of manufacture. The vehicle identification number and the body builder Unit Serial number are located at the bottom of the label.

MFD BY: MONACO RV LLC COBURG, OREGON	XXXXXX Coach DIV.	XX/XXXX
INC VEH MFD BY: ROADMASTER	XX/XXXX	
GVWR	XXXXX(XXXXXX)	GAWR/FRT
AXLE	TIRE SIZE - LR	RIM
FRT	XXX/XXR-XX.XH	XX.XH-XX.XX
REAR	XXX/XXR-XX.XH	XX.XH-XX.XX

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE U.S. FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NO.: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
TYPE: MPV/MHA (MH/AC) UNIT SERIAL #: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

100230a

Manufactured by Certification Label.

Weight Limits:

Numerous Federal, State and local governments mandate weight limits. Understanding the terminology and performing proper weighing procedures will help eliminate confusion. It is important to weigh the motorhome in a loaded, ready to travel condition to ensure the Occupant and Cargo Carrying Capacity (OCCC), GVWR or GAWR are not exceeded. The total weight of the motorhome in a loaded, ready to travel condition must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the GAWR for a single axle.

The GVWR is the maximum total weight for which the motorhome is rated including occupants, fluids and cargo and any dealer installed equipment or accessories. The GAWR is the maximum weight for which a single axle is rated. The GCWR is the combined total of the GVWR and any towed load. The tires, wheels, chassis frame and/or drive train component(s) may limit the GVWR, GAWR or GCWR or any combination thereof.

Every recreational vehicle, even of the same make and model, will vary in actual loaded axle weight due to different options, floor plans, occupants and cargo. The motorhome must be weighed in a loaded, ready to travel condition to determine actual weight carried by each wheel position and axle.

Each wheel position must be weighed to determine no wheel position is overloaded and to confirm no single axle is overloaded.



It is possible be within the GVWR yet overloaded on one wheel position or axle. For this reason it is necessary to weigh each wheel position to determine the actual gross vehicle weight in a loaded, ready to travel condition and how that weight is distributed.

There are two important factors to consider when loading the motorhome: total weight and balance. When loading for travel, place heavy objects as low as possible, preferably on the floor or below in storage compartments. Load weight must be distributed as evenly as possible. Instructions and diagrams to properly weigh the motorhome are presented on the following pages. The heaviest wheel position on an axle will determine the tire inflation pressure for all tires on that axle. Reference the tire manufacturer load inflation table to determine the correct cold inflation pressure.

CAUTION:

State and Local authorities may impose weight restrictions to surface streets, bridges and parkways. These reductions can include maximum single axle weights or an overall maximum weight limitation based on the number of axles per vehicle.

Tire Pressure

The motorhome may weigh slightly heavier on one side. The heaviest wheel position (if applicable) on a single axle will determine the inflation pressure for all tires on that axle due to weight transfer that occurs when cornering. Improperly inflated tires can result in sudden tire failure (blowout). Cargo not properly balanced on the suspension, can result in poor handling, over-stressed chassis components, overloaded wheel positions and/or tires.

How the motorhome is loaded will influence tire inflation pressure and load carried by each axle. This is why each wheel position must be weighed. When the actual loaded weight of the motorhome and the weight on each axle are unknown, follow the recommended tire inflation pressure(s) listed on the federal certification label.

NOTE:

When adjusting tire inflation pressure, each tire on any axle must be inflated to the same pressure. The wheel position carrying the most weight will determine the tire inflation pressure for each tire of that particular axle.

WARNING:

Improperly inflated or overloaded tires can cause a blowout. An overloaded axle can cause a component failure of the suspension system. Tire blowouts or broken suspension components can lead to loss of vehicle control resulting in property damage, personal injury or death.

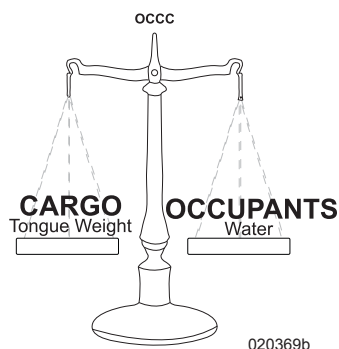
NOTE:

Contact the tire manufacturer for further information concerning tire inflation pressure and other tire concerns.

Occupant & Cargo Carrying Capacity:

Each motorhome, even of the same model year, floor plan and length, will weigh different due to options and accessories. The GVWR limits the weight of the entire load combination, regardless of the amount of weight of occupants, cargo, water, propane and tongue weight. Weighing will determine the GVWR is not exceeded as this is maximum allowable weight. However, Occupant & Cargo Carrying Capacity (OCCC) weight is comprised of variables in occupants, cargo, fresh water and tongue weight.

While the OCCC is a guide to the maximum allowable weight in combinations of occupants, cargo, water and tongue weight, the amount of weight in each of the categories (occupants, cargo, and water and tongue weight) can be adjusted so one can offset another or reduced entirely to gain advantage in GCWR. While maximum allowable weights are not to be exceeded, if one chooses to carry less water or no water, that can allow an increase in payload of cargo or tongue weight, offsetting one for another and still under maximum allowable weight of GVWR, GAWR, GCWR or OCCC.

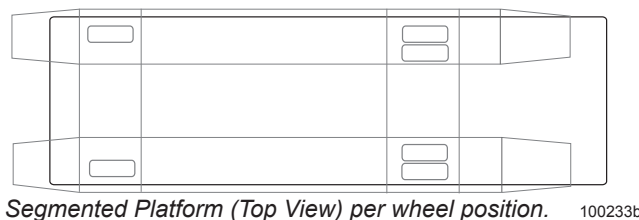
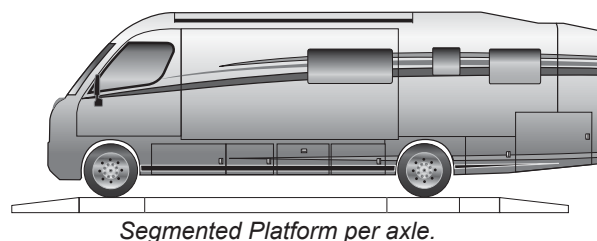
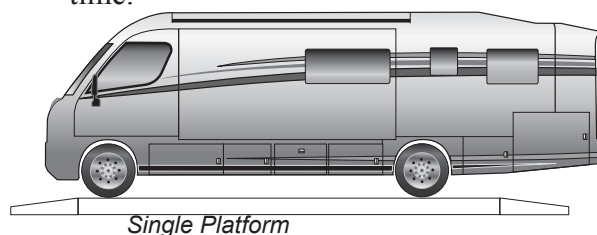


Scales

Certified public scales are located in moving and storage lots, farm supplies with grain elevators, gravel pits, recycling companies and large commercial truck stops. To locate a nearby public scale, check the yellow pages under Scales-Public or Weighers. Expect to pay a small fee.

Three basic types of scales:

- ◆ A large platform scale will allow the entire motorhome to fit on the scale to read the gross vehicle weight in one scale recording.
- ◆ A segmented platform scale is designed to weigh one axle at a time.
- ◆ A segmented platform scale per wheel position reads each wheel position at a time.



Each wheel position requires weighing to accurately determine the correct tire inflation pressure. When weighing, the scales and the motorhome must be level to obtain accurate scale readings. A definite lean in the motorhome will produce inaccurate scale readings.

INFORMATION:

The most accurate weighing method is to weigh each wheel position independently. Weighing the entire motorhome or a single axle will not reflect the actual weight carried by each wheel position. A segmented platform scale that reads a single axle may be used if a platform scale that will weigh each wheel position is unavailable. Divide the total axle reading by two for an approximation of what each wheel position may average. When weighing the dual wheel position on the drive axle, dividing that wheel position scale reading by two will determine the weight carried by each tire.

Four-Point Weighing

The motorhome must be weighed in a loaded, ready to travel condition to obtain accurate scale readings and to determine the proper tire pressure. All slide rooms must be retracted when weighing. The purpose for weighing the motorhome is to ensure the GVWR, GAWR and GCWR are not exceeded and that the tires are inflated to the correct pressure as recommended by the tire manufacturer. The exemplar worksheet is a guide.

- ◆ Record the GAWR of the front (steer) axle. Example: GAWR of the front axle listed on the Federal Certification label is 13,000 lbs. Using the chart, record 13,000 lbs. under front axle GAWR

Weigh roadside side front axle (Scale A) and record weight on chart Roadside front axle. Example: 6150 lbs.

Weigh curbside side front steer axle (Scale C) and record weight on chart Curbside front axle. Example: 6,200 lbs.

- ◆ Record the GAWR of the rear (drive) axle. Example: GAWR of the rear axle listed on the Federal Certification label is 20,000 lbs. Using the chart, record 20,000 lbs. under rear axle GAWR.

Weigh roadside drive axle (Scale B) and record weight on chart Roadside rear axle. Example: 9,350 lbs.

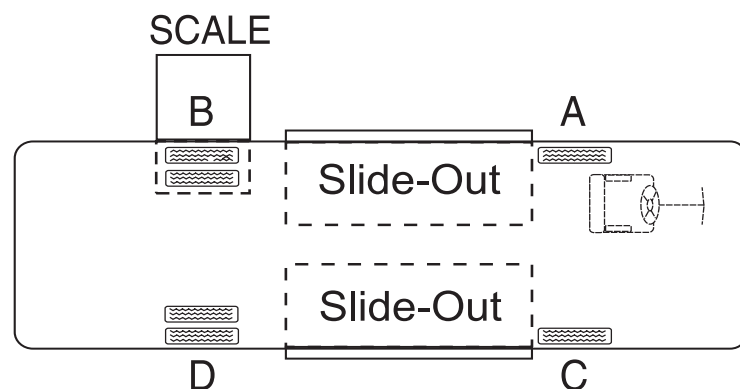
Weigh curbside drive axle (Scale D) and record weight on chart Curbside rear axle. Example: 9,500 lbs.

- ◆ Add scale readings from Roadside and Curbside front axle. Example: 12,350 lbs.
- ◆ Add scale readings from Roadside and Curbside rear axle. Example: 18,850 lbs.

	Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)	Roadside	Curbside	Total Axle Weight	Sum Difference
Front Axle	13,000	A. 6150	C. 6200	12,350	650
Rear Axle	20,000	B. 9350	D. 9500	18,850	1,150
Total	33,000	15,500	15,750	31,200	1,800

Exemplar Worksheet

100235b



020051bc

If necessary, adjust payload so that no single GAWR is exceeded. Total weight must not exceed the GVWR. Once weights are verified, the next step is to determine tire size. This information is stamped into the sidewall of the tire. Example: The tire size reads as follows: 295/80r 22.5 with a load range H. Cross reference the tire size and load range to the Load Inflation Table. The heaviest wheel position of an axle will determine tire pressure for all tires on that axle due to weight transfer that occurs when cornering.

- ◆ Example: The curbside tire is the heavier wheel position on the front axle weighing 6,200 lbs. Tire pressure for a 295/80r 22.5 @ 6200 lbs. according to the Load Inflation Table with load range H will be 95 PSI.
- ◆ Drive axle uses two tires at one wheel position. Dividing the weight by two for that wheel position will determine how much weight each tire is supporting. The curbside drive axle wheel position weighs 9500 lbs. Each tire is supporting 4750 lbs. This falls below the minimum weight listed. The minimum inflation pressure would be 80 PSI for the drive axle tires.

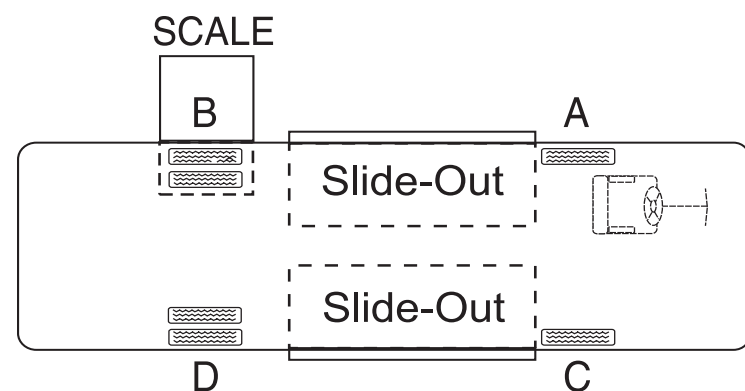
WARNING:
Improperly inflated or overloaded tires can cause a blowout. An overloaded axle can cause a component failure of the suspension system. Tire blowout or broken suspension components can lead to loss of vehicle control resulting in property damage, personal injury or death.

	Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)	Roadside	Curbside	Total Axle Weight	Sum Difference
Front Axle		A.	C.		
Rear Axle		B.	D.		
Total					

Actual Worksheet

100236b

CAUTION:
If actual weight carried by any tire is below the load inflation table minimum pressure, inflate the tire(s) to the minimum inflation in the load inflation table. Setting tire pressure below the minimum inflation pressure can overheat and damage the tire casing leading to premature tire failure or blowout.



020051bc

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
 LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: + =
 LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS
VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

$$= \frac{\text{TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT}}{\text{TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT}}$$

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS
VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE:

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

$$\text{REAR: } \frac{\quad}{\text{LEFT}} + \frac{\quad}{\text{RIGHT}} = \frac{\quad}{\text{TOTAL}}$$

= _____
TOTAL GROSS
VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

$$= \frac{\text{TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT}}{\text{TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT}}$$

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS
VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

$$= \frac{\text{TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT}}{\text{TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT}}$$

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS
VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

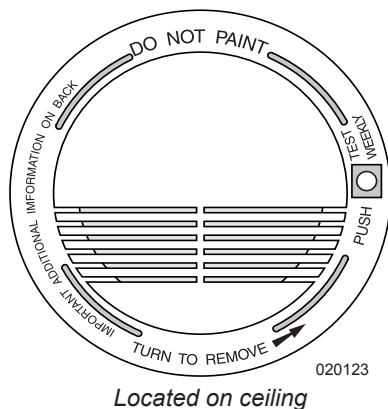
FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS
VEHICLE WEIGHT

SMOKE DETECTOR

Statistics show that most fire casualties are not caused by direct flame, but by less visible smoke (products of combustion). The smoke detector automatically returns from alarm to normal state when the reason for activation, the presence of smoke, is completely removed. Reduce risk of fire by being safety conscious.



Located on ceiling

WARNING:

There is no way to ensure against injury or loss of life in a fire; however, the smoke detector is intended to help reduce the risk of tragedy. Additional smoke detectors may help to reduce the risk. Proper use and care of the smoke detector could save lives.

INFORMATION:

Refer to the smoke detector OEM manual for detailed information and maintenance information.

Operation

When a 9 Volt DC battery is correctly connected the LED flashes every minute and a loud alarm will sound when a production of combustion is sensed.

NOTE:

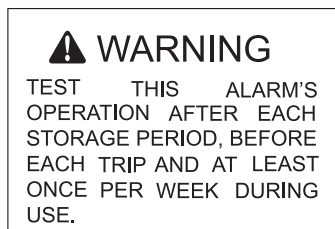
The unit will not operate without a battery. A battery flag will pop up preventing the unit from being installed to the mounting bracket without a battery. Carbon Zinc batteries average a service life of one year. Alkaline batteries average a service life of one to two years.

Testing

Simply press the test button on the smoke alarm cover for approximately three seconds. The alarm will sound if all electronic circuitry, horn and battery are working properly. The smoke alarm should be tested at least once a week when the motorhome is in use, prior to each trip and when the motorhome has been in storage. When testing the smoke alarm it is advised to stand at arm's length or muffle the alarm.

CAUTION:

Never use an open flame to test the smoke alarm as this may ignite the alarm or surrounding area.



020155e

Maintenance

Maintenance for Proper Operation:

- ◆ Test the smoke alarm once a week.
- ◆ Keep a supply of 9 Volt DC batteries on hand.
- ◆ Periodically vacuum the slots in the cover and sides with a soft brush attachment. Test the smoke alarm after the unit has been vacuumed.
- ◆ The smoke alarm will beep once a minute when battery power is low. Immediately replace the battery.

Troubleshooting

If the alarm does not sound when the test button is pushed, or with a smoke test, try the following:

- ◆ **Inspect** alarm for obvious damage.
- ◆ Check for the recommended battery type.
- ◆ Check the battery for proper connection or replace the battery if needed.
- ◆ Gently vacuum as recommended.

If these procedures do not correct the problem, **Do not** attempt repairs. Contact the manufacturer of the alarm if the smoke alarm is within the warranty period. Smoke detectors beyond the warranty period cannot be economically repaired.

CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTOR

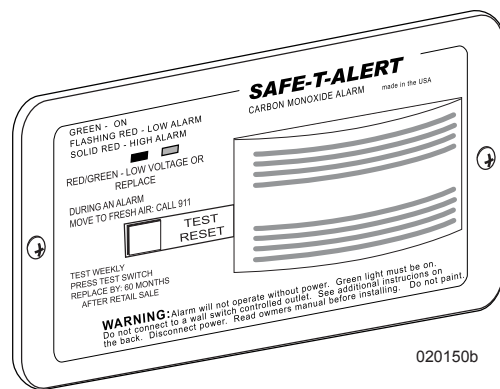
American National Standards Institute (ANSI) 119.2 - Fire & Life Safety 6.4.6 Carbon Monoxide Detectors states “CO detectors used must be listed as suitable for use in RV’s and installed in accordance within the terms of their listing. No specific mounting location is mandated for CO detectors; only that they be installed in accordance with their listing. The installation of the CO detector mounting bracket alone will be considered acceptable as long as the CO detector is provided.

A CO detector is required to be installed in any RV that either contains an internal combustion engine or is designed to have one installed. This would include all motorized RV’s, regardless of whether the fuel source is gasoline, diesel, propane, or other alternate fuel. This would also include an RV equipped with a generator or designed to accommodate future installation of a generator (commonly called “generator prep” setups). This would not include RV’s equipped to store or transport internal combustion engine vehicles.

Also, all truck campers must have a CO detector installed, since an internal combustion engine is ultimately present once the truck camper is mounted on a pickup truck.”

INFORMATION:

Refer to the CO detector OEM manual for detailed information and maintenance information.



Located in bedroom

The motorhome is equipped with a Carbon Monoxide detector. Everyone is at risk with Carbon Monoxide poisoning. Carbon Monoxide (CO) is a colorless, odorless and tasteless gas that binds with hemoglobin reducing the body’s ability to absorb and carry oxygen to vital organs. Even low levels of CO have been known to cause brain and other vital organ damage in unborn infants, with no effect on the mother.

When removed from exposure, the symptoms dissipate as Carbon Monoxide is expelled through the lungs. Level of contamination in the body reduces at half-life increments at approximately four-hour intervals. Treatment with Oxygen will quicken recovery time.

In cases of mild exposure, the symptoms may include: a slight headache, nausea, vomiting and fatigue. Some consider this a “Flu-like Symptom.” Symptoms for medium exposure may include a severe throbbing headache, drowsiness, confusion and fast heart rate. Extreme exposure can result in unconsciousness, convulsions, cardio-respiratory failure and death.

Young children and household pets may be the first affected. Other highly sensitive people include the elderly and those with lung or heart disease or anemia. The CO detector is designed to detect the toxic CO Gas resulting from incomplete combustion of any fuel. This can be gasoline, propane, natural gas, oil, charcoal or wood. Anything that burns fuel such as engines, generators, furnaces, gas stoves or water heaters, produce CO Gas. Consequently, it is uncommon for household smoke from cigarettes or normal cooking to cause the alarm to sound.

CAUTION:

Activation of this device indicates the presence of Carbon Monoxide (CO), which can be fatal. A concentration of above 100 PPM will cause a warning condition. Individuals with medical problems may consider using detection devices with lower Carbon Monoxide alarming capabilities. Prolonged exposure to the horn at a close distance may be harmful to hearing.

WARNING:

Constant beeping and a flashing red light means CO gas has been detected. Shut off all sources of CO such as propane appliances, the engine, generator ect. Open vents and windows to ventilate the motorhome. Evacuate the motorhome until conditions are safe to re-enter. Determine the source of the alarm and have the problems corrected before resuming operation.

The CO detector is wired to the house batteries. This allows reliable protection by alerting the build up of potentially dangerous levels of Carbon Monoxide. Once powered, the detector will run through a brief warm-up and shelf check prior to monitoring for CO gas.

Operation

The detector is equipped with a self-cleaning CO sensor and requires a ten minute initial warm-up period to clean the sensor element and achieve stabilization. During the warm-up period, the green power light will flash On and Off. The green power light should be lit when the power is on. If the light is not lit, turn off the power and check all wire connections. If the power is on and the connections are correct, but the indicator still does not light, the detector should be returned for service. **Do not** attempt to fix the detector. The indicator light displays a specific color to monitor along with a matching sound pattern.

Indicator Lights and Sound Patterns:

- ◆ On or normal condition is indicated by green. The CO detector has power and is sensing air for the presence of CO Gas. The alarm will not sound.
- ◆ Flashing red indicates low CO alarm condition along with four beeps then off for five seconds. The alarm will sound and can be reset by the Test/Reset button. The CO detector has detected the presence of 60 ppm.

- ◆ Steady red indicates a CO alarm condition. The detector has sensed the presence of levels over 100 ppm of Carbon Monoxide. The alarm will sound continuously until the Reset switch is reset.
- ◆ Alternating red and green indicates a malfunctioning alarm.

Alarm

If the alarm sounds, have the detector and the motorhome checked by an authorized service technician as soon as possible. Never disconnect a CO detector to silence an annoying alarm. Evacuate the motorhome immediately when the red light is lit and the alarm sounds. Do a head count to check that all persons are accounted for. Call the nearest fire department and ask them to determine the source of the Carbon Monoxide. Do not re-enter the motorhome until it has been aired out and the problem corrected.

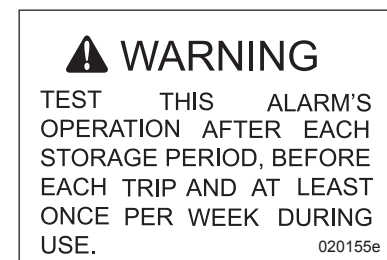
Potential Sources of CO in the motorhome:

- ◆ Engine Exhaust
- ◆ Portable Grills
- ◆ Portable Space Heaters
- ◆ Camp Fires
- ◆ Gas Stoves and Ovens
- ◆ Generator Exhaust
- ◆ Portable Generators
- ◆ Nearby Motorhomes
- ◆ Defective Engine Exhaust System

Testing

Test Procedures:

Test the Carbon Monoxide detector operation after the motorhome has been in storage, before each trip and at least once a week during use. Test by holding the Test/Reset button in until the alarm sounds four beeps and the indicator lamp is steady red. Six seconds later the alarm will again beep four times and the indicator light goes steady green.



Peak Level Memory:

The CO detector has the capability to remember the level of Carbon Monoxide that activated the alarm.

Press the Test/Reset button for less than one second and observe the visual and audible signals.

- ◆ One beep and one green flash indicate memory is clear.
- ◆ Two beeps and two red flashes indicate less than 100 ppm.
- ◆ Three beeps and three red flashes indicate less than 200 ppm.
- ◆ Four beeps and four red flashes indicate greater than 200 ppm.

NOTE:

Memory is erased when power is disconnected for 15 seconds.

Cleaning & Maintenance

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust or any other buildup on the detector. **Do not** wash. Wipe the detector with a damp cloth and dry with a towel. Do not open the detector for cleaning. Do not paint the detector. It is recommended that the Carbon Monoxide detector be replaced every five years.

The CO detector has no user service parts. If there is a problem with the detector refer to an authorized service center. **Do not remove power.**

INSPECTION:

Test the CO detector weekly and at the beginning and end of each trip.

FIRE EXTINGUISHER

The fire extinguisher in the motorhome is located near the main entrance door. Please read the operating instructions printed on the fire extinguisher. If there is any doubt on how to operate the fire extinguisher practice using it. Replace or recharge the extinguisher immediately after use.

Maintenance

Inspect the fire extinguisher at least once a month. Inspect more frequently if the extinguisher is exposed to weather or possible tampering. **DO NOT** test the extinguisher by partially discharging. Internal pressure will escape and the fire extinguisher will need to be replaced.

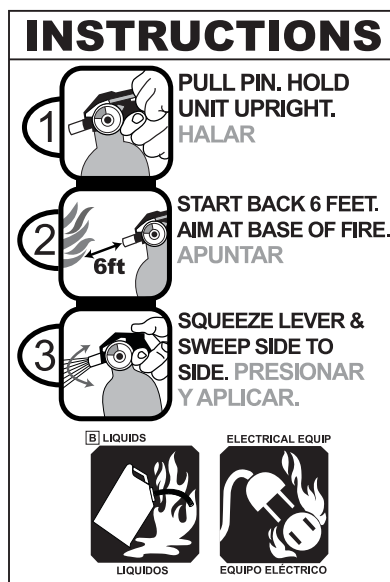
Use the PASS method:

Pull the pin. Hold extinguisher upright.

Aim at the base (bottom) of the fire and stand six feet away.

Squeeze the lever to discharge the agent.

Sweep the spray side to side until fire is totally extinguished.



020283b

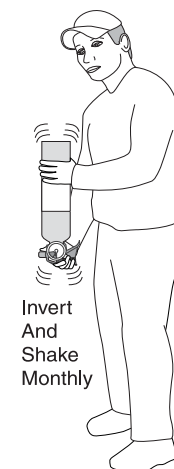
WARNING:

Road vibration will cause extinguisher powder to compact and may cause extinguisher malfunction. Invert and shake extinguisher monthly.

Three classes of fire can occur in a motorhome. Any fire can fall into more than one class; a fire that involves both burning paper and kitchen grease is a Class AB fire.

Classes of Fire:

- A** - Fires that are fueled by materials that leave a residue when they burn: paper, wood, cloth, rubber, and certain plastics.
- B** - Fires that involve flammable liquids and gases: gasoline, paint thinner, kitchen grease, propane and acetylene.
- C** - Fires that involve energized electrical wiring or equipment. If electricity to the equipment is turned off, a class C fire becomes one of the other two class fires.



020261

100209

ESCAPE (EGRESS) WINDOW

The Egress window, designated for use as an emergency exit, is identified by a red locking handle and Exit label.



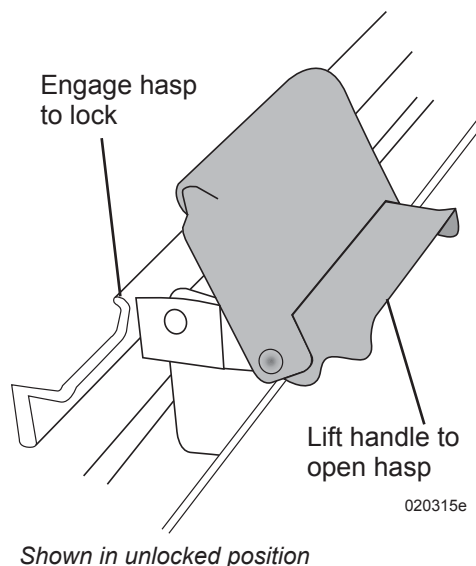
To Operate:

- ◆ To open, lift handles and push window outward.
- ◆ To lock, pull window closed.
- ◆ Engage hasp with window trim.
- ◆ Lower lock handle.

Hinges along the outside window top identify the Egress window on the motorhome exterior. The glass slider in the Egress window operates the same as all other windows in the motorhome.

Maintenance:

- ◆ Occasionally open and close the Egress window to prevent the rubber seal from sticking.



NOTES

This image shows a blank sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

Interior and Exterior Care

Section 3



EXTERIOR CARE.....	48	FABRICS.....	54	COUNTERTOPS	61
Corrosion.....	48	General Care & Cleaning.....	54	Solid Surface	61
Winter Drive Protection.....	48	Vinyl	54	Repairing Cuts and Scratches.....	61
Washing	49	Optima Leather & “O” Vinyl	55	STAINLESS STEEL SURFACES	62
Drying.....	49	Ultra-Leather	56	WINDOWS.....	62
Waxing	49	FLOORS.....	56	Condensation.....	62
Paint Codes	50	Carpet Cleaning.....	56	WINDOW TREATMENTS	63
Tire Care	50	Laminate Floor	57	Mini-Blinds	63
Bright Metal	50	Tile Floor.....	58	Day/Night Shades	63
Wheel Covers.....	50	SHOWER.....	58	MOLD & MILDEW.....	63
Wheels - Polished Aluminum	51	CEILING.....	59	PEST CONTROL.....	64
EXTERIOR MAINTENANCE.....	51	WALL COVERINGS	59	STORAGE	66
Fiberglass	51	WOOD CARE.....	60	Short Term.....	66
Roof Care & Seal Inspections	51			Long Term	67
Sealant Types.....	52			Winter Storage Checklist	68
INTERIOR CARE	53			Removal from Storage.....	69
Cockpit	53				

INFORMATION:

This section is on general cleaning and maintenance. Some of the articles within “Exterior & Interior Care - Section 3” may not apply to all models. Improper or inadequate maintenance may affect your warranty coverage. Please review this section carefully. For more information, see the terms and conditions of the Limited Warranty in the front of this Manual.

EXTERIOR CARE

Corrosion

The most common cause of corrosion to the motorhome exterior is accumulation of road salt, grime and dirt. These elements, combined with moisture, may possibly cause early component failure. The undercarriage, around wheel openings and the radiator charge air cooler package require periodic cleaning to prevent component failure caused from corrosive materials collected on roadways.

If the motorhome is stored or driven in areas where road salts are used or near the ocean, it should be washed at least once a week, including the undercarriage. Otherwise, it is recommended to hose off the undercarriage area at least once a month to help minimize the corrosion process.

High-pressure washers or steam cleaners are the most effective way of cleaning off the undercarriage and inside wheel openings. However, these devices can cause damage. Avoid directly spraying the painted surface with a high-pressure washer of any type. Also avoid directly spraying electrical wiring, connectors or electro-mechanical components with high pressure.

CAUTION:

It is up to the motorhome owner to properly wash and protect the motorhome and its components from corrosion. Sources of corrosion can come from road surfaces treated with de-icing agents or atmospheric conditions such as coastal regions.

CAUTION:

Exercise caution when cleaning the radiator charge air cooler package. Damage to the fins can result when using a high pressure washer or steam cleaner. The nozzle discharge pressure of these devices can exceed 1800 psi. Also avoid using high pressure/high temperature steam cleaners on the exterior paint surfaces. Remove all spattered washing debris from the exterior paint surfaces as soon as possible.

Winter Drive Protection

Various substances and chemicals are applied to roadways to reduce hazardous winter driving conditions. These substances can include rock salt, sand, gravel or chemical applications such as LMC (Liquid Magnesium Chloride).

Road salts are known for their corrosive properties to steel and other metals. Road salt can also damage other vehicle components and materials. Vehicles located in or traveling through areas where road salt is used are subject to rapid corrosion. LMC is a moisture activated chemical applied directly to the road surface for the purpose of lowering the freeze point of water. According to published information, LMC is a suitable replacement for road salt or sanding.

The draw back is LMC is highly corrosive to all metals, plastics and can even destroy rebar embedded inside concrete. After application, road traffic will cause LMC to become airborne vapor traveling as much as 2000 feet from the point of origin. Vehicles located within that distance, even when stored outside, are exposed to the same corrosive affects as vehicles traveling over a road treated with LMC. LMC lowers the freeze point allowing moisture to further penetrate surfaces, and remains active down to 27% humidity. Foot traffic will also track road salt and LMC into living spaces.

While most sand, road salt and LMC accumulation can be washed away through use of a high-pressure washer, road salt and LMC is still bonded to all exposed surfaces including paint. Only chemical washing can neutralize road salts or LMC. However, chemical washing can only neutralize open surfaces. LMC and road salt remains trapped between mating surfaces and will corrode wiring as well.

Local or state governments determine what is applied during winter months and substances can change by location. It is possible to encounter one or all of these substances while driving. Only regular weekly washing of the exterior and undercarriage can slow corrosion during the winter months. No single treatment can be used to eliminate and neutralize the affects of these corrosive substances.

Diligent washing and awareness of what substances applied to the road surface will dictate if a neutralizing agent must be applied to help slow the process of corrosion to exterior surfaces including the paint finish.

Therefore; it is up to the motorhome owner to perform regular washing maintenance and neutralize any corrosive agent applied to the roadway by local or state governments.

NOTE:

No two motorhomes are exposed to the same conditions. Therefore, maintenance intervals will vary.

Washing

Periodic cleaning will help to preserve the paint finish. The motorhome is painted with a “base coat, clear coat system.” Clear coat is a polyurethane-based material which brings out the shine and luster to the base coat paint. Care should be used when washing the motorhome. Use only mild detergents or (preferred) specifically designed automotive detergents. Avoid abrasive cleansers or laundry detergents that will scratch the clear coat and leave a soap film. Use a soft cloth to wash the paint finish. Avoid brushes as they can scratch the surface and damage the paint. Before washing the motorhome, remove most of the accumulated dirt and road wash behind wheel openings, below the windshield and on the rear of the motorhome. If build up is excessive, run water over a soft cotton cloth while gently wiping the surface in one direction. This will help float away the “build-up” from the clear coat. Avoid back and forth or circular motions as this may act like sandpaper, scratching the clear coat and leaving a haze or swirl marks.

After removing the heavy build-up, use the mixed detergent solution to wash the motorhome. Start washing at the top of the motorhome working towards the bottom.

If possible, wash the motorhome in a shaded area when the exterior is not hot to the touch. If necessary, turn the motorhome around to keep the area being washed in the shade. Try not to allow the detergent to dry onto the clear coat surface. Use plenty of water when rinsing the surface to remove all detergent residue.

Drying

Chamois cloths come in natural and synthetic materials. Either type is acceptable as long as the surface is clean. Soak the chamois in clean water, then wring it dry. Remove the water from the surface, starting at the top and working towards the bottom, using a downward “S” pattern. Wring out the chamois as needed. Using a chamois cloth to remove the rinse water is not necessary, but the effort can be worthwhile.

Waxing

It is recommended to wax the motorhome twice a year: spring and fall.

NOTE:

Use a grease and wax remover before applying another coat of wax. Chemicals can become trapped between layers of wax, possibly damaging the paint finish.

INFORMATION:

When selecting a product, follow the product manufacturer’s recommended application instructions.

Types of Products:

Glazes - Glazes are generally used to fill very fine scratches in the clear coat. They are applied either by hand or by using a polisher with a special pad.

Waxes - Waxes come in many types of chemical make-up. Most contain cleaning agents, lubricants and a natural or synthetic wax. Cleaning agents remove oxidation and leave a high gloss. Wax leaves a clear film that protects the finish.

NOTE:

Recommended waxes are Menzerna FMJ (Full Molecular Jacket) or Meguiars NXT Generation Tech Wax 2.0.

Polishes - Polishes combine wax based substances with abrasives to clean and polish at the same time. These products are too abrasive for clear coats and not recommended for use.

Rubbing Compounds - These types of products are generally applied by using a buffer. The use of rubbing compounds should be left to professionals as undesired results can quickly occur. These types of products are generally used to correct minor imperfections in the surface.

When selecting a product, the container should be marked, “safe for clear coats” or “clear coat safe.” Carefully follow the application instructions when using a product.

Upon first use of a product, try it on a small test spot in an inconspicuous area. Observe the test area from different angles to check for hazing or swirl marks. If hazing or swirl marks to the finish occurs, discontinue product use and consult the product manufacturer. If the product is a paste, do not allow dried paste to be baked on by the sun. Remove paste shortly after drying. Clean, dry, microfiber cloths are best suited for the removal of dried paste. Turn the cloth often. Use a separate clean microfiber cloth to buff. The surface should feel slick when rubbing the cloth lightly over it. Avoid repeated wax applications that can cause build up. Some very fine scratches or swirl marks may be hidden by application of a glaze. It is best to consult a professional detailer for advice before applying a glaze.

The motorhome has a large surface area. Washing and waxing may not be completed in one afternoon. Select sections to wax until the motorhome is complete. If the task seems overwhelming, have an RV detailer perform the task.

Paint Codes

The motorhome color scheme is comprised of specific paint colors, each assigned a code used to achieve a desired color of paint. "Touch-up" paint may be used to repair a small scratch or imperfection in the paint surface. To paint a larger area, it is necessary to obtain the paint code to get the correct color match.

To Obtain the Paint Code:

- ◆ Contact **Parts** at
1-877-466-6226.

- ◆ Specify the year, model, serial number and exterior color scheme name (if known).
- ◆ This formula can be mixed at a local Sherwin Williams paint store.

NOTE:

All special paint schemes require contacting Monaco RV LLC directly for paint codes.

Tire Care

Proper care and methods in cleaning must be used to obtain the maximum service years out of the tires. Use a soft brush and a mild detergent to clean the tires. If a dressing product is used to "protect" the tires from aging, use extra care and caution. Tire dressings that contain petroleum products or alcohol may cause deterioration or cracking.

In many cases it is not the dressing that causes a problem but the chemical reaction that subsequently occurs. When these same dressing products are used on a passenger car tire that is replaced every three to four years, it is rare to see a major problem. However, in most cases motorhome tires may last longer due to limited annual mileage and exposure.

Bright Metal

All chrome and stainless steel should be washed and cleaned each time the motorhome is washed. Use only automotive approved non-abrasive cleaners and polishes on exterior bright work. Do not use rubbing compounds. Do not use abrasive cleaners or compounds to clean the mirrors.

NOTE:

When applying chemicals to remove road tar, use only automotive products that are recommended for painted surfaces and fiberglass. Observe the warning recommendations and directions printed on the container.

Wheel Covers

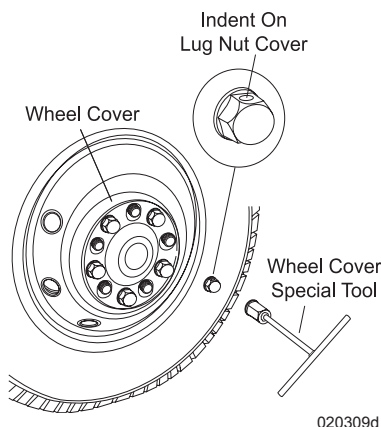
Clean the wheel covers frequently with high pressure water from a hose using a mild detergent. **Do not** use harsh alkalis, alcohol or acidic cleansers. A secondary hand washing with a soft cloth may be required to remove stubborn road grime. To remove the wheel covers from the wheel for a thorough cleaning use the special tool that was included with the motorhome. Each wheel cover is secured by lug covers identified by indent or notch markings. When the wheel covers are removed tires and rims can be cleaned and inspected.

Remove dirt, corrosion or any foreign material from the tire side of the rim using a wire brush. Do not use a wire brush or other abrasive substances to remove dirt and corrosion from the wheel covers. To maintain the original appearance of the wheel covers the following procedures are recommended:

- ◆ After reinstalling wheel covers (prior to operating the motorhome) use a sponge, cloth or soft fiber brush to wash the exposed wheel surfaces with a mild detergent/warm water solution.
- ◆ Rinse thoroughly with clean water.
- ◆ Wipe dry to avoid water spots.

- ◆ Use a high quality, non-abrasive polish to remove stubborn road tars, insects or hard to remove deposits.

- ◆ To protect the surface appearance on wheel covers, wax the cleaned surface with a high quality car wax.
- ◆ Clean the wheel covers frequently to maintain their appearance.



2. Wash with a 100% cotton cloth and a mild soap solution (dish soap or car wash soap is recommended).
3. Rinse all remaining soap residue with high-pressure water and wipe the surface dry using a 100% cotton cloth to avoid water spots.
4. A secondary hand washing may be required to remove some stubborn road films.
5. Carnuba wax can be applied to help protect the finish.

NOTE:

Allow heated wheels that are extremely hot to cool before spraying with cold water.

Do not use the following items on polished aluminum wheels:

- ◆ Synthetic cleaning pads, wire or abrasive brushes, steel wool or scouring pads (these can mar or scratch the finish).
- ◆ Strong detergents, alkaline or acidic cleaners, acids or lye-based chemical products or solvents.

Inside:

If the tires are removed, inspect and clean the entire rim. Air used to fill the tire may contain moisture and can cause the areas of the wheel under the tire to severely corrode. Use a soft brush to remove foreign material from the tire side of the rim. Lubricate the rim and tire bead with a non-water-based lubricant before mounting the tire and ensure the inside of tire is dry before installing.

WARNING:

Do not use a flammable solution to coat the inside of the rim. This can lead to an explosion during tire inflation or in subsequent operation of the motorhome.

EXTERIOR MAINTENANCE

The motorhome is exposed to extreme temperatures, humidity, ultraviolet rays, rain and other environmental conditions. While in operation the motorhome is subject to twisting and flexing caused by rough roads, potholes and winding mountain roads. Maintenance is necessary not only to keep the exterior looking nice but also to keep it in proper working order.

Fiberglass

Inspect the fiberglass exterior. Periodic **inspection** may reveal that flexing of the fiberglass exterior has created imperfections in the surface commonly known as “spider” or “hairline” cracks. A crack that has opened up to reveal the cloth weave threatens the integrity of the fiberglass. If the exterior exhibits signs of damage, prevent moisture penetration, particularly in freezing climates. Cover the area using plastic sheeting and/or tape, and have the damaged fiberglass repaired as soon as possible.

Roof Care & Seal Inspections

Wherever there is something affixed to the motorhome, such as the “beltline” or vent attached on the roof, there is a seal preventing water intrusion.

Wheels - Polished Aluminum

Outside:

The outward side of the aluminum wheel is a polished finish and should be treated the same as the paint finish on the motorhome. Road soils, grime and brake dust trap moisture which can cause corrosion over a period of time.

CAUTION:

Rinse aluminum wheels using high-pressure water to remove debris from the surface before washing. Do not scrub. Rubbing debris against the surface of the wheel can result in scratches. Do not allow soap solution to dry on the finish of the wheel as spotting will occur.

1. Frequently clean using high-pressure water.

There are many types of sealants and each has a specific use. While the beltline uses a silicone or urethane base sealant to prevent water intrusion, roof openings use an acrylic based sealant. Moisture intrusion can occur at any time for a number of reasons. Therefore, regular sealant inspection and maintenance will greatly reduce the likelihood of moisture intrusion and costly repairs.

The motorhome is sealed at the factory. However, extreme weather conditions can shorten the life of the sealant. Harsh road conditions can compromise sealant integrity. Maintaining sealant is part of regular motorhome maintenance. Inspect all joints, seams and openings at least once every six months. While sealant integrity may appear fine, a small void under the right conditions can quickly cause major damage. Make a full interior inspection for signs of moisture intrusion every two weeks if the motorhome is in storage.

CAUTION:

Inspect exterior seals, seams and joints for sealant integrity at least twice a year. Make a full interior inspection for water leaks every two weeks while the motorhome is in storage.

INSPECTION:

Surface must be clean and dry. Inspect seal for voids, cracks, bubbling, peeling or pulling away. Sealant that looks fine without imperfections is acceptable for continued service. Sealant that is old, cracking, flaking or bubbling will allow moisture intrusion and must be repaired.

WARNING:

Inspecting sealant will require use of a ladder or scaffold assembly. Roof access is also required. Follow proper safety measures accordingly. Exercise extreme care whenever using a ladder/scaffold assembly. Avoid getting on the roof if it is icy or moisture laden as the surface can be very slick. Use judgment if inspection is considered dangerous. Have the motorhome inspected or sealed (if necessary) by a qualified service technician.

Sealant Replacement:

Carefully remove sealant that is cracking, flaking, bubbling, peeling or pulling away from the surface. The area under the removed sealant will need to be clean and dry before applying new sealant. Applying new sealant over a dirty or moisture laden surface will not allow proper adhesion. Sealant application may require simple hand tools and paper towels or rags for cleanup. Some sealants may be labeled hazardous or require chemicals for cleanup. Follow all of the manufacturer's warnings and precautions when dealing with these substances.

WARNING:

Some sealants may be labeled hazardous or require use of petroleum distillates for cleanup. Use proper precautions as suggested by the sealant or chemical manufacturer. Use of protective eye wear, gloves, respirator or open ventilation may be required. Use judgment when working with chemicals. If health limits exposure to chemicals or inhibits skills or abilities, employ a qualified service technician to perform the tasks.

Sealant Types

General Maintenance – Roof: Titan 76 - AM Brush Grade Slow Cure MS

This product is used for large roof openings such as around vents, skylights, any roof mounted antennas and ladder roof mounts. Clean the old sealant that is lifting before applying the new. Make sure the roof is dry and free of dirt. This product is found in a tub container. Care should be used when near an edge, as the product will spread out. Masking tape may be used to mask around area to avoid mishaps.

WARNING:

Consult manufacturer data for application and safety instructions.

For small areas of maintenance various rubber sealants are available in a tube. These products are available at RV supply locations.

General Maintenance – Roof Air Conditioner:

Roof air conditioners use a closed cell foam base gasket. No sealants are required. The roof air conditioners should be checked for tightness by the four mounting bolts located in each interior corner of the air conditioner roof opening. Torque specification is 40 to 50 in/lbs. The base gasket should be compressed to about ½".

General Maintenance – Exterior

Attachments: Dow Corning #999 - A Clear Silicone or Colorimetric High Performance Clear Silicone

Primarily used on the sidewalls, doors, handles, beltline molding, latches and bases of surface mounted items such as clearance lights. Old peeling sealant should be removed with nylon sticks or equivalent. Avoid using metal utensils which can scratch the painted surface. Use nylon sticks or equivalent. Avoid lacquer thinners or ketone based solvents as these chemicals can damage painted surfaces. Confirm that surface is clean and dry before a new application. Cut the tube at an angle with the smallest usable opening. Avoid a heavy bead as a little goes a long way. Use a finger at a 45° angle on the beaded surface to smooth out product. **Do not** moisten finger, use a disposable latex glove. Keep rags or paper towels handy for clean up. Use care when applying silicone and plan ahead before starting a bead. Look for obstacles that may impede application.

CAUTION:

Avoid eye and skin contact and breathing of vapors. Consult manufacturer data for application and safety instructions.

General Maintenance – Openings: Spray Foam

This product is used as a sealant where a hole has been made for items such as water lines or wires that are coming through a floor or bulkhead opening. Consult manufacturer data for application and safety instructions.

Windshield Installation – Sika Products:

Windshield installation is a multistep process involving a cleaning agent, primers and special adhesives. It is highly recommended to have a professional glazier perform replacement or leak repairs.

WARNING:

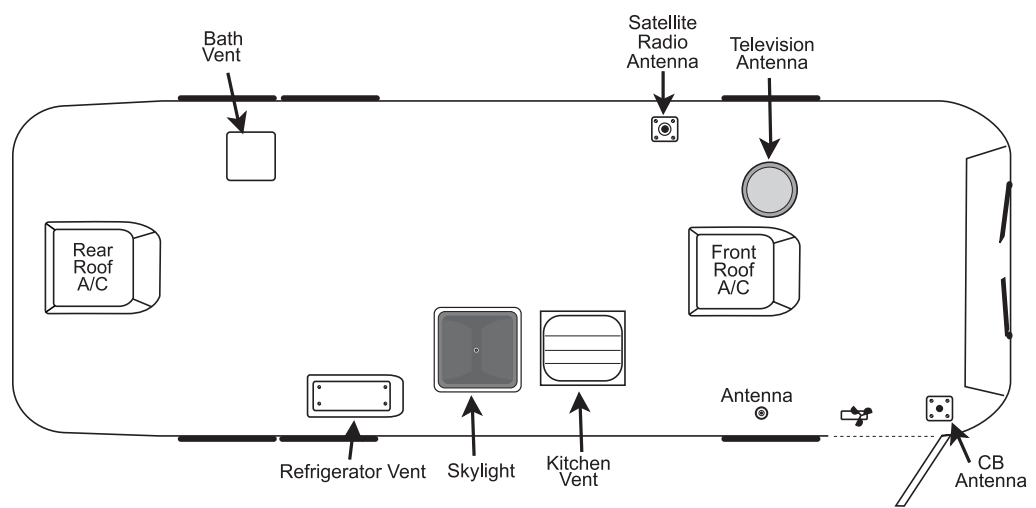
Avoid eye and skin contact and breathing of vapors. Consult manufacturer data for application and safety instructions.

Sealing Under a Painted Surface: Acrylic Sealants: Geocel # 2300

Used where items are sealed under a painted surface such as the metal corners of slide out rooms and roof mounted awning brackets. The material is specially formulated to allow paint adhesion. Consult manufacturer data for application and safety instructions.

INTERIOR CARE Cockpit

The cockpit area dashboard is a molded-fiberglass, vinyl-wrapped pod. The instrument panel is comprised of various gauges and switches. The dashboard and instrument panel each have different cleaning requirements. Clean the vinyl wrapped dash pod following the instructions under Vinyl Care in this section.



Typical Roof Layout: Inspect each item for sealant integrity. Roof A/C's use a special foam gasket.

070209g

In the event a blemish or small cut occurs in the vinyl, contact a professional upholstery repair service.

Clean the plastic or Plexiglas® instrument panels using a cloth dampened in a mild soap and water solution. Dry using a separate cotton cloth. Plastic polish products that will help to brighten the appearance of plastic or Plexiglas instrument panels are *Novus Plastic Care*®, a three-part system; *Meguires*® and *Johnson Paste Wax*®, which will require extensive buffing and rubbing.

Glass lens gauges can be cleaned using glass cleaner. Spray cleaner on the cloth, not directly onto the lens, to prevent over spray or runoff.

CAUTION:

Do not allow glass cleaners to come in contact with the plastic. Most glass cleaning products will cause to become brittle or dull the finish.

TIP:

To determine if the lens is glass or plastic, tap the lens with a fingernail. Plastic lens will have a dull hollow sound whereas glass will have a clear ping sound.

FABRICS

General Care & Cleaning

Special care needs to be taken when the motorhome is exposed to a very humid climate for an extended period of time. Protect the fabric from any unnecessary exposure to moisture. Cover all upholstery and make sure window coverings are down to protect fabrics from sun damage. Frequently used items require more attention than those items not regularly used.

If a spill occurs, blot the moisture as quickly as possible. **Do not** use soap and hot water as this may set a stain. Clean the spot as soon as possible.

Cleaning Upholstery Fabrics:

- ◆ Water-based cleaners are not recommended.
- ◆ If a spill does occur, blot the soiled area, **Do not** rub it.
- ◆ Some solvents may have an adverse reaction on a specific backing of the upholstery fabric and are not recommended.
- ◆ To prevent overall soiling, frequently vacuum or lightly brush to remove dust and grime.
- ◆ Clean spots using a mild water-free solvent or dry cleaning product.
- ◆ Clean only in a well ventilated area and avoid any product containing carbon tetrachloride or other toxic materials.
- ◆ Use a professional furniture cleaning service for overall cleaning.

Vinyl

Several areas of the motorhome, such as the dash, ceiling and items of furniture, may be covered in vinyl. The care and cleaning of these areas are as follows:

Normal Cleaning:

Most common stains can be cleaned using warm soapy water and a clear water rinse. Moderate scrubbing with a medium bristle brush will help to loosen soil from the depression of embossed surfaces.

For stubborn stains use the following commercially available mild detergents in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions: *Mr. Clean* or *Fantastik*®.

Full strength rubbing alcohol or mineral spirits may be tried cautiously as a last resort on very stubborn stains if the above suggestions do not work. Indiscriminate use of any solvent or solvent containing cleaner can severely damage or discolor the vinyl. Stains may become permanent if not immediately removed.

NOTE:

Detergents should never be used on a regular or repeated basis for normal cleaning.

CAUTION:

Powdered cleaners containing abrasives, steel wool and industrial strength cleaners are not recommended for vinyl.

Bird Excreta & Vomit Stains:

Sponge the area with a soapy water and diluted bleach solution until stain is removed. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Urine Stains:

Sponge with soapy water containing a small amount of household ammonia. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Surface Mildew:

Wash with diluted bleach and use a soft brush for stubborn growth. Rinse repeatedly with clear, cold water.

Ballpoint Ink:

Wipe the stain immediately with rubbing alcohol in a well ventilated area.

WARNING:

If flammable solvents such as alcohol, turpentine or varsol are used for cleaning, use only small quantities while in a well-ventilated area. Exercise proper caution by notifying any persons in the area. Keep away from any ignition source. Always wear protective gloves.

Latex Paint:

Wipe fresh paint off with a damp cloth. Hot soapy water will normally remove dried latex.

Oil-Base Paint:

Use turpentine in a well ventilated area to remove any fresh paint. Dried paint must be moistened using a semi-solid, gel-type stripper. The softened paint can be gently scraped away. Rinse with soap and water.

CAUTION:

Lacquer solvent will cause immediate irreparable damage to the vinyl. Do not use wax on vinyl upholstery as it will cause premature embrittlement and cracking. Dilute chlorine bleach before using. Never use full strength bleach. Paint strippers will remove the print pattern and damage the vinyl if it comes in direct contact.

Tar or Asphalt:

Remove immediately. Prolonged contact will result in a permanent stain. Use a cloth lightly dampened with mineral spirits and rub the stain gently, working from the outer edge of the stain toward the center to prevent spreading. Rinse with soap and water.

Crayon, Mustard or Ketchup:

Sponge with mild soap and water. For stubborn stains that have set, use a cloth soaked in diluted mild detergent with gentle rubbing. Any remaining stain should be washed with diluted bleach. Rinse repeatedly with cold water.

Candy, Ice Cream, Coffee, Tea, Fruit Stains, Liquor, Wine, Tanning Lotion or Soft Drinks:

Loose material should be gently scraped with a dull knife. Use lukewarm water and sponge repeatedly. Any soiled area that remains after drying should be gently rubbed with a cloth or dampened with a mild detergent solution. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Chewing Gum:

Scrape off as much gum as possible using a dull knife. Rub the gum with an ice cube to harden and for easier removal. In a well ventilated area, use a cloth saturated with mineral spirits and gently rub the remaining gum. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Lipstick, Grease, Oil, Make-Up or Shoe Polish:

Apply a small amount of mineral spirits with a cloth. Rub gently. Be careful not to spread the stain by smearing beyond the original source. Remove shoe polish immediately as it contains a dye which will cause permanent staining. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Blood or Plant Residue:

Rub out spots using a clean cloth soaked in cool water. For stubborn spots, use household ammonia and rinse repeatedly with a clean, wet cloth. **Do not** use hot water or soap suds as this will set the stain.

TIP:

Vinyl requires periodic cleaning to maintain its appearance and to prevent the buildup of dirt and contaminants that may permanently stain or reduce the life of the vinyl if left untreated. Frequency of cleaning and procedures used depend upon the amount of use and the environmental conditions in which the vinyl is subjected.

NOTE:

Tears or holes in the vinyl can be temporarily covered with clear tape to prevent further damage. Repairs should be made by a professional upholstery shop. Commercial repair products may contain lacquers and cause the vinyl to become brittle and more difficult to repair.

Optima Leather & "O" Vinyl**Cleaning Suggestions:**

Follow cleaning steps in sequence. Each subsequent step is to be used if the previous step was not successful. Clean area with warm water after each process.

For General Cleaning:

Wipe the soiled area with warm water, a mild detergent soap, and a soft cotton cloth.

For Oil-based Stains:

Spray soiled area with household cleaner, such as 409® or Fantastik®, and wipe with warm water using a soft cotton cloth.

For Marker-type Stains:

Dab stained area with solution of 50% Isopropyl Alcohol and 50% warm water using a soft cotton cloth.

WARNING:

Avoid open flames or hot lighting when using an alcohol solution.

CAUTION:

Do not use any abrasive cleaner with this material.

NOTE:

A five parts water to one part bleach solution is recommended for disinfecting.

Ultra-Leather**Care Instructions:**

- ◆ Spot clean with mild soap and water.
- ◆ Air dry or dry quickly with warm setting of a hair dryer.
- ◆ For stubborn stains, use mild solvent.
- ◆ For tougher stains, try Fantastik® brand spray cleaner. Disinfect with a 5:1 NON-CHLORINATED (only) bleach solution.
- ◆ Dry clean using commercial dry cleaning solvents only.
- ◆ Use a mild detergent for:
 - Red Wine, Liquor, Coffee, Tea, Cola, Milk
 - Ketchup, Mustard, Mayonnaise, Steak Sauce, Soy Sauce

- Butter, Salad Oil, Chocolate, Lipstick, Make-up, Face Cream
- Suntan Oil, Machine Oil, Urine, Blood

Removing ballpoint pen stains:

Wipe the stain off with ethanol (ethyl alcohol). Follow all manufacturer safety instructions when using chemicals.

Use the following procedure if stain the remains:

- ◆ Dilute household bleach (sodium hypochloride) with the same amount of water. (One part to one part solution.)
- ◆ Apply the bleach/water solution to a piece of tissue (do not apply too much). Place the tissue on the stained surface and cover it with polyethylene film to prevent the solution from drying.
- ◆ Periodically remove the tissues to check on the condition of the stain. When the stain is almost gone, remove the tissues completely. **Do not** leave on for more than one hour.
- ◆ Wash the stain with sufficient amount of clean water.

CAUTION:

If bleach residue remains on the fabric, the polyurethane resin and back cloth will yellow and deteriorate.

Neutralize bleach by the following method:

- ◆ Place a piece of tissue, as in Step 2, and apply hydrogen peroxide solution (15%).
- ◆ Leave the solution on for approximately 30 minutes.

- ◆ Completely remove the residue of hydrogen peroxide on the Ultra-leather with water.

Sodium hypochlorite (bleach) is the only chemical that will remove ballpoint pen stains. However, this chemical may cause polyurethane to yellow or the back cloth to deteriorate. It is recommended to remove ballpoint pen stains as early as possible with ethanol.

For more information, please call:

**Ultrafabrics, LLC Customer Service:
1-877-309-6648**

FLOORS***Carpet Cleaning*****Spot Removal Procedures:**

- ◆ Act quickly when anything is dropped or spilled. Remove spots before they dry.
- ◆ Blot liquids with a clean, white absorbent cloth or paper towel.
- ◆ For semi-solids, scoop up with a rounded spoon.
- ◆ For solids, break up and vacuum out as much as possible.
- ◆ Pretest the spot removal agent in an inconspicuous area to make certain it will not damage the carpet dyes.
- ◆ Apply a small amount of the cleaning solution recommended for the particular spot. **Do not** scrub. Work from the edges of the spot to the center. Blot thoroughly. Repeat until spot is removed.

- ◆ Follow steps on the Carpet Spot Removal Guide.
- ◆ After each application, absorb as much as possible before proceeding to the next step.
- ◆ Absorb remaining moisture with layers of white paper towels, weighted down with a non-staining glass or ceramic object.
- ◆ When completely dry, vacuum or brush the pile to restore texture.
- ◆ If the spot is not completely removed, contact a professional carpet cleaner.

Cleaning Solutions:

A. Dry Cleaning Fluid: A

nonflammable spot removal liquid, available in grocery and hardware stores.

B. Nail Polish Remover: Any acetate, which often has a banana fragrance. **Do not** use if it contains acetone.

C. Detergent Solution: Mix two cups of cold water and 1/8 teaspoon mild liquid detergent (no lanolin, non-bleach).

D. Warm Water: Lukewarm tap water.

E. Vinegar Solution: One cup white vinegar to one cup water.

F. Ammonia Solution: One tablespoon household ammonia to one cup water.

G. Stain Removal Kit: Available from retail carpet stores or professional cleaners.

H. Call Professional: Additional suggestions, special cleaning chemicals or the ability to patch the area may be available.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
Use the solution specified in order from 1-8 until stain is removed.	DRY CLEANING FLUID	NAIL POLISH REMOVER	DETERGENT SOLUTION	WARM WATER	VINEGAR SOLUTION	AMMONIA SOLUTION	STAIN REMOVAL KIT	CALL PROFESSIONAL	PERMANENT CHANGE
SPOTS									
Acid				2		1		3	*
Acne Medication		1		2	5	4	3	6	*
Alcoholic Beverage			1	4	3	2			*
Ammonia				2	1				*
Bleach		1	2					3	*
Blood		1	3		2	4			
Candle Wax	1					2			
Cement & Glue	2	1	3		5	4	6		*
Chalk		1	2						
Charcoal		1	2						
Chewing Gum	1								
Coffee			1	3	2		4	5	*
Cosmetics		2	1	3	6	5	4	7	*
Crayon	1		2	3					
Drain/Toilet Cleaner			2	1	3			4	*
Dye	1		2		4	3	5	6	*
Food			1	4	3	2	5	6	*
Fungicides, Insecticides, Pesticides	1		2	5	4	3	6	*	
Furniture Polish (Water Based)			1	4	3	2	5	6	*
Furniture Polish (Solvent Based)	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Furniture Stain	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Graphite		1	2						
Grease	1	2	3				4	5	*
Ink	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Iodine	1		2	5	4	3	6	7	*
Lipstick	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Medicine	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Merthiolate			1	4	3	2	5	6	*
Nail Polish	2	1	3				4	5	*
Oil	1		2	4		3		5	*
Paint	2	1	3				4	5	*
Plant Food			1	4	3	2	5	6	*
Rust			2	3	1		4	5	*
Shoe Polish	2	1	3	5		4	6	7	*
Soft Drinks			1	4	3	2	5	6	*
Soot	1		2	3				4	*
Tar	1						2	3	*
Toothpaste			1						
Urine			1		2		3	4	*
Vomit			1	4	3	2	5	6	*

* While recommended cleaning agents are effective, some stains may become permanent.

I.. Permanent Change: Due to the nature of the stain, there may be color loss. The carpet has been permanently dyed or the carpet yarns have been permanently damaged.

NOTE:

While the recommended cleaning agents have proven to be effective, some stains may become permanent.

Laminate Floor

Laminate flooring used in the motorhome provides style, durability and ease of maintenance. This high-pressure laminated flooring is designed to be incorporated as a floating floor.

Laminate flooring is constructed of three main material components. The surface, similar to many countertops, contains aluminum oxide particles to form an extremely hard, durable outer layer. The carrier, or core layer, is constructed from high density fiberboard. A tongue and groove design provides a tighter bond. The backer or bottom layer is also made of laminate for strength.

Cleaning and Maintenance:

For everyday cleaning, vacuum the floor to remove dirt and debris. It is recommended to occasionally mop the floor using a cotton string mop and a minimal amount of water. Use a mixture of soap-free household cleaner (either vinegar or ammonia work well) and water for a more thorough cleaning.

Tile Floor

Tile floors vary in porosity and surface irregularities. Regular maintenance is important to keep the tile in the motorhome looking showroom new. Once the slideout has been extended, keep the tile floor clean to prevent dirt from scratching the tiles prior to retracting the slideout.

NOTE:

Tile is ceramic and will chip or break. Avoid dropping heavy or sharp objects on the tile.

Cleaning Tile:

Use a damp sponge mop or a cloth to clean tile. If moderate staining occurs, cleaning with a window cleaner such as *Windex*® should do the job. A mild solution of hot water and all-purpose cleaner for tile floors, walls and countertops can also be used. Rinse well with clear water and dry with a soft cloth to prevent streaking. Avoid cleaning tile with soap. Soap forms a film to dull the luster. Soap also promotes the growth of mildew and bacteria. Do not use powdered cleaners on unglazed tile floors. Undissolved powder will dull the surface. Grout sealers are available that protect the porous surfaces. If a sealer is used, follow the sealant manufacturer guideline for application. Never use sealers on unglazed tile. With the exception of terra cotta, which may be oiled or waxed, tile does not need to be polished or buffed to maintain its finish.

NOTE:

Before using any solution to clean the tile, check the manufacturer's warning label to ensure safety of the product. If there is any doubt, apply several test patches of the solution in an inconspicuous place to determine product suitability.

Grout:

Grout used is a two part concrete mix and can develop surface cracks over time. Due to flexing of the flooring while driving, this process may accelerate. If the grout requires cleaning, scrub with a plastic brush. Do not use steel wool as small particles may remain and produce unsightly stains.

Sealing the Tile:

Apply sealant to the tile floor and grout to prevent discoloring from soils and spills. One pint should be sufficient to seal the floor. Follow application instructions carefully.

CAUTION:

Sealants can contain petroleum distillate. Open windows, vents and doors to provide adequate airflow during application.

NOTE:

It is recommended to test a small amount of sealant on an inconspicuous area before applying sealant to the entire floor. Avoid getting sealant onto surfaces other than the flooring.

To Apply:

1. Extend slideout room(s) and clean floor. Allow floor and grout to thoroughly dry.
2. Working from rear towards doorway. Apply sealant direct from container onto a cloth towel or broom handle applicator. Grout sealant applicators are available at large hardware stores.
3. Apply sealant per manufacturer instructions. Do not allow sealant to puddle in grout lines. Extra care should be used to make sure all grout has been sealed.
4. Refer to container for cure time.

NOTE:

If a spill occurs before sealant has cured, it may be necessary to clean and additionally treat the area with sealant as needed.

SHOWER

Showers are susceptible to soap build-up. To control mildew growth, spray the shower with household chlorine bleach. Allow it to stand for five minutes, then rinse with clear water. Clean the glass shower doors with window cleaner on a weekly basis to maintain shine. If water spots cannot be removed from glass, rub lightly with the flat edge of a razor blade to remove deposits.

To prevent excessive moisture and a continual growth of mildew, use the shower only with adequate ventilation. The sealant in a regularly used shower should be replaced once a year. To replace sealant, remove the old sealant using a sharp non-metallic instrument. Apply a new sealant, which can be found at most recreational vehicle supply stores.

CEILING

The ceiling of the motorhome can be a variety of materials or fabrics:

Hardwood, Vinyl and Decorated Paneling:

Certain cleaning agents will affect the surface on both printed and unprinted vinyl. Use only a mild, non-abrasive detergent and warm water with a soft cloth or sponge to clean. **Do not** use bleach, alcohol, oil-based spray cleaners or cleaning agents that contain solvents, citrus oil or harsh chemicals.

WALL COVERINGS

Immediately remove solvent based or pigmented substances from wall coverings. Do not use abrasive cleaners containing chlorine bleach or solvents.

Fidelity and *Jolie* brands are recommended. Always begin with a mild detergent or soap and warm water. To remove normal dirt, clean with a soft sponge. Rinse and wipe dry.

Before applying a cleaner, test the cleaning agent on a small, inconspicuous portion of the wall covering to ensure the cleaner does not affect the color or gloss of the wall covering.

Care for the Tower Wall Covering:

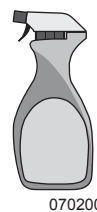
Remove ordinary stains with mild soap and warm water. Sponge on. Rinse well and dry with a soft cloth. To remove ball point pen, blood, lipstick, etc., use a sponge or soft bristle brush and *Formula 409*®, *Fantastik*® or a similar product. Rinse well and dry. Finish cleaning by applying full strength isopropyl alcohol with a sponge or soft brush. Rinse well and dry.

Care for the Satinesque Wall Covering:

Remove stain quickly to minimize the reaction on the wall covering, especially if the stain is solvent-based or pigmented.

Examples: nail polish, oil, shampoo, lacquer, enamel, paint, ink and lipstick.

Begin cleaning the stain with a mild soap-based detergent; and if necessary, move to a stronger cleaner such as household bleach, liquid household cleaners or rubbing alcohol. Before applying a stronger cleaner, test the cleaning agent on a small inconspicuous portion of the wall covering to ensure the cleaner does not affect the color or gloss of the wall covering.



Specific Stain Type Removal Procedures:

Normal Dirt:

Remove normal dirt using a mild soap or detergent and warm water. Allow it to soak for a few minutes then rub briskly with a cloth or sponge.

Nail Polish, Shellac or Lacquer:

Remove liquid using a dry cloth. Use care not to spread the stain. Quickly clean the remaining stain with rubbing alcohol. Rinse with clean water.

Ink:

Remove immediately by wiping with a cloth dampened in rubbing alcohol. Rinse with clean water.

Chewing Gum:

Rub with an ice cube to cool and harden. Gently pull off the bulk of the gum. Remove remaining gum with rubbing alcohol.

Pencil:

Erase as much of pencil mark as possible. Wipe remaining marks with rubbing alcohol.

Blood, Feces or Urine:

Remove these staining substances as quickly as possible. Wash the stained area with a strong soap. If the stain does not disappear, rinse the soapy area thoroughly with clean water. Mix a solution of 50% water and 50% household bleach. Clean the stained area with the bleach solution. Rinse with clean water.

WOOD CARE

For general cleaning, regularly wipe wood surfaces using a soft cloth lightly dampened with clear warm water. Thoroughly dry to prevent streaking. For stubborn stains, use a clean cloth dampened with a solution of mild non-alkaline soap (dish washing liquid) and water and rinse. Dry thoroughly, buffing in the direction of the wood grain. Never use abrasive cleaners, scouring pads or powdered cleansers. Polishing products used on the solid wood surface depends on individual preference. Always follow product instructions.

Excessive dampness, dryness, heat, or cold can damage solid wood finishes. Sunlight can change the color or age the wood. Never allow moisture or spills to stand, always blot dry immediately. Solvents, alcohol, nail polish and polish removers, as well as harsh cleaners, should not be used on finished wood surfaces.

Minor damage to solid wood surfaces can be repaired quickly and effectively with a bit of hard work, some careful attention to details, and most importantly, the right materials.

GRIT	GRADE	USE
80-120	Medium	Smoothing the surface, removing small marks.
150-180	Fine	Final sanding prior to finishing.
220-240	Very Fine	Sanding between coats of sealing.
280-320	Extra Fine	Removing dust spots or marks between finish coats.
360-600	Super Fine	Removing luster or surface blemishes.

However, any wood repair or finishing job is best left for a professionally trained individual.

NOTE:
It is important to inform the service technician of any products used for the care and cleaning in the event of wood repairs.

Sanding and Sandpaper:

The following table is a general guide and may vary with wood type. The key to sanding is using the right sandpaper for the repair that is needed. Always sand with the grain.

Steel Wool:

Abrasive material composed of long steel fibers of varying degrees of fineness that are matted together. Coarser grades are used to remove paint and other finishes; the finer grades for polishing or smoothing a finished surface.

Nail Holes and Small Cracks:

Fill nail holes and small cracks with wood putty or dough for unstained woods prior to any sanding. Stained finishes require filling holes and cracks after the stain has been applied. Putty should match the stain closely in color.

TIP:
A little sawdust and wood glue can be used to make putty for end grains.

Scratches and Nicks:

“Quick and simple” rarely describes repairs to stained wood finishes; however, a few tricks used by professional woodworkers can be tried to repair nicks and scratches.

Fixing scratches in stained woodwork:

Light scratches will often disappear when carefully rubbed with furniture polish or paste wax. When scratches appear lighter than the surrounding dark-stained woodwork, it usually means either the scratch goes through the stain into the wood or that the varnish is flaking off. Deeper scratches can be hidden by carefully rubbing with a piece of oily nut meat such as Brazil nut, black walnut or pecan. Be careful to rub the nut meat directly into the scratch to avoid darkening of the surrounding wood. Color the scratch with brown coloring crayon or liquid shoe dye (especially good on walnut). Always test a procedure on an inconspicuous area on the wood to ensure no damages to the finish occurs.

Staining the Scratch with Iodine:

Mahogany - Use new iodine.
Brown or Cherry Mahogany - Use iodine that has turned dark brown.
Maple - Dilute one part iodine with one part denatured alcohol.

Commercial scratch removers, or stick wax to match the wood finish, can also be used. After the scratch has been hidden, polish or wax the entire area. Deep scratches should be repaired and finished by a professional.

Dents:

Small dents may be repaired by using steam. To raise a small dent, place a damp cloth over the area and hold a medium-hot iron on it. The steam causes the wood fibers to swell back into place. It may be necessary to repeat this process until the dented area is level with the surface. Allow the area to dry.

Restoring the clear finish:

The finished surface on the wood is a clear lacquer coating. The lacquer finish can be repaired should the finish become dulled or scratched. Scratches extending into the wood will require wood repair by filling the damaged area. If there is light damage, the wood can be steamed to bring the wood surface level.

Lacquer finish sheen can be restored by carefully using 0000 steel wool or equivalent. Sand damaged lacquer with fine sandpaper. Once the scratched surface is smooth, apply a clear lacquer coating using an aerosol. Lacquer can be applied by cloth or brush, but best results are obtained from an aerosol. If necessary, use 0000 steel wool or equivalent to bring out the luster and smooth overspray.

CAUTION:

Use top coats and finishes in accordance with the manufacturer's safety instructions. Use only in well ventilated areas with proper respiratory filters and masks.

Re-staining the wood:

If bare wood is visible at the bottom of the scratch, the wood will need to be re-stained. To remove damaged varnish, lightly roughen a small area around the scratch with sandpaper, steel wool or synthetic steel wool. Find a stain that is a shade lighter than the wood finish. Stain the bare wood with a very small amount of stain on a rag, brush or cotton swab. If the color is too light, apply additional coats. Rub away excess stain with a dry rag. If the wood becomes too dark, use a rag moistened in mineral spirits to lighten the wood. Select a lighter color stain and continue.

Several companies have simplified this repair process by designing oil-based wood stain into marker-like containers to rub on the scratch. Torn and scratched wood fibers will absorb stain and darken quickly. Start with a stain color that is lighter than the original finish. A second coat can always be applied if the color of the first coat is too light. Once the color is blended, patch the clear finish as described above and apply a wipe-on finish.

COUNTERTOPS
Solid Surface**Routine Care:**

The solid surface countertops have a matte/satin finish. Soapy water or ammonia-based cleaners will remove most dirt and stains from all tops and bowls. Individual techniques may be used to remove different stains. Follow the recommendations below.

Cleaning the Countertops:

Most dirt and stains: Use soapy water or ammonia-based cleaner.

Water marks: Wipe with damp cloth and towel dry.

Difficult stains: Use Soft Scrub® and a gray Scotchbrite® pad. If Scotchbrite is used, buffing may be necessary to restore finish.

Disinfecting: Occasionally wipe surface with diluted household bleach (one part water and one part bleach).

Repairing Cuts and Scratches

Solid surface countertops are renewable. Use the following instructions to repair minor cuts and scratches:

- ◆ If scratch or imperfection is deep, sand area with highest grit sandpaper to remove the blemish. Never sand in one small area. Feather out lightly at each increase in sandpaper grit to blend restoration.
- ◆ Switch from sandpaper to 3M™ # 35 Trizact™ microabrasive disc. Apply water while using Trizact discs to prevent clogging.
- ◆ Work downward to #10 Trizact microabrasive disc until blemish is gone.
- ◆ Buff surface with wool pad and 3M Imperial Compound and Finish Material.

NOTE:

Do not cut directly on the solid surface.

Preventing Heat Damage:

Hot pans and heat-generating appliances, such as frying pans or crock pots, can damage the surface. To prevent heat damage, always use a hot pad or a trivet with rubber feet to protect the surface.

Other Important Tips:

Avoid exposing the solid surface to chemicals such as paint removers or oven cleaners. If these chemicals come in contact with the solid surface, quickly wash with water. Avoid contact with nail polish or nail polish remover. If contact is made, quickly wash with water.

CAUTION:

Do not cut directly on the solid surface.

STAINLESS STEEL SURFACES

Stainless steel can be easily damaged by improper cleaners. For example: many liquid cleansers designed to be gentle on smooth surfaces will damage stainless steel. Only use the methods outlined below, and always follow the directions that come with the cleaner (usually located on the bottle).

General Cleaning:

- ◆ Use warm, soapy water and dry with a soft, clean cloth.

For Heavy Soiling:

- ◆ Only use a stainless steel cleaner designed specifically for appliances.
- ◆ Follow all directions from the manufacturer of the cleaner.

Do not use:

- ◆ Abrasive powders or cleaners
- ◆ Acidic citrus or vinegar based cleaners
- ◆ Ammonia
- ◆ Steel wool pads
- ◆ Abrasive cloths
- ◆ Oven cleaners

CAUTION:

Citric acid permanently discolours stainless steel. Immediately remove mustard, tomato juice, marinara or citrus-based sauces or products from stainless steel surfaces.

CAUTION:

Do not cut directly on the stainless steel surface.

WINDOWS

Water Spots:

Glass will develop water spots when not properly cleaned. Water spots are magnified on a reflective finish. Use a squeegee immediately after washing to reduce water spotting. To remove stubborn water stains from reflective glass we recommend *Cerium Oxide Polishing Compound*, made by C.R. Lawrence, available at most glass shops.

Condensation

Condensation develops when water vapor is present in the air. More vapor is added by breathing, bathing, cooking, etc. and collects wherever air space is available. When the temperature reaches dew point, water vapors in the air condense and change to liquid form.

Controlling Moisture Condensation:

Reduce or eliminate interior moisture condensation during cold weather by using the following steps:

- ◆ Open roof vents and windows partially to allow outside air to circulate into the interior. Increase ventilation when a large number of people are in the motorhome. Even in damp weather conditions, the air outside will be far drier than the interior air.
- ◆ Install a dehumidifier. Continuous use of a dehumidifier is effective in removing excess moisture from interior air. Use of a dehumidifier is not a cure-all, however, it will reduce the amount of outside air needed for ventilation.

- ◆ Run the range vent fan when cooking and the bath vent fan (or open the bath vent) when bathing, to reduce water vapor. Avoid excessive boiling or use of steam producing hot water.
- ◆ **Do not** heat the motorhome interior with the range or oven. This increases the risk of toxic fumes and depletes oxygen. Open flames also add moisture to the interior air and increase condensation.
- ◆ In very cold weather, leave cabinet and closet doors partially open. Air flow will warm and ventilate the interior storage compartments and exterior walls to reduce or eliminate condensation and prevent the possibility of ice formations.

WINDOW TREATMENTS

Mini-Blinds

Dusting:

Regular dusting will maintain the appearance of the mini-blinds. Keep aluminum blinds looking their best by periodically wiping with a soft cloth or a dusting mitt. By tilting the slats down, not quite closed, most of the top surface of each slat can be cleaned. Blinds may be cleaned while hanging in place using this method.

Vacuuming:

For deeper cleaning, vacuum gently with the soft brush attachment of a vacuum cleaner.

Compressed Air or Hair Dryer (non-heat setting):

Blow dust off each slat. Dust is air-borne using this method. Ventilate the motorhome.

Spot-Cleaning:

Spot-clean shades and blinds using a soft cloth or a moistened sponge with lukewarm water. Add mild detergent, if needed. Blot gently to avoid creasing. In a dusty environment, the blinds may need to be cleaned regularly using a sponge or dampened soft cloth. Use warm (not hot) water and a mild detergent that does not contain abrasives. Rinse the blinds using a clean cloth and water to prevent water spots. Place a towel directly under the blinds to absorb water that may drip.

Ultrasonic cleaning:

Professional ultrasonic cleaning may be preferred.

Day/Night Shades

Leave Day/Night shades in the up position when not in use to help the shades hold their shape.

Tension Adjustment:

Tension should be adjusted if the shades are loose or there is excessive vibration. A button is located on the bottom of the shade at each end. Two lines on each side of the shade are threaded through the button and tied off.

- ◆ Pull the tied-off lines through the button to increase tension. Leave some slack so the shades are not too tight.
- ◆ Tie the lines off at the new position. Adjust each side equally.
- ◆ Operate the shades to ensure tension is set correctly and equally on both sides.
- ◆ Trim excess line from both sides if desired.

Dusting:

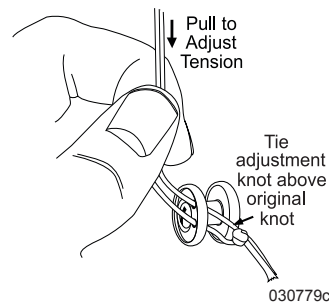
Vacuum with a brush attachment or use a dusting tool on a regular basis.

Cleaning:

A dry foam cleaner may be used for soil and dirt removal. Follow all directions on the container, or use a cleaning solution of $\frac{1}{4}$ oz. clear liquid soap to 8 oz. water.

NOTE:

Do not use colored liquid soap as a stain may appear when fabric dries.



MOLD & MILDEW

What is Mold?

Mold is a type of fungus that occurs naturally in the environment and can leave a musty odor, discolor fabrics, stain surfaces and cause considerable damage to the motorhome.

What Does Mold Need to Grow?

Mold requires a food source, such as grease or soil. Synthetic fabrics, such as acetate, polyester, acrylic and nylon are mildew resistant, but soil on the surface of these fabrics are susceptible to mold.

Temperate climate and moisture also help to cultivate mold growth. Moisture in the motorhome can result from unattended spills, leaks, overflows and condensation. Moisture allowed to remain on a growth medium can develop mold within 24 to 48 hours. Minimizing moisture inside of the motorhome can reduce or eliminate favorable mold growth conditions. Good housekeeping and regular maintenance are essential in the effort to prevent or eliminate mold growth.

Consequences of Mold:

All mold is not necessarily harmful, but certain strains of mold have been shown to cause, in susceptible persons, allergic reactions, including skin irritation, watery eyes, runny nose, coughing, sneezing, congestion, sore throat and headache. Individuals with suppressed immune systems may risk infection. Some experts contend that mold causes serious symptoms and disease which may even be life threatening.

However, experts disagree about the level of mold exposure that may cause health problems and about the exact nature and extent of the health problems that may be caused by mold. Moreover, the Center for Disease Control states that a casual link between the presence of toxic mold and serious health conditions has not been proven.

Standards or threshold limit values for concentration of mold or mold spores have not been set. Currently, there are no EPA regulations or standards for airborne mold contaminants. There is simply no practical way to eliminate all mold and mold spores in the indoor environment. For example, studies have shown that ozone cleaners are not effective at killing airborne mold or surface mold contamination.

Controlling Mold Growth:

The motorhome owner should eliminate mold growth in the motorhome. Take the following steps to eliminate mold growth in the motorhome:

- ◆ Carefully examine items for signs of mold before loading them in the motorhome. Potted plants (roots and soil), furnishings, clothing and linens, as well as many other household items, may contain mold.
- ◆ Regular vacuuming and cleaning will help reduce mold levels. Mild bleach solutions and most tile cleaners are effective in eliminating or preventing mold growth.

- ◆ Indoor humidity can be reduced by 30 to 60% when venting clothes dryers to the outdoors. Ventilate the kitchen and bathroom by opening windows, using exhaust fans or a combination of both. Operating the air conditioning will remove excess moisture in the air and help facilitate evaporation of water from wet surfaces.
- ◆ Promptly clean up spills, condensation and other sources of moisture. Thoroughly dry any wet surfaces or material. Do not let water pool or stand in the motorhome. Promptly replace materials that cannot be thoroughly dried.
- ◆ Inspect for leaks on a regular basis. Look for discolorations or wet spots. Repair leaks promptly. Inspect condensation pans (refrigerators and air conditioners) for mold growth. Take notice of musty odors and any visible signs of mold.
- ◆ Should mold develop, thoroughly clean the affected area with a mild solution of bleach. First, test to see if the affected material or surface is color safe. If mold growth is severe, call on the services of a qualified professional cleaner.
- ◆ If mold cannot be removed, throw the item away.

Whether or not a motorhome owner experiences mold growth depends largely on how the motorhome is managed and maintained. As a manufacturer, our responsibility is limited to things that we can control. As explained in the written warranty, we will repair or replace defects in the construction (defects defined as a failure to comply with reasonable standards of motorhome construction) for the Limited Warranty coverage period provided.

THE MANUFACTURER WILL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE FOR DAMAGE CAUSED BY MOLD THAT MAY BE THE CONSEQUENCE OF OR ASSOCIATED WITH DEFECTS IN THE CONSTRUCTION.

PEST CONTROL

Regardless of the area one lives in or travels to, it is safe in stating there will be pests waiting. These pests are not only annoying; they can pose a health risk and create serious damage to the motorhome.

- ◆ Common pests include insects such as ants, cockroaches, termites, flies, pantry pests and wasps as well as wildlife such as rodents, raccoons, bats, birds and snakes. It is important to remember that pests are searching for food, water and a place to live. Eliminating any one of those elements will help control the pest infestation. Take immediate steps to remove pests as soon as their presence is detected.

Steps to help control pests:

- ◆ Reduce clutter inside the motorhome and storage bays. All storage items, particularly food (including pet food), should be kept in tightly sealed containers. Seal all cracks and holes, and insure that window, door and vent screens are securely in place.
- ◆ Routinely clean the motorhome, including storage bays. Wipe down the water bay. Promptly remove all crumbs from areas where food is regularly prepared and eaten. Garbage should be placed in a sealed container and removed to an outside receptacle daily. Only put out pet food that will be immediately eaten.
- ◆ Keep foods such as flour, cereal, spaghetti and pet food in re-sealable containers with tight lids.
- ◆ Sweep and vacuum often (especially in eating areas) to help eliminate a food source for pests.
- ◆ Pests seek indoor shelter with food and water. Limit their access to water or moisture sources by sealing cracks and leaks in pipes and faucets. Reduce moisture in the motorhome by controlling condensation, immediately wiping up spills and promptly repairing leaks. Be extra alert around areas that attract rodents and insects, including the sewer hose, fresh water hose, bay doors and items that may be leaning against the outside of the motorhome, such as fishing poles and golf clubs..

- ◆ When the motorhome is stored outdoors, clear the surrounding area of all rodent friendly hiding places: shrubs, trees and clutter. Completely seal the underside of the motorhome. Wire mesh will work well to prevent points of entry, but beware of blocking necessary air vents. Prior to operating the motorhome after storage, remove all insect and animal nests that may have developed around vents, engine compartments, the exhaust pipe and in the wheel wells.

Rodents:

Rodents may chew through wires or build nests in components of the motorhome. Signs of rodent infestation include droppings, shredded material or chewed furniture fabrics and vinyl. Rodents like to build nests with wire insulation and are commonly attracted to the outside coating of 120 Volt AC wiring more than 12 Volt DC wiring.

NOTE:

Although the back cap of the motorhome is well sealed, rodents are capable of chewing through the foam insulation and that area should be routinely inspected.

If signs of rodent infestation exist, place traps or poisons in suspected areas. Keep traps and poisons safely away from pets and children. Cheese is not the best bait for a rodent trap. Use peanut butter or chocolate in small amounts. Place the bait on the trigger of the trap to induce the rodent to climb onto the trigger to reach the bait. Rodents do not limit invasion to unused vehicles.

Insects:

Eliminate insects when signs of infestation appear. If the type of insect cannot be identified, purchase sticky traps from the hardware store and place the tape where the insects have been seen. Once a sample is caught, seek assistance in identifying the insect to determine what will be required to remove the infestation.

Regularly **inspect** the exterior of the motorhome for signs of a budding wasp nest, and promptly destroy small nests before they become too large.

Spiders can be in any structure. Immediately remove spider webs. Some types of spiders like to nest on top of the diesel tank and around the diesel hoses. Dispense of spiders using a vacuum. Use care to capture the spider and egg sacs. Throw the vacuum bag away in a sealed bag.

Fruit flies invade the motorhome by attaching to fresh fruits and vegetables. Determine what food items are generating the flies and discard that item in an outdoor trash receptacle. Fruit flies can be eliminated with a homemade trap. Pour a few ounces of vinegar into a cup and cover the cup with plastic wrap. Secure the wrap with tape or a rubber band and poke a 1/4" hole in the plastic. Place the trap in the area where fruit flies are present.

Ants live in colonies. Only a fraction of the ant colony will leave to seek food. Spraying pesticides will only kill the ants that are away from the colony. The colony must be destroyed to eliminate all ants. Keep ants away from the sewer hose by spraying the hose ends with a soap and water solution.

Fleas can be removed by properly treating pets with a veterinarian approved treatment and by thoroughly cleaning the motorhome. Vacuum vinyl areas and tile floors to remove dust, flea larva and flea eggs. Follow by thoroughly washing those areas with soap and water. Carpets must be vacuumed and treated with a residual flea control product labeled safe for indoor carpet and furniture use. Perform the cleaning treatment daily for three days to ensure that all fleas have encountered the treatment.

Flying outdoor insects are attracted to bright light. Yellow porch light covers on the motorhome work to discourage insect invasion. During nighttime hours insects will be attracted to docking lights or other bright exterior lighting.

If the presence of moths is detected inside the motorhome, usually by holes appearing in material, clean the affected clothing and all other items stored in the same area. Follow by completely cleaning the closet, dresser or storage area. If cracks are detected, seal the cracks and treat the area with a properly labeled indoor pest control product.

Birds:

Even birds can be considered pests, particularly when the motorhome is parked in the flight path of a flock. Bird droppings are hard to remove and will leave stains. Prevent permanent staining to the motorhome roof by regularly cleaning the surface to remove all bird droppings.

Damage from Pests:

Lizards have been known to crawl into the inverter and short out the circuit board. Lizards can be captured using glue traps. To remove the lizard from the trap, dissolve the glue with vegetable oil and release it outside and well away from the motorhome. A scorpion will glow blue-green in UV light. If the presence of scorpions in the motorhome is suspected, investigate with an UV black light during the nighttime hours.

Best sources of information about common household pests:

The Internet is a great place to find information about common pests. The National Pest Management Association web site can be a useful resource for common pests. Another good source of information is colleges and universities with entomology (study of insects) departments.

Electronic pest control devices can be costly and most likely will not work on all types of rodents and insects. When calling on the services of a professional to combat pest infestation, call a reputable business that is licensed in handling pesticides. Check references. Explain that you are seeking assistance for a motorhome, as treatments may differ from standard household jobs.

If a pest problem is suspected in the motorhome, consider professional pest control help. The following guidelines can be used for selecting a pest control service:

- ◆ Seek referrals from those who have used pest control services. Inquire about the type of pest problem encountered and if they were satisfied with the service.

- ◆ Membership in the national, state or local pest control associations is a good indicator that the company has access to modern technical information and is committed to further education.
- ◆ Reach a complete understanding with the company before work starts; find out what the pest is, how the problem will be treated, how long the period of treatment will be, and what results can be expected.
- ◆ Be sure to understand what is guaranteed and what is not.

STORAGE Short Term

Short term storage is defined as storing the motorhome for a period of thirty days or less. Properly preparing the motorhome during periods of short term storage will make bringing the motorhome out of storage a much easier process. Winterize the plumbing system if the motorhome is stored in winter months, or if stored when temperatures are below 32° F.

Checklist - Short Term Storage:

- ◆ Retract slide rooms. **Do not** store the motorhome with slide rooms extended.
- ◆ Shut off all appliances. Close the primary propane shut off valve.
- ◆ Remove all articles from refrigerator/freezer and clean thoroughly. Prop doors open to prevent mildew.
- ◆ Drain the holding tanks. Winterize the fresh water system using FDA RV antifreeze or air pressure to evacuate the plumbing system.

- ◆ Retract and secure all awnings.
- ◆ Turn off the interior house power using the battery cut-off switch.
- ◆ Store house and chassis batteries fully charged. Batteries stored in a discharged state will readily freeze and damage the battery.
- ◆ If possible, position the motorhome so the house and chassis batteries are accessible for charging or changing without having to move the motorhome.
- ◆ If AC power is not available, turn both the house and chassis battery disconnect switches off.
- ◆ If available, leave the motorhome hooked to shore power. Leave both the house and chassis battery disconnect switches on.
- ◆ Careful placement of a small heat source in the interior will help control moisture. Desiccate filter systems will help remove interior moisture.
- ◆ If possible, store the motorhome inside a storage building.
- ◆ If stored outside, **inspect** all seams and seals twice a month for possible leakage.
- ◆ Store the motorhome with a full fuel tank to minimize moisture condensing at top of fuel tank.
- ◆ Close vents and windows to prevent wind driven rain entrance.
- ◆ Store tires at maximum inflation pressure.
- ◆ Leave cabinet doors and drawers open to facilitate air movement behind those areas.

- ◆ Perform a full interior **inspection** for water leaks twice a month. Be sure to check behind all cabinet doors.

Long Term

Long term storage of the motorhome can be defined as leaving a motorhome unattended for a period of thirty days or more. A motorhome requires protection from the elements just as a house or a car would. When left out in the environment without proper storage or maintenance, a motorhome is vulnerable to the moisture and oxidation processes inherent in the environment.

NOTE:

The natural process of condensation will occur with temperature changes of 30° F. or more in one day. Humidity readings of 60% or greater will allow the accumulated moisture to remain for extended periods of time.

If AC power is not available in storage area:

- ◆ Turn off all appliances.
- ◆ Turn off interior house power using the battery cut-off switch.
- ◆ If possible, situate the motorhome so the house and chassis batteries remain accessible. This allows a battery to be charged or replaced without moving the motorhome.
- ◆ Charge house and chassis batteries to a full state of charge.
- ◆ Turn both the house and chassis battery disconnect switches off.
- ◆ Check battery voltage while the motorhome is in storage if stored outside.

- ◆ Preventive measures should be used if the voltage readings are low. It will make it easier to remove the motorhome from storage or move the motorhome in an emergency situation.

NOTE:

Batteries in a low state of charge will readily freeze and damage the battery.

If AC power is available:

The house and chassis battery disconnect switches should remain on. The inverter will charge both the house and chassis battery banks. A 30 Amp shore power service will be more than adequate.

CAUTION:

A 20 Amp service using light duty extension cords and the required adapters create serious voltage losses. Line voltage loss and the resistance at each electrical connection is a hazardous combination and should be avoided. Damage to sensitive electronic equipment may result!

Surfaces to park/store the motorhome on:

- ◆ Avoid parking the motorhome on a grass or gravel surface to prevent moisture accumulation.
- ◆ Concrete pads seal the surface and allow better ventilation under the motorhome.
- ◆ Storage buildings with concrete floors, or heated storage facilities, greatly reduce the amount of moisture accumulation and protects the motorhome from moisture damage.

Outdoor Storage Area:

- ◆ The interior should be heated to help prevent mold and mildew growth. Moisture removing desiccate filter systems are available from hardware and RV supply stores. Place the filter system inside the motorhome to reduce interior moisture condensation or humidity.
- ◆ Proper winterization of the fresh water system will prevent potential damage in extreme cold.
- ◆ Ultraviolet radiation affects soft goods and rubber products such as privacy curtains, window shades and tires. These items should be protected. Store Day/Night Shades in the Up position.
- ◆ Cardboard templates can be made for the windows to protect the interior from exposure to direct sunlight.
- ◆ Tire covers are available to protect the sidewall of the tires from cracking. Make sure tires in storage contain the correct air pressure to prevent damaged caused by underinflation.
- ◆ Regularly wash the exterior to help control moss accumulation. Waxing the motorhome twice a year will augment these substances.

Inspect the motorhome:

- ◆ Perform a full interior **inspection** for water leaks every two weeks while the motorhome is in storage. Check inside all cabinets for signs of dampness or leaks. **Inspect** the ceiling areas around roof vents or other roof openings.

- ◆ Leave cabinet doors and drawers open to facilitate air movement behind those areas.
- ◆ **Inspect** and clean the roof and sidewall seams at least twice a year. **Inspect** for exterior sealant gaps of all roof seams, vents, skylights, roof air conditioners and windows.

Fuel:

Storing the motorhome with a full fuel tank will minimize moisture condensing at the top of the tank. Diesel fuel is an organic material which will develop a microbe growth (black slime). Fuel stabilizers may be added to control microbe growth and degrading of the fuel. Consult the engine manufacturer's owner's manual or a distributor for further detailed information on fuel stabilizers and additives.

Brakes:

Brakes suffer from non-use during periods of storage. The bare metal machined surfaces of brake drums or rotors have only a light coating of dust from the brake lining friction material. The brake dust is the only thing protecting the bare metal surfaces from rusting. Only regular brake applications dry the moisture preventing rust on brake drum or rotor surfaces. During periods of non-use, oxygen and moisture oxidize the machined surfaces. Only occasional use keeps these surfaces from oxidizing. Rusty brake drum or rotor surfaces permeate the brake lining upon the first few applications, reducing the friction action of the linings.

Engine:

Internal combustion engines need to be "exercised" on a regular basis to ensure an adequate supply of lubricating oil coats the cylinder walls and piston rings. Valve and valve seat surfaces also suffer from non-use. Some valves will remain open depending at which part of the combustion cycle the engine has stopped. The heat and cold of the day allows moisture to accumulate through the exhaust system. Start all engines, including the generator, at least twice a month.

Electric Motors:

Electric motors in the motorhome should be occasionally operated to help lubricate and keep surfaces freely rotating. These items include the roof air conditioners, dash fans, dash blower motor, furnace and powered roof vents.

Winter Storage Checklist

- ◆ **Plumbing Lines** - Drain and protect. (*See Winterizing - Section 6.*)
- ◆ **Fresh Water Tank** - Drain.
- ◆ **Body** - Clean and wax. Oil locks and hinges. Repair roof seams as needed.
- ◆ **Countertop and Cabinets** - Wash with mild soap and water.
- ◆ **Curtains** - Remove and clean according to care specifications.
- ◆ **Windows** - To protect interior fabric from fading, cover windows by pulling blinds. For Day/Night shades cover with a separate cover such as a sheet or a cut out template. Day/Night shades hold their shape better if stored in the up position.

- ◆ **Holding Tank** - Drain and rinse. Close valves.

LUBE:

Add a small amount of antifreeze to waste holding tanks to keep valves and gaskets lubricated.

- ◆ **Drain Traps** - Pour RV antifreeze down all drains.
- ◆ **Refrigerator** - Clean and leave both doors propped open. Cover exterior panels and roof vents. If equipped with an icemaker, drain icemaker and icemaker tray. See the refrigerator OEM manual for more detail.
- ◆ **Batteries** - Add distilled water and recharge if needed. If necessary, disconnect the cables, remove the batteries and store them in a cool dry place. Check and recharge as needed.
- ◆ **Air Conditioner** - Remove the air filters. Clean or replace.
- ◆ **Roof** - Keep clear of snow accumulation or damage may occur.
- ◆ **Interior/Exterior** - Storing under cover or indoors helps extend interior and exterior life.
- ◆ **Fuel Tank** - Diesel fuel tank should be full of fuel to inhibit moisture condensation.

Removal from Storage

Extensive freeze damage or other serious deterioration can occur if the motorhome is not properly winterized. If the motorhome is properly and carefully prepared for storage, removal from storage will not be difficult. The following checklist pertains to items or areas that should be inspected when it is time to take the motorhome out of storage and put back into operation. If there are any questions regarding storage or winterization, consult a qualified service technician.

- ◆ Thoroughly inspect the outside of motorhome. Look for animal nests in the wheel wells or in other out of the way places.
- ◆ Remove all appliance flue vent covers, ceiling vent covers and air conditioning covers. Clear the refrigerator openings of debris, insect nests, webs, etc.
- ◆ Open all doors and compartments. Check for animal or insect intrusion, water damage or other types of damage which may have occurred.
- ◆ Check the state of charge of the batteries. If necessary, fill LLA (Liquid Lead Acid) cells with distilled water only. Charge as necessary. Inspect the cable ends and terminals. They should be secure and free of corrosion.
- ◆ Check all the chassis fluid levels: engine oil, engine coolant, hydraulic fluid reservoir, transmission oil and rear axle oil.

- ◆ Start the engine, allowing it to reach operating temperature. Ensure the engine instruments indicate proper readings.
- ◆ While the engine is running, check the operation of headlights, taillights, turn signals, back-up lights, license plate light and emergency flasher. Operate the dash air conditioner. If the air conditioner does not work or the compressor makes unusual noises, have the system checked by a qualified air conditioner technician.
- ◆ Shut the engine down. Adjust or add fluids as necessary. Inspect around the engine and under the motorhome for fluid leaks.
- ◆ Drain, sanitize and flush the fresh water system as outlined in the ***Water Systems - Section 6***. Inspect the sewer drain hose and connections for leaks. Replace if necessary.
- ◆ Operate all faucets and fixtures in the fresh water system. Run a sufficient amount of fresh water through all the water lines and faucets to thoroughly purge any potable antifreeze from the fresh water system.

NOTE:

Discard at least the first two trays of ice from the icemaker to ensure the ice does not contain traces of antifreeze or other contaminants.

- ◆ Open cabinet doors and drawers.
Inspect for water leaks at joints or fittings. Repair as necessary.
- ◆ Operate all 12 Volt DC lights and accessories. If something does not work there may be a bad 12 Volt DC circuit breaker or blown fuse.
- ◆ Install new batteries in battery operated safety detectors or devices. Test the carbon monoxide, propane and smoke detectors for proper operation.
- ◆ Check that the monitor panel is properly functioning.
- ◆ Inspect the 120 Volt AC electrical system which includes the power cord, inverter/converter, all outlets and exposed wiring.

NOTE:

Prepare the generator for operation following the instructions in the generator OEM manual.

- ◆ Start and run the generator.
- ◆ Confirm that the batteries are charging. Operate the 120 Volt AC appliances and air conditioners. If an electrical item or appliance is not properly functioning, contact the dealer or an authorized service center to have it evaluated.
- ◆ Have a qualified technician inspect the propane system and perform an propane leak test. The leak test should also include an propane regulator adjustment (if needed). The test can also verify if the regulator is faulty and should be replaced. Have the propane tank inspected.

- ◆ Operate each propane appliance.
Observe all burner/pilot flames for proper color and size.
- ◆ Inspect and clean the interior.
- ◆ Check the sealant around all roof and body seams and windows. Reseal if necessary.
- ◆ Lubricate all the exterior locks, hinges and latches with a graphite lubricant.
- ◆ Check the windshield wiper blade condition. Check the wiper/washer operation.
- ◆ Wash and wax the exterior. Check the body for scratches or other damage; touch up or repair as necessary. Flush the underside thoroughly.
- ◆ Run through the operational checks for steering, brakes, engine and transmission. Operate the motorhome slowly during these checks to allow sufficient circulation of fluids and resetting of the components.
- ◆ If desired, have the dealer or repair center double-check preparation to make necessary adjustments and/or correct defects.

NOTE:

Road vibrations can cause fittings and fasteners to loosen. Perform periodic inspection of fasteners and fittings.

Appliances

Section 4



APPLIANCES - INTRODUCTION	72	ROOF A/C	80
REFRIGERATOR.....	72	Thermostat	80
Operation Specifics	72	Maintenance	81
REFRIGERATOR CONTROLS	73	ROOF A/C - HEAT PUMP (OPTIONAL).....	81
8 Cubic Foot with Ice Maker	73	LCD Display	82
Icemaker	74	Remote Temperature Sensor	82
Refrigerator Alarm	74	Air Conditioning - Roof	82
Cooling Unit Fans	75	Fan Operation Only	82
Doors	75	Air Conditioner Operation	83
Storage Procedures	75	Heat Pump Operation	83
Interior Light.....	75	Air Conditioner Maintenance	83
Service	76	FURNACE	84
Exterior Refrigerator Access Panel	76	Operation	84
Air in Propane Supply Lines	76	Thermostat	85
CONVECTION MICROWAVE OVEN	76	If the Furnace Fails to Light.....	85
Care & Cleaning	77	WATER HEATER.....	86
COOKTOP	78	Water Heater Operation	87
Safety	79	Water Heater Bypass Valves	88
Cooktop Cover	79	WASHER/DRYER STACKED (OPTIONAL)	89
Burner Grate	80	Washer	89
Care & Cleaning	80	Test Cycle	89
		Operating Instructions	90
		Cleaning the Washer	90
		Winterizing the Washer	91
		Dryer	91
		Operation	91
		Dryer Maintenance	92

APPLIANCES - INTRODUCTION

This section covers operation and care of various appliances found in the motorhome: refrigerator, cooktop, microwave, roof air conditioner and optional appliances. These appliances operate on AC or DC current, propane or a combination of the three.

NOTE:

Appliance features and options vary with floorplans.

INFORMATION:

Detailed information with CAUTION or WARNING instructions for the various appliances, other than what is found in this section, can be found in the OEM manuals.

WARNING:

Before entering any type of refueling station, turn off all propane operated appliances. Most propane appliances are vented to the outside. When parked close to a gasoline pump it is possible for fuel vapors to enter this type of appliance and ignite, resulting in an explosion or fire.

WARNING:

Carbon Monoxide gas may cause nausea, fainting or death. Operating a propane appliance with inadequate ventilation or partial blockage of the flue can result in Carbon Monoxide poisoning. Do not store flammable liquids such as lighter fluid, gasoline or propane in the outside refrigerator compartment.

REFRIGERATOR

Follow the specific guidelines in the refrigerator OEM manual for detailed operating and maintenance instructions. This will help ensure longevity and proper operation of the refrigerator. With proper care and maintenance, the refrigerator should provide years of trouble-free service.

INFORMATION:

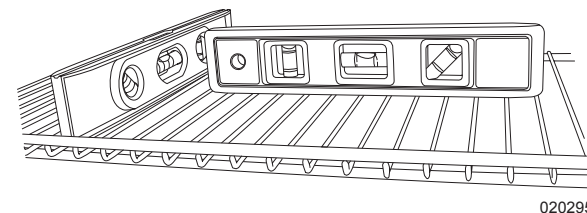
The refrigerator may require special winterization procedures. Refer to the refrigerator OEM manual for instructions and recommendations.

TIP:

To reduce the possibility of food spoilage, keep the interior box temperature at or below 40° F. The refrigerator will consume more energy to maintain low temperature, especially in hot, humid climates. Lower temperature may also lead to more frost build-up.

Operation Specifics

- ◆ The refrigerator operates from propane or 120 Volts AC electric.
- ◆ DC Voltage for control pad operation must be no higher than 15.4 Volts DC or lower than 10.5 Volts DC.
- ◆ AC voltage must be no higher than 132 Volts AC or lower than 108 Volts AC.



020295

Important: Operate refrigerator only when level. Level the refrigerator using a torpedo or bulls eye level. Place the levels on the bottom shelf of the refrigerator. The bubble should be at least half-way inside the circles.

CAUTION:

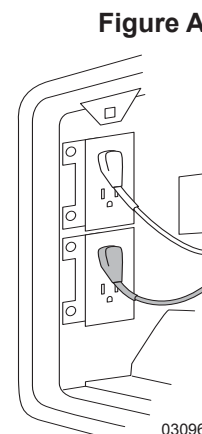
Operating the refrigerator off-level separates chemicals, causing them to crystallize and block the circulation action of the cooling unit. Damage is cumulative and irreversible.

WARNING:

Do not use the refrigerator if there is an ammonia smell inside or outside of the refrigerator, or if a yellowish substance appears inside or at the outside access compartment. This can be an indication of a refrigerant leak. Contact an authorized repair facility.

Refrigerator Operation:

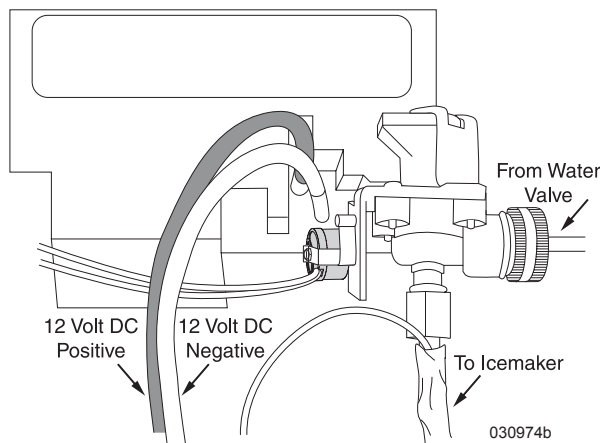
- ◆ House batteries must be charged and on.
- ◆ The primary propane valve must be open.
- ◆ **Figure A:** The refrigerator 120 Volt AC cord(s) must be plugged in (located outside behind refrigerator access door).



030967

- ◆ **Figure B:** If controls do not light up, check house battery charge status or see if the 12 Volt DC wires are plugged into the refrigerator's circuit board (located outside behind refrigerator access door).

Figure B



- ◆ **Figure C:** The water valve is located under the refrigerator or behind the refrigerator access door. The water valve must be open if the refrigerator is equipped with an icemaker.

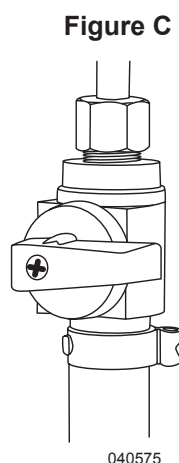
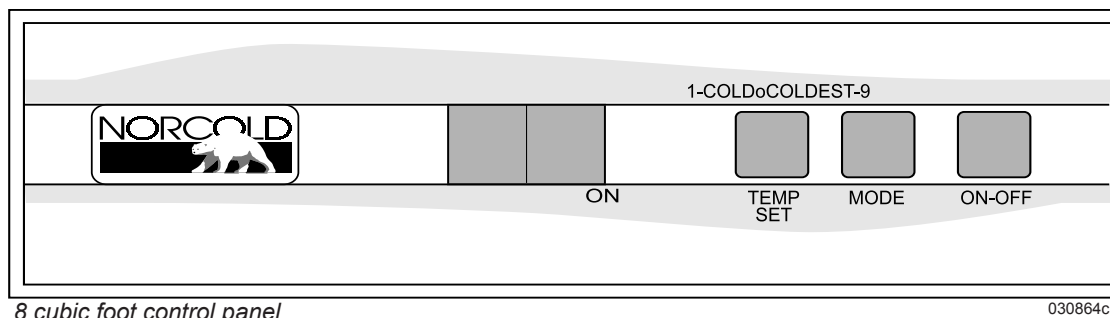


Figure C



8 cubic foot control panel

REFRIGERATOR CONTROLS 8 Cubic Foot with Ice Maker

On/Off Button:

Turns the refrigerator On or Off.

- ◆ Push the On/Off button. The refrigerator begins operation in Auto mode.
- ◆ Push and hold the On/Off button for two seconds to shut off the refrigerator.

LED Display:

This screen is used for mode, temperature and fault code display.

Mode Button:

Controls mode of operation.

- ◆ Press the Mode button to select between AU (Automatic), AC or Gas (propane) operation.

Set Temp Button:

Adjusts the temperature.

- ◆ To adjust, push and hold the Set Temp button.
- ◆ Number “9” is the coldest setting.

Manual Mode (MAN):

When one of the two manual modes is selected:

1. **AC** = The refrigerator is operating on AC electric.
2. **LP** = The refrigerator is operating on propane.

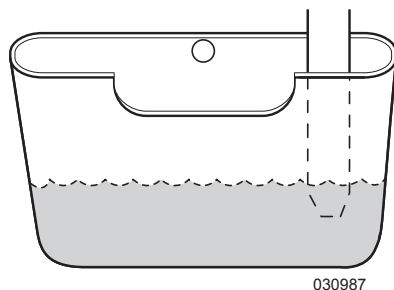
Automatic Mode (AU):

This feature selects AC over propane operation. If AC discontinues, the refrigerator will automatically switch to propane operation. An alarm will sound and a code will display if the propane fails to light.

- ◆ Repeatedly press the Mode button until AU displays.
- ◆ Press and hold the Temp Set button until the desired temperature displays. Release button.
- ◆ In Auto mode, AU/AC or AU/LP will alternate three times when a mode has changed.
- ◆ If the propane does not ignite within 30 seconds, the control changes to a different energy source or the gas safety valve closes and “NO” “FL” displays. Turn the refrigerator off then back on. If the gas does not ignite after several attempts, consult an authorized service technician.

Tips:

- ◆ Cool items first, if possible, before putting them into the refrigerator.
- ◆ Keep the doors shut. Think about desired contents before opening the doors.
- ◆ Allow the refrigerator 24 hours of operation before actual use to kick start the refrigerator process.
- ◆ A box of open baking soda will help absorb food odors.
- ◆ Ice build up can be slowed in high humidity if the end of the drain tube is submersed in drip pan. It may be necessary to add water to the drip pan to keep the tube submersed.

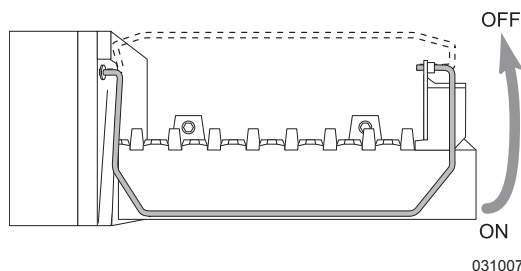


Drip Pan: Located behind the outside access.

Icemaker

The icemaker requires 120 Volts AC to operate. Only after the freezer reaches freezing temperature will the icemaker function. City water or the water pump must be on and the water valve for the water supply line to the icemaker must be on. The water valve is located under the refrigerator or behind the refrigerator access door. The water valve must be open if the refrigerator is equipped with an icemaker.

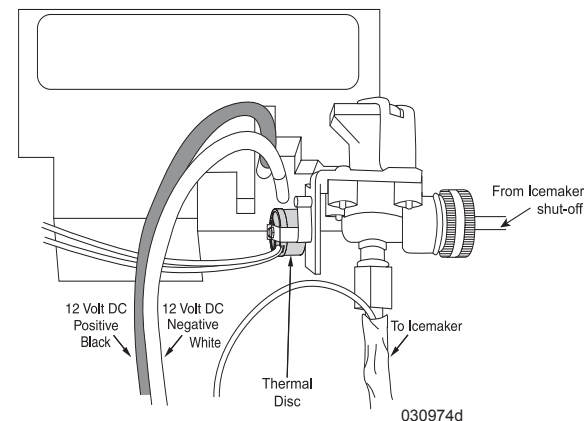
- ◆ Pull the metal arm (bail) down to turn the icemaker on.
- ◆ Push the arm up to turn the icemaker off.

**Important:**

- ◆ Do not operate icemaker while the motorhome is in transit. Water may spill out during travel.
- ◆ Do not use the first one or two trays of ice following storage.
- ◆ Do not operate the icemaker without water pressure supplied to the refrigerator. Damage to the icemaker assembly could occur.

Water Line Heater:

A thermal disc supplies voltage to heater tape when ambient temperature is less than 38° F (+/- 4°) and shuts off at temperature greater than 48° F (+/- 5°). The water line heater is only for the line from the solenoid to the icemaker. The line from the icemaker shut-off valve to the water valve is protected with foam insulation.

**Refrigerator Alarm**

The refrigerator audible alarm will sound for the following reasons:

- ◆ DC or AC voltage is higher or lower than allowed.
- ◆ The refrigerator fails to light on propane or fails to light after a period of operation.
- ◆ Refrigerator is set to Auto, 120 Volts AC is discontinued and propane fails to light. NO AC will display, followed by NO FL, and the alarm will sound. Consult the OEM manual.
- ◆ Door is open longer than two minutes.
- ◆ The circuit board detects a failure. The control panel will display a code.

NOTE:

If the alarm sounds, note the code in the LED display and turn the refrigerator off to silence the alarm.

INFORMATION:

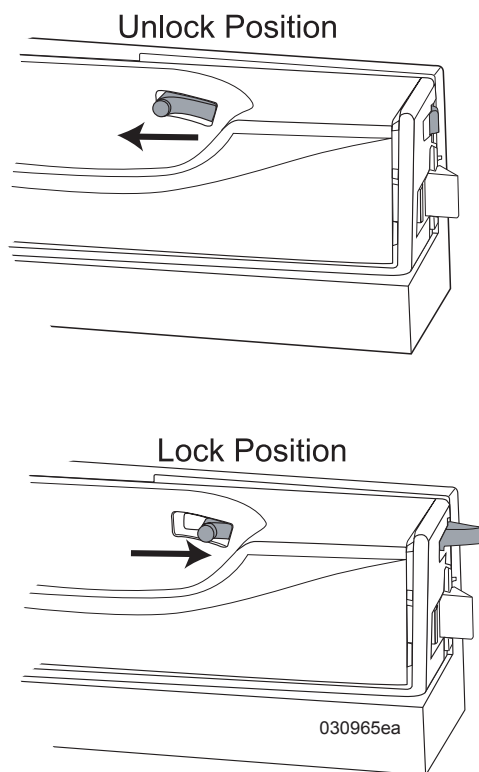
Refer to the refrigerator OEM manual for the list of codes and their meanings.

Cooling Unit Fans

The cooling unit is equipped with a pair of cooling fans that pass air across the cooling unit. These fans start automatically and are audible when in operation.

Doors

The refrigerator doors use a positive latch that secures the door with a “click” to prevent the door from opening during travel. The doors use a heating element located in the flapper on the left door (four door model) or in the door (two door model). The heating element activates when operating the refrigerator in any mode to help prevent moisture accumulation in high humidity conditions.



Mold and mildew may contaminate a completely sealed refrigerator in storage. The motorhome refrigerator has a storage position to lock the doors partially open and promote airflow that will help prevent mold build up.

To use the refrigerator storage position:

- ◆ Completely empty the refrigerator.
- ◆ Disconnect power to the refrigerator.
- ◆ Thoroughly clean the interior box using a soft cloth to remove all stains and spills.
- ◆ Partially open the doors and slide tab into the cut-out of the striker plate.

Storage Procedures

- ◆ Turn the refrigerator off and remove all items. Leave the drip tray under the cooling fins.

CAUTION:

Do not use a heating gun or hair dryer to remove frost. Permanent damage could result to plastic parts.

CAUTION:

Do not use a knife, ice pick or any other sharp instrument to remove ice from the freezer as these can puncture and damage the interior or cooling unit.

- ◆ Wash the interior using mild spray cleaners or a solution of liquid dish detergent and warm water.
- ◆ Do not use scouring pads or abrasive cleaners that can damage the interior finish.

- ◆ Rinse with a solution of baking soda and water. Dry with a clean cloth.
- ◆ Lock the doors open.

Interior Light

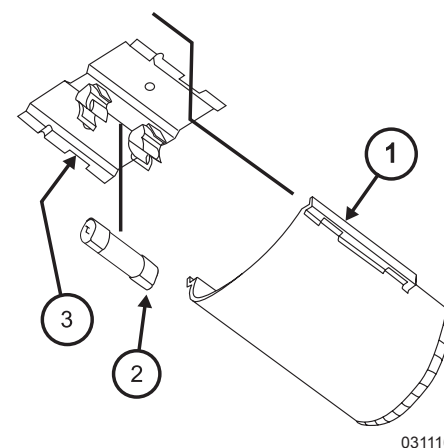
The interior light is located at the top of the fresh food compartment. When the door is open the light will illuminate.

Bulb Replacement:

- ◆ Remove the light cover by pulling it toward the front of the refrigerator.
- ◆ Remove the light bulb from the holder.
- ◆ Install a **GE#214-2** replacement bulb and replace the cover.

NOTE:

Replacement bulb number is accurate at time of printing. Confirm part number before ordering or obtaining replacement.



Service

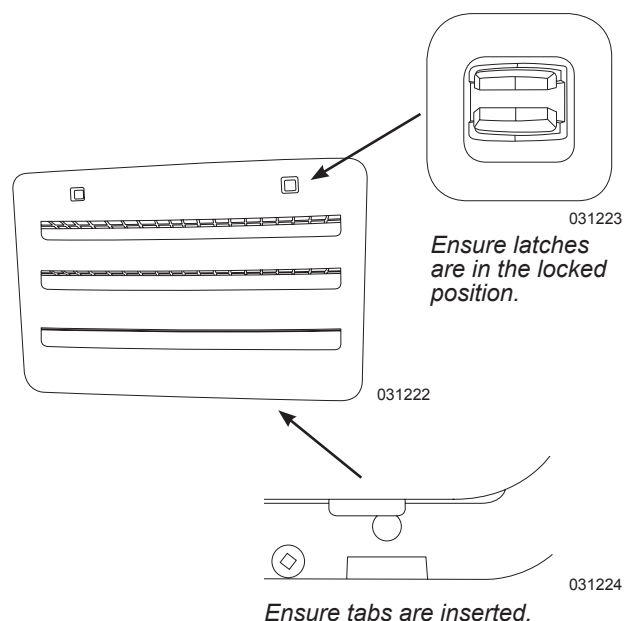
The propane function of the refrigerator and propane pressure will require annual service. Over time, the BTU rating of the flame can change, affecting the refrigerator's performance. Ambient temperature, high humidity and altitude above 5,500 ft. can affect performance and function. If possible, switch mode operation to AC while at a higher altitude.

Exterior Refrigerator Access Panel

After opening the refrigerator access panel, the panel must be properly closed and secured.

CAUTION:

Ensure the exterior refrigerator access panel is properly replaced after removal. Failure to do so may result in the panel jarring loose during travel.



Air in Propane Supply Lines

For safety reasons, the refrigerator will attempt to ignite on propane within a specified amount of time. When starting the refrigerator for the first time after storage or after servicing the propane supply system, propane supply lines may contain air. Due to air in the supply lines the refrigerator may not ignite on propane within the specified amount of time. Follow the procedure on how to remove air from the propane supply lines.

To remove the air from the propane supply lines:

- ◆ Ensure the primary propane shut-off valve is open.
- ◆ Light the cooktop burners first to quickly purge air from the main distribution line.
- ◆ Push the On/Off button to turn the refrigerator on.
- ◆ Press the Mode button until the refrigerator indicates LP. The refrigerator will start a 30 second trial for ignition during which the propane safety valve opens and the igniter sparks.
- ◆ If the refrigerator fails to light, indicated by F or NO FL (No Flame), turn the refrigerator off then back on and set to LP mode. If after the third attempt the refrigerator fails to light, stop and consult your local dealer or an authorized Norcold service center.

CONVECTION MICROWAVE OVEN

The convection microwave oven operates from 120 Volt AC supplied by shore power, the generator or inverter.

Operation Tips:

- ◆ The glass tray and roller guide must always be in place during cooking.
- ◆ Ensure the door is firmly closed before use.
- ◆ Ensure cookware being used is microwave safe. Gold paint or glaze may contain a trace amount of gold which is electrically conductive and not compatible for the convection microwave. Hand painted china commonly contains traces of metal.
- ◆ If the control pad is not lit, plug another electrical appliance into the same outlet to verify 120 Volt AC power is present. If the test item works, contact an appliance repair facility to have the convection microwave oven checked.
- ◆ Steam accumulating inside or around the outside of the oven door may occur when the convection microwave oven is operated under high humidity conditions and in no way indicates a malfunction of the unit. Wipe away steam using a soft cloth.

Convection Microwave Facts:

One of the most useful documents is the convection microwave OEM manual. Read the document carefully and keep it for detailed information, operating instructions and reference. A properly functioning convection microwave oven presents no hazard with ordinary use. Safety features should be kept in good condition. Never attempt to bypass safety interlocks or allow debris or residue to accumulate on the door or oven face. If the oven is damaged, discontinue use. Oven adjustments or repairs should be made by qualified service personnel. Remember to register the convection microwave oven with the manufacturer.

CAUTION:

If a fire flares up when using the cooktop, turn off the convection microwave oven ventilation fan as it may spread the flames. The ventilation fan cannot be manually turned off when automatically started from a heated cooktop. Turn off the (2) 50 Amp main circuit breakers located on the Load Center. This will help prevent flames from spreading into the microwave.

NOTE:

When dry camping, minimize using the inverter to operate the convection microwave oven due to the high rate of battery consumption.

NOTE:

The convection microwave oven is for food preparation only. Do not use the convection microwave oven to dry clothes, newspapers, shoes or other items.

INFORMATION:

For more detailed information and operating instructions, refer to the convection microwave oven OEM manual.

CAUTION:

Long-term use of the inverter to operate the convection microwave while in transit will damage the alternator. Use the generator to operate the convection microwave while in transit.

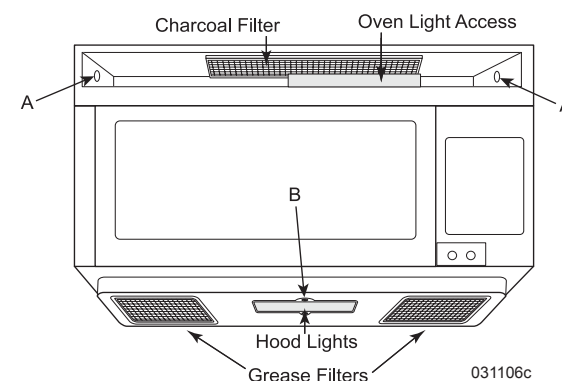
Care & Cleaning

The exterior of the convection microwave oven is plastic and metal. The interior is metal. Do not clean with scouring pads, harsh or abrasive cleaners, chemical cleaners or petroleum based thinners that can damage the finish. Use mild soap and water with a damp cloth or paper towel to remove stains or spills. When cleaning the touch pad, open the door to prevent accidental operation. Use mild soap and water with a soft cloth. Avoid using excess amounts of water on the touch pad. The turntable plate and oven racks are dishwasher safe.

Charcoal Filter:

Depending on use, the charcoal filter should be replaced every 6 to 12 months. Use the following procedure to remove the louvers to replace the charcoal filter and oven light:

- ◆ Remove power to the convection microwave oven.
- ◆ Remove the screws (A) securing the louver.
- ◆ Insert a flat edge screwdriver over each tab pressing downward and move the louver away from the convection microwave.
- ◆ Remove and replace the charcoal filter. Ensure the filter is positioned on the supporting tabs.
- ◆ Replace louver and mounting screws.

**Oven Light:**

- ◆ Remove the louver as previously indicated.
- ◆ Slide the metal light cover forward and lift upwards.
- ◆ Remove the light bulb and replace only with an equivalent watt bulb. **Do not** exceed 30 watts.
- ◆ Replace light cover, louver and mounting screws.

Hood Light:

- ◆ Remove power to the convection microwave oven.
- ◆ Remove the screw (B) securing the light cover.
- ◆ Remove the light bulb and replace only with an equivalent watt bulb. **Do not** exceed 30 watts.
- ◆ Close cover and re-secure with screw.

CAUTION:

Light cover may be hot. Do not touch glass with lamp on. Never use the light for prolonged periods, such as a night light.

Grease Filters:

Operating the convection microwave oven without the grease filters in place can damage the unit. Grease filters should be cleaned at least once a month. To remove the filters, use the pull-tab to slide the filter to the end of the opening and tip down. Soak the filters in the sink or in a dishpan filled with hot water and detergent.

- ◆ **Do not** use ammonia or other alkali-based products that may darken the filter material.
- ◆ Agitate the filter. Use a scrub brush to remove caked on grease.
- ◆ Rinse the filter thoroughly and shake dry. Place the filter back into the opening, tip upward and slide filter to the end of the opening. Lock in place. Be careful not to kink or warp the filter upon installation.

Cleaning Tips:

- ◆ Turn the oven off before cleaning.
- ◆ Cover food while cooking to keep splattering to a minimum.
- ◆ Clean up all spills or spatters before they dry. Wipe up food spatters or spilled liquids with a damp cloth. Mild detergent may be used for stubborn spills. Do not use harsh detergent or abrasive cleaner.
- ◆ It is occasionally necessary to remove the glass tray for cleaning. Wash the tray in warm, sudsy water or in a dishwasher.
- ◆ The roller guide and oven cavity floor should be regularly cleaned to avoid excessive noise. Wipe the bottom surface of the oven with mild detergent water or window cleaner and then dry. The roller guide may be washed in mild sudsy water.
- ◆ Food odors may linger inside oven. To help eliminate odors, combine the juice and the peel from one lemon, several whole cloves and 8 oz. of water into a two cup bowl. Place in oven on high power; bring to a boil for several minutes. Let cool in the oven for several minutes.
- ◆ Clean the outside oven surface with soap and water. Wipe away any residue using a damp cloth. Dry with a soft cloth. To prevent damage to the operating parts inside the oven, do not allow water to seep into the ventilation openings.

- ◆ If the control panel becomes wet, clean with a soft, dry cloth. **Do not** use harsh detergents or abrasive when cleaning the control panel.

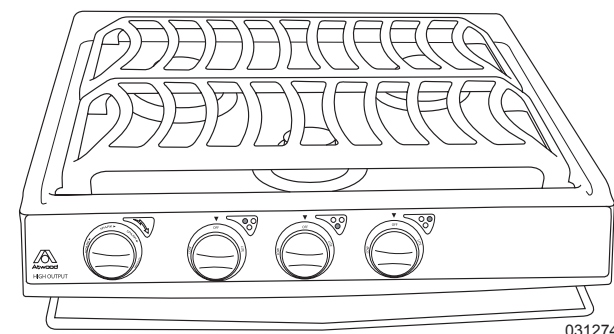
COOKTOP

The cooktop uses only propane as a fuel source. The burners are ignited with piezo ignition. The cooktop should be used for cooking purposes only and not as a heating source. The flame should have a blue appearance with a lighter blue defined flame at the burner head.

A yellow flame or yellow tips indicate a rich fuel mixture that can leave a black color (carbon) on the bottom of a pot or pan.

INFORMATION:

For detailed cooktop information, operating instructions and safety refer the OEM manual.



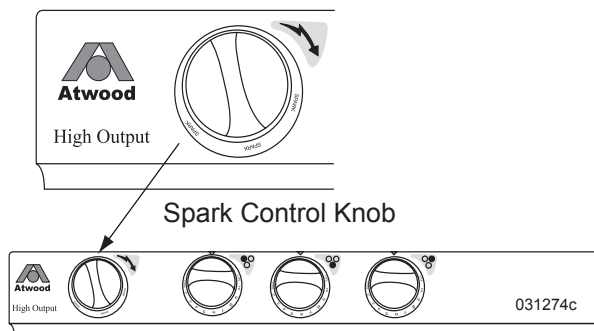
031274f

To Use the Cooktop:

- ◆ Open the primary valve on the propane tank.
- ◆ Battery cut-off switch is on.
- ◆ House batteries are charged.

Lighting the Burner:

- ◆ Place cookware on burner grate over the desired burner.
- ◆ Push in and turn appropriate burner knob to Lite. Do not attempt to light more than one burner at a time.
- ◆ Rotate Spark Control Knob clockwise until the burner lights.
- ◆ When the burner lights, rotate knob to the desired flame setting.



⚠ WARNING

IT IS NOT SAFE TO USE COOKING APPLIANCES FOR COMFORT HEATING.

Cooking appliances need fresh air for safe operation.

Before operation:

1. Open overhead vent or turn on exhaust fan.
2. Open window.

FAILURE TO COMPLY COULD RESULT IN DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY.

020327

WARNING:

Do not leave burners unattended during cooking. Do not leave burner valve(s) open while burner(s) are not lit. Propane is heavier than air and will settle on the floor and “hide” in corners. If a propane smell exits, extinguish all open flames. Open all windows and doors. Do not touch any electrical switches. They may cause a spark that can ignite. Evacuate the motorhome and shut off the primary propane valve. Liquid propane is highly volatile, highly explosive and extremely dangerous. Explosion, fire, property damage, injury or death can result. Contact a qualified service center to have the problem correctly diagnosed and repaired before resuming operation.

Operation Tips:

- ◆ A yellow flame is an indication of incorrect fuel/air ratio. Lowered BTU output and carbon build up can occur.
- ◆ When cooking at an altitude above 5,000 ft., the flame may change appearance and the flame BTU output will be lowered. Allow extra time cooking time.
- ◆ Do not allow the tips of the flame to extend beyond pan or pot edge. When this occurs heat is wasted and possibility of injury increases.
- ◆ Cooking time can be reduced if the least amount of liquid is used.
- ◆ Cookware type and style can make a big difference in heat distribution.

Safety

- ◆ Do not leave children alone or unattended in the galley area when the cooktop is in use.
- ◆ Never allow anyone to sit, stand or climb on any part of the range cooktop. Serious injury or burns could occur.
- ◆ Do not store items that children may want above the cooktop. Children can be burned or injured.
- ◆ Do not wear loose or hanging garments when using the cooktop.
- ◆ Use only dry pot holders. Damp pot holders on hot surfaces may result in burns from steam. Do not let potholder touch an open flame.
- ◆ Do not heat unopened containers. Containers could explode.

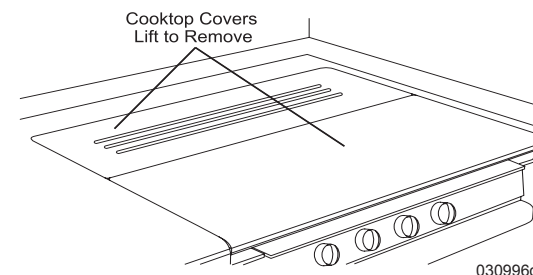
CAUTION:

Never leave the cooktop unattended.

Cooktop Cover

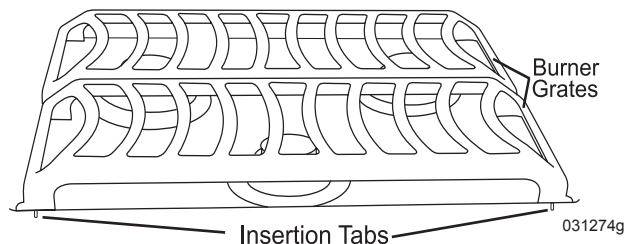
The cover must be open before using the cooktop.

- ◆ Do not place the covers on the cooktop while the burners are lit.
- ◆ Do not use the covers as a griddle.
- ◆ The covers must be in place while the motorhome is in transit.



Burner Grate

The burner grates are attached to the cooktop by four insertion tabs and can be removed for cleaning. Place a cloth down to protect the countertop. To remove a burner grate, pull up on the grate. To re-install a burner grate, align the insertion tabs with the grommets and push down.



Care & Cleaning

Regularly wipe down the cooktop with a soft cloth and a warm detergent solution to keep it clean. Do not clean the cooktop with abrasive or harsh cleaners such as steel wool, bleach, ammonia or oven cleaner.

Use a dry paper towel or cloth to wipe up spatters or spills when the cooktop surface is still slightly warm. To avoid accidental burns, do not clean the cooktop when it is hot to touch. Do not allow food to bake on. Clean the surface burner grate and caps using the same guidelines as the cooktop surface.

To avoid dulling the finish, wipe up the spill before it is baked on. Steel wool and coarse, gritty cleanser will scratch or mar the surface. Use gentle kitchen cleanser powder or grease cleaner. For further information on care and maintenance of the porcelain, call *Hopes Cultured Marble Polish* at 800-325-4026.

Porcelain Enamel:

Porcelain enamel, a type of glass fused on steel at a very high temperature, is not extremely delicate but must be treated as glass. Sharp blows, radical surface temperature changes, etc., will cause enamel to chip or crack. Some foods, such as vinegar, lemon juice, tomatoes and milk, contain acids which can dull the finish of the enamel. To avoid dulling the finish, wipe up the spill before it is baked on. The surface is glass and must be given consideration when cleaning. Steel wool and coarse, gritty cleanser will scratch or mar the surface. Any gentle kitchen cleanser powder or grease cleaner will be suitable. For further information on care of the porcelain, call "*Hopes Cultured Marble Polish*" at **1-800-325-4026**.

ROOF A/C

The roof air conditioner operates from 120 Volts AC shore power. The thermostat controls roof A/C functions and the furnace.

INFORMATION:

Refer to air conditioner OEM manual for detailed information and operating instructions.

Thermostat

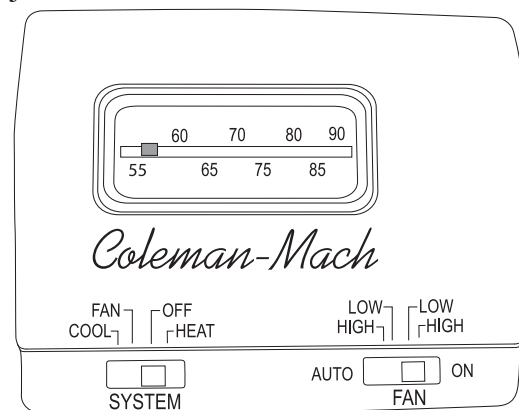
System Switch:

Off – Turns the thermostat off.

Fan - Operates the roof A/C fan only. The compressor will not engage in Fan mode.

Cool - The fan operates continuously for even cooling. The thermostat regulates compressor cycle according to temperature setting.

Heat – Sets the thermostat to operate the furnace. Fan speed of the furnace is not adjustable.



Thermostat used without heat pumps

031063k

Fan Switch:**Auto Mode**

Low Fan – The roof A/C fan operates continuously at low speed. Thermostat temperature setting will cause the fan to cycle on and off.

High Fan – The roof A/C fan operates continuously at low speed. Thermostat temperature setting will cause the fan to cycle on and off.

On Mode

Low Fan – The fan operates continuously at low speed.

High Fan – The fan operates continuously at high speed.

NOTE:

The temperature setting regulates the cycle of the compressor in Cool mode. The blower runs continuously in Cool mode to circulate air and maintain an even temperature.

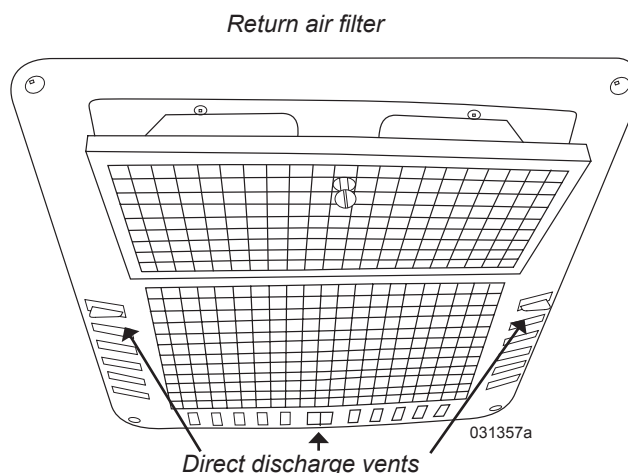
CAUTION:

Wait 2 minutes after the compressor cycles off before setting the thermostat to a cooler setting. This allows refrigerant pressure to equalize and compressor to easily restart.

Maintenance

Periodically remove and clean return air filter. The filter is located above the removable panel. Avoid use without the filter in place.

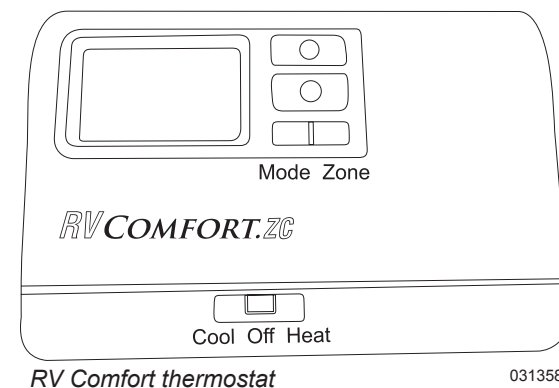
Remove and clean filter and housing with mild soap and water. Do not use harsh cleaners, scouring powders or petroleum based cleaners as this can damage the filter and housing finish.

**Energy Saving Tips:**

1. Select a temperature setting that suits comfort needs.
2. Regularly clean return air filters.
3. Park in a shaded area during extreme outdoor temperatures. Keep windows and doors closed. Keep blinds or shades closed. Avoid use of heat producing appliances.

ROOF A/C - HEAT PUMP (OPTIONAL)

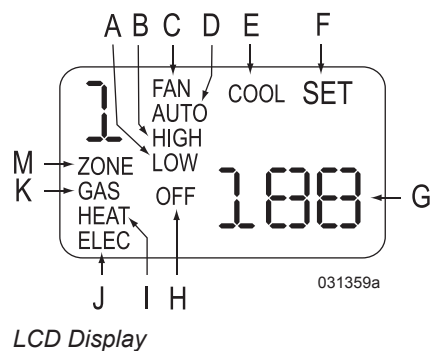
The RV Comfort thermostat is located above the entry door. The thermostat controls the HVAC (Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning) system comprised of roof top air conditioners and the furnace. The thermostat controls HVAC functions: Cool, Off, Heat Mode and Zone.



The RV Comfort thermostat must be On to operate any HVAC function. The motorhome is divided into operating zones (See Chart). The selected Zone will be indicated on the left side of the LCD display. Press the mode button to select the desired HVAC function then press the up or down buttons next to the display to adjust temperature. Room (zone) temperature is indicated on the right side of the display. Room temperature will change over to temperature set point when adjusting temperature.

Due to ambient operating limitations in heat pump mode, the furnace may become the primary heat source. While in Heat Elec mode, if zone temperature and temperature set point is greater than 5°, the furnace will automatically become the primary heat source. Elec(tric) will continue to display with “Gas” flashing indicating the furnace is operating. The system will automatically switch back to heat pump operation (Heat Elec) when ambient temperature allows heat pump operation.

LCD Display



- A. Fan speed Low.
- B. Fan speed High.
- C. Indicates Fan mode.
- D. Fan speed Auto.
- E. Indicates Cool mode.
- F. Displays when temperature setting is adjusted.
- G. Displays room temperature or temperature setting.
- H. Indicates Off mode in selected zone.
- I. Heat mode
- J. Indicates Electric mode.
- K. Indicates Gas (furnace) mode.
- L. Indicates off mode in selected zone.
- M. Identifies zone number.

Zone 1:	Zone 3:
Living Room Roof AC	Bedroom Roof AC
Front Furnace	Rear Furnace

NOTE:

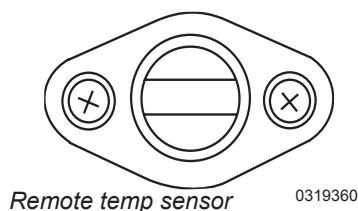
Do not select conflicting modes of operation. One zone cannot be on Cool while another zone is set to Heat.

NOTE:

The motorhome will not heat or cool faster by selecting a very high or very low temperature setting.

Remote Temperature Sensor

Remote temperature sensors are located throughout the motorhome to ensure accurate temperature control.



Air Conditioning - Roof

The roof air conditioners operate from 120 Volts AC supplied by shore power or the generator. The wall thermostat requires 12 Volt DC to operate.

NOTE:

Due to the electrical load shed feature, the air conditioning system may be partially disabled when hooked to limited shore power service. Refer to the Load Center in Section 8 for more information.

NOTE:

The air conditioning system freezes moisture in the air. It is recommended to set the blower fan speed to high when operating in high humidity.

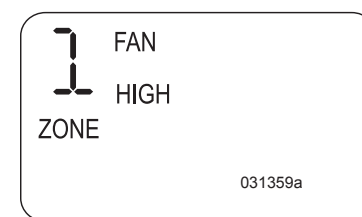
Operation Requirements:

- ◆ 120 Volts AC, from either shore power or the generator is supplied.
- ◆ The interior house power is **On** and the house batteries are charged.

Fan Operation Only

Fan mode circulates interior air by using the roof air conditioner blower. Temperature set point is not adjustable in fan mode. Fan speed can be set to Low or High.

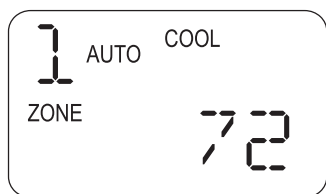
- ◆ Slide switch to Cool.
- ◆ Press the Zone button repeatedly to select desired zone.
- ◆ Press the Mode button repeatedly until only Fan High or Fan Low is displayed.
- ◆ Repeat process for each desired zone.



Example of fan screen

Air Conditioner Operation

Setting the thermostat to control air conditioner functions:



Example of A/C screen 031359a

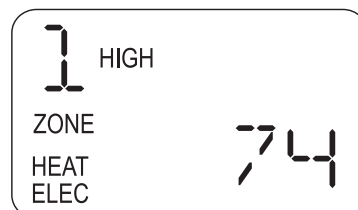
- ◆ Slide switch to Cool.
- ◆ Press the Zone button repeatedly to select desired zone.
- ◆ Press the Mode button repeatedly until Cool is displayed.
- ◆ Set desired fan speed by pressing the Mode button repeatedly. Fan speed Auto (default setting in Cool mode) will vary fan speed dependant on disparity of temperature set point and actual zone temperature. If desired, fan speed can be set to Cool Fan High or Cool Fan Low.
- ◆ Set desired temperature by pressing the Up or Down buttons.
- ◆ Repeat process for each desired zone.

NOTE:

The compressor will engage approximately two minutes after blower motor activation to prevent accidental compressor operation against high pressure.

Heat Pump Operation

In Heat Pump mode the air conditioning principle is reversed, supplying heated air to the ceiling registers instead of refrigerated air. There are ambient temperature limitations in Heat Pump mode.



Example of heat pump screen 031359a

- ◆ Slide switch to Heat.
- ◆ Press the Zone button repeatedly to select desired zone.
- ◆ Press the Mode button repeatedly until Heat and Elec is displayed.
- ◆ Set desired temperature by pressing the Up or Down buttons.
- ◆ Repeat process for each desired zone.

NOTE:

Fan speed is not adjustable in heat pump mode.

NOTE:

The roof air conditioner will not operate in heat pump mode in cold ambient temperature (approximately 46° F.). If zone temperature and temperature set point is greater than 5°, the furnace will be used as the primary heat source until temperature disparity is less than 5°.

NOTE:

The propane must be on for the backup heat source (furnace) to function.



Example of heat pump screen in backup furnace mode.

Air Conditioner Maintenance

Return Air Filters:

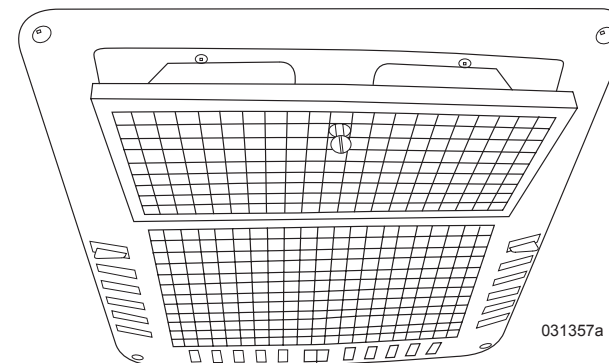
Frequently clean the return air filters. The filters are located behind the return air vent cover.

To Lower Vent Covers:

- ◆ Use a suitable driver or coin to unscrew vent intake cover fastener.
- ◆ Remove cover and filter.

To Clean the Return Air Filters:

- ◆ Wash filters in warm soapy water. **Do not** use solvents.
- ◆ Rinse filters thoroughly with fresh water. Allow them to dry.
- ◆ Install filters and secure intake vent covers.



Filter Removal

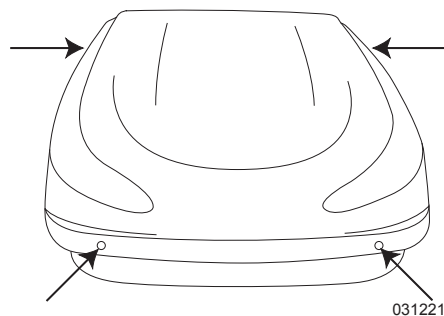
031357a

Mounting Bolts:

The AC mounting bolts should be re-torqued every six months. Four bolts are located behind the return air filter. Torque the mounting bolts to approximately 40 to 50 in. lbs. The base gasket should be compressed to approximately 1/2".

AC Cover Screws:

Use a screwdriver to ensure the AC cover screws are tight whenever the roof is accessed.



Ensure the A/C cover screws (location as illustrated by arrows) are tight when the roof is accessed.

FURNACE

The furnace and related components are 12 Volt DC operated and use propane as the fuel source. Electronic circuitry (automatic ignition) ignites the burner. The furnace uses outside air for burner combustion. Exhaust is expelled through the outside vent. Inside air is drawn into the furnace and blown across the internal heat exchanger. Heated air is then discharged through ducted hoses that run throughout the motorhome. The wall thermostat controls the furnace.

Operation

The furnace is controlled by an analog thermostat used with a standard roof A/C or an electronic thermostat used with roof A/C with heat pump. The air conditioner sends an electrical signal to the furnace to begin ignition cycle. There is a small time delay before the blower motor begins.

Once the blower motor attains a predetermined speed it will close the air prover (sail) switch. The sail switch, which is now closed, sends the electrical signal through a high-temperature limit switch, then to the automatic ignition circuit board. After the thermostat is satisfied the propane valve closes and extinguishes the burner. The blower motor stops after a two or three minute cool down period.

INFORMATION:

See the furnace OEM manual for complete operation information.

WARNING:

If a propane smell exists, extinguish all open flames and turn off the main propane supply. Propane is an extremely dangerous gas that can ignite and explode, resulting in property damage, injury or death. Propane is heavy and can float on the floor or hide in corners. Open all windows and doors. Do not touch electrical switches as they may spark. Keep open flame, spark producing devices and smoking material out of the area. Contact a qualified service center to have the problem correctly diagnosed and repaired before resuming operation.

CAUTION:

Do not store any items or materials in the furnace area. Restricted air flow may hamper furnace operation leading to failure and/or fire hazard.

NOTE:

When washing the recreational vehicle exterior, avoid a direct stream of water into the outside furnace vents. This can damage the furnace.

Operation Requirements:

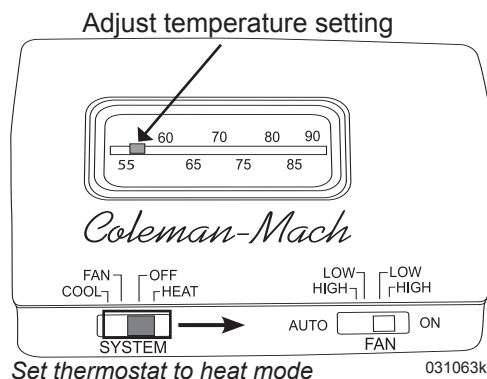
- ◆ Primary propane shut-off valve on the propane tank is open.
- ◆ House batteries are charged.
- ◆ House battery disconnect switch is on.
- ◆ Battery cut-off switch is on.

Thermostat

There is a short time delay before the blower motor begins. When interior temperature reaches the thermostat set point, the burner will extinguish. The blower motor will continue to run for two or three minutes to cool down the furnace.

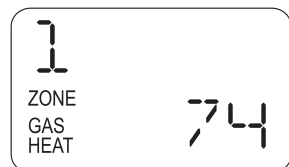
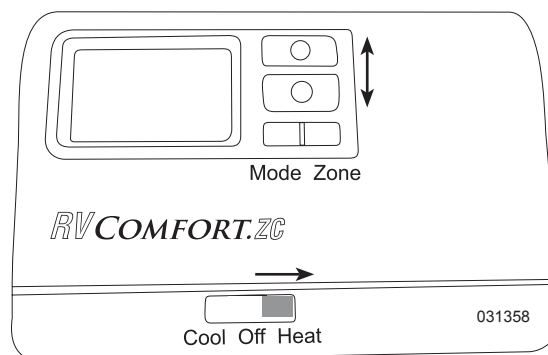
- Standard Roof A/C:

- ◆ Set System switch to Heat.
- ◆ Set temperature to desired setting.

**- Roof A/C with Heat Pump:**

- ◆ Set System switch to Heat.
- ◆ Press the Zone button repeatedly to select desired zone.
- ◆ Press the Mode button repeatedly until Gas is displayed.

- ◆ Set desired temperature by pressing the Up or Down buttons.
- ◆ Repeat process for each desired zone.



Example of furnace screen in Zone 1. 031359a

CAUTION:

Do not store any items or materials in the furnace area. Restricted air flow may hamper furnace operation leading to failure and/or fire hazard.

NOTE:

The automatic ignition circuit board will attempt to light the burner three times before the ignition board will go into "lock-out." If lock-out occurs, the blower will continue to operate until the thermostat is turned off. Once the blower motor stops, turn the thermostat back on to reset the ignition cycle.

Furnace Tips:

- ◆ Operation of the furnace may produce a musty smell during the first couple of cycles after the motorhome has been removed from storage.
- ◆ Operating the furnace at altitudes above 5,000 feet reduces the BTU output due to air/fuel ratio.
- ◆ Have the furnace periodically serviced by a qualified technician, especially if the system exhibits unusual symptoms such as a noise or a foreign odor.

If the Furnace Fails to Light

- ◆ Make sure the primary propane shut-off valve is open.
- ◆ The furnace will not light if the blower motor is not spinning to specified speed. This may be due to a low house battery charge condition.

To Charge the House Batteries:

- ◆ Hook-up to shore power, start the generator, or start the motorhome.

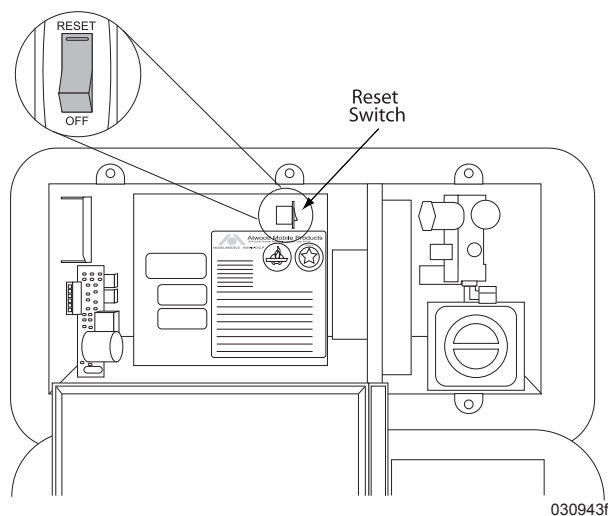
If the blower motor fails to operate after verifying the batteries are charged and the fuses are good, use a screwdriver or coin to open the furnace access panel outside of the motorhome.

To Reset Furnace:

- ◆ Turn the reset switch to Off and then back to Reset.

WARNING:

If a propane smell exists and the blower motor is spinning, Do not attempt additional furnace operation. This may result in an explosion, fire or personal injury. Contact a qualified technician.

**WATER HEATER**

The water heater uses two different methods to heat water:

- ◆ 120 Volt AC supplied by shore power or the on board generator.
- ◆ Propane supplied by the propane tank.

The 120 Volt AC function is considerably more energy efficient when hooked to shore power versus operating the generator. The burner for propane operation is controlled by an automatic ignition circuit board powered by 12 Volt DC. Two thermostats control water temperature, one for 120 Volt AC and the other for propane. Thermostat temperature is preset by the water heater manufacturer and not adjustable. For ease of winterization, the water heater is equipped with a drain plug and winterization bypass valves.

INFORMATION:

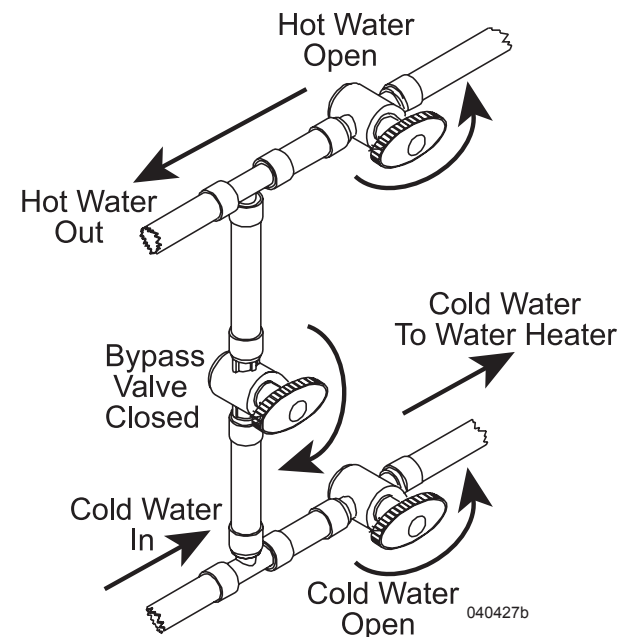
Refer to the water heater OEM manual for further information.

Before Using the Water Heater:

The fresh water system and water heater will need to be purged of air when the fresh water system has been winterized. This will require hooking to city water or filling the fresh water tank and using the water pump to purge the system of air.

To Purge Air:

- ◆ Turn the water heater bypass valves (located on the back of the water heater) to Normal Flow. If necessary, install the water heater drain plug.

NORMAL FLOW

- ◆ Hook to city water or turn on the water pump.
- ◆ One at a time, open the hot and cold valves of all faucets until a steady stream of clear water flows with no bubbles or pockets of air.
- ◆ Do not operate the water heater until the system is purged of air.
- ◆ Inspect the water heater and water system for leaks after the water system is purged of air.

CAUTION:

Once the system is purged, small pockets of air will still be present. Initially open hot water faucets slowly to minimize spattering of hot water.

Water Heater Operation

- ◆ Turn on the battery cut-off switch.
- ◆ Hook to shore power (preferred) or start the generator.
- ◆ The house batteries are charged.
- ◆ Open the primary propane shut-off valve on the propane tank.

WARNING:

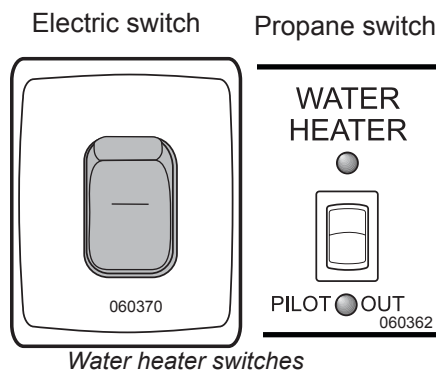
If a propane smell exists, extinguish all open flame and turn off the primary propane valve. Do not touch any electrical switches. They may cause a spark that can ignite. Open all windows and doors. Evacuate the interior. Propane is a “heavy” gas and will lie on the floor and “hide” in corners. Liquid propane is highly volatile, explosive and extremely dangerous. Explosion, fire, property damage, injury or death can result. Contact a qualified service center to repair propane leaks before resuming operation.

CAUTION:

Do not operate the water heater without water. Damage to the thermostats and electric heating element can occur.

Heating Water with 120 Volt AC:

- ◆ Hook to shore power (preferred) or start the generator.
- ◆ Turn on the water heater electric switch. The switch will illuminate when active.



NOTE:

The electric element is rated at 1500 Watts.

Heating Water with Propane:

- ◆ Open the primary propane shut-off valve on the propane tank.
- ◆ Turn on the water heater propane switch.
- ◆ The Pilot Out will illuminate then go out. If the water heater fails to ignite, the pilot out light will illuminate once again. This indicates the water heater did not ignite. Turn the propane switch off then back on to reset the ignition cycle. If the problem persists see Water Heater troubleshooting.

NOTE:

Both electric and propane functions can be on simultaneously for faster recovery rate during large volume use.

CAUTION:

It is recommended not to operate the water heater on propane while the motorhome is in transit. For safety, ensure the water heater propane function is off before refueling.

Direct Spark Ignition (DSI):

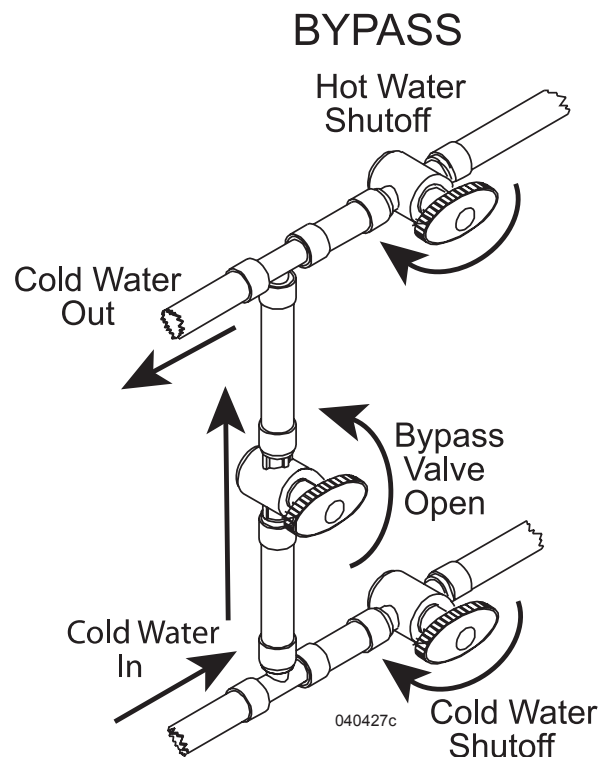
Direct Spark Ignition (DSI) uses automatic ignition to light the burner. There is no pilot flame. Once ignited, the burner will operate until the thermostat shuts the burner off. The ignition board will attempt three ignition cycles. Each cycle lasts 6-9 seconds and repeats at 30 second intervals. If the burner does not light after the third attempt, the propane function will lock-out and the Pilot Out fault light will illuminate. Reasons for lockout may be air in the propane system or an obstruction in burner tube generally caused by an insect or spider web. Cycling the propane switch off then back on will reset the ignition cycle. If the problem persists consult a qualified technician.

High Temperature Thermostat:

Separate thermostats are used for propane and AC electric. If a thermostat fails, a high-temperature safety limit switch will open. If the high-temperature safety limit should open, discontinue using the water heater. Have the water heater inspected by a qualified technician to determine the cause of the over-temperature condition.

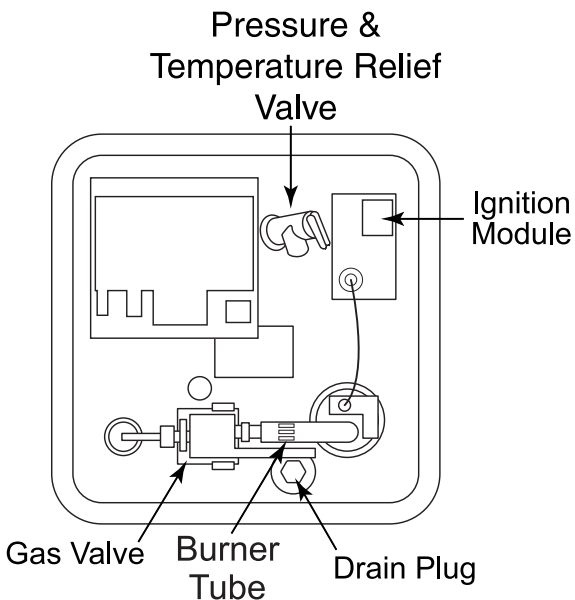
Water Heater Bypass Valves

The bypass valves are located at the back of the water heater. Turning the valves to the Bypass position prevents water, winterization fluids or disinfecting solutions from entering the water heater. Turn the bypass valves to Normal Flow when using the water heater.



Temperature & Pressure Relief Valve:

The water heater is equipped with a Temperature & Pressure (T&P) relief safety valve. The T&P valve is designed to open if water temperature exceeds 210° F. or internal pressure exceeds 150 psi. If water begins to weep from the valve, it may be due to a loss of the air pocket in the water heater tank. See re-establishing the air pocket.



Re-establishing the Air Pocket:

The water heater tank has an air pocket located at the top of the tank. The T&P valve may begin to weep after several heat cycles. This may not be a faulty valve but more likely caused by absorption of the air pocket due to expansion of hot water. Eventually, the cyclic expansion of hot water will absorb the air pocket. When weeping from the valve occurs, the air pocket will need to be re-established utilizing the following procedure. If the valve continues to weep after establishing the air pocket, contact a qualified service center to evaluate the valve.

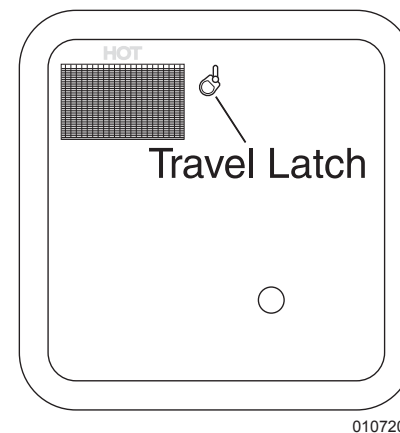
CAUTION:

Ensure the water heater is cool prior to establishing the air pocket.

- ◆ Turn off the water heater.
- ◆ Turn off the water supply.
- ◆ Open the hot water faucet closest to the water heater.
- ◆ Open the handle of the T&P valve.
- ◆ Allow excess water to drain from the water heater through the T&P valve. When draining is complete, close the T&P valve by allowing it to snap shut. Close the faucet and turn on the water supply.
- ◆ Turn on the water heater.

Water Heater Compartment:

Periodically inspect the water heater compartment and door screen for foreign material that can prevent the flow of combustion and ventilating air. The water heater drain plug and pressure relief valve are located inside.



CAUTION:

Do not block or restrict any opening. Do not store anything inside the compartment.

Tips:

- ◆ Conserve propane by turning off the water heater when not in use.
- ◆ Conserve energy and hot water by shutting off the shower water when not rinsing.
- ◆ Use caution when hooked to anything less than 30 Amp shore service. When the electric heating element is on, it will use approximately 12.5 Amps (1500 Watts) at 120 Volts AC. Appliances will need to be operated in sequence to avoid shedding loads (See **Load Center** Section 8).
- ◆ Operate the water heater on propane when hooked to 30 Amp shore power. This will reduce the likelihood of shedding a load.
- ◆ Water may drip occasionally from the T&P valve until pressure has dropped. If re-establishing the air pocket has not stopped the valve from dripping, minerals in the water may have accumulated on the valve seat. A replacement valve can be purchased from most hardware stores.

Draining & Storage:

- ◆ Turn off electrical power to the water heater.
- ◆ Turn off the primary propane shut-off valve.
- ◆ Drain the water heater by removing the drain plug. This will prevent freeze damage if the motorhome is to be stored during the winter months.
- ◆ Turn the bypass valves to the Bypass position.

NOTE:

Be sure to refill the water heater with water before resuming operation.

Troubleshooting:

- ◆ The ignition cycle goes into lockout or the burner sounds odd (whistle or popping) may indicate an obstruction in the burner tube. Insects (spiders) make nests in the burner tube. Check the burner tube for obstruction. It is recommended to clean the burner tube with a brush and not compressed air. Compressed air may not fully remove obstructions.
- ◆ If 120 Volt AC does not function, ensure shore power is on and the water heater AC breaker is on. The electric element may be shut off due to the load shed feature in the Load Center (See **Load Center** section 8).
- ◆ If the water heater fails to operate on either function, the high-temperature safety fuse may be blown. Have a qualified technician inspect the water heater.

**WASHER/DRYER STACKED (OPTIONAL)
Washer**

The front-loading washer is a large capacity washer that operates on 120 Volts AC from shore or generator power. Water usage will vary with each load, and fill time will vary depending upon water pressure.

INFORMATION:

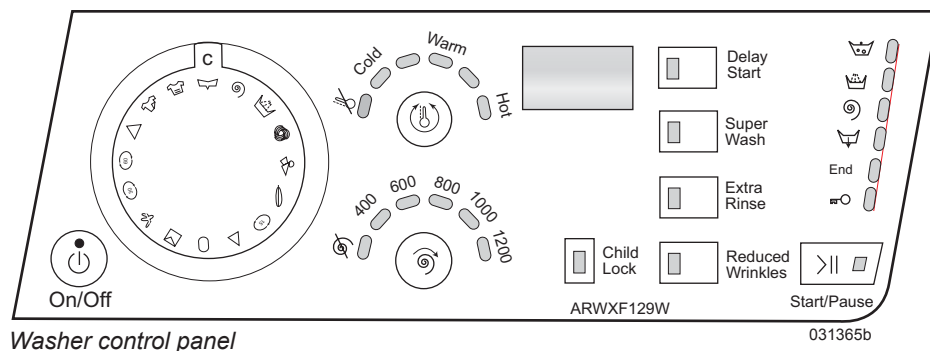
The washer has many features. Refer to the manufacturer's manual in the owner's information file for detailed operating instructions.

Test Cycle

Before using the washer for the first time, or after a long period of non-use, run a test cycle. The test cycle will confirm the unit is working correctly, remove RV antifreeze that may be present, and verify all hardware, plumbing and electronic components are functioning.

Test cycle requirements:

- ◆ Wipe the exterior and interior of the unit with a damp cloth to remove accumulated dust.
- ◆ Ensure water lines are secure and all necessary valves are open to supply water.
- ◆ Hook to city water or turn on the water pump (must have sufficient water in tank and storage space in holding tanks).
- ◆ Hook up to shore power, or turn on the generator.



Conducting test cycle:

1. Add ½ tablespoon of detergent to the detergent chamber (#1 in illustration) of the automatic dispenser.

CAUTION:

Ensure the automatic dispenser is in place before starting the washer. Do not open the automatic dispenser when the washer is running.

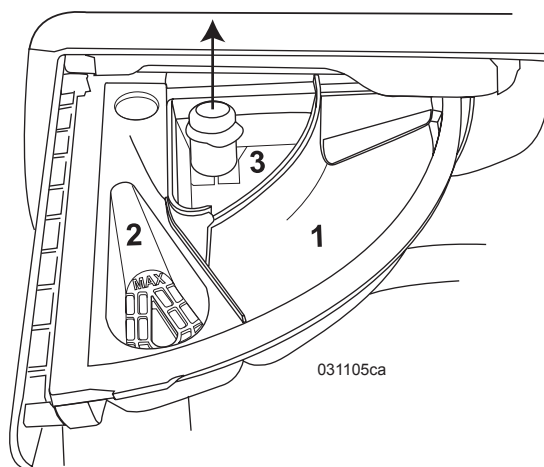
2. Close the detergent dispenser.
3. Press On/Off button to turn on the machine. Press and hold to turn off.
4. Turn the cycle knob to #10 (light soil).
5. Set the temperature knob to warm (rinse is always cold).
6. Set a spin speed between 400-1200.
7. Press Start/Pause to start cycle. Press again to stop.
8. The door lock light (key symbol) will turn off when the cycle is complete.

CAUTION:

Hook the motorhome to shore services when using the washing machine due to limited fresh water supply and grey holding tank capacity.

CAUTION:

Do not use the washer while traveling as damage can occur to the washer and possibly the motorhome.



Detergent trays are removable for cleaning

Operating Instructions

1. Load the machine and ensure door is closed and firmly latched. See OEM manual for load types and weight limits.
2. Set the cycle knob to the appropriate wash program. See OEM manual for recommendations.
3. Adjust temperature with temperature knob (rinse is always cold).
4. Adjust spin speed according to garment type.
5. To further customize the wash program, press one of the wash option buttons (Soaking, Extra Rinse, etc.). See OEM manual for more information.
6. Open dispenser drawer and add appropriate cleansers and softeners. Close dispenser door.
7. Press Pause/Start button to start cycle.
8. The door lock light (key symbol) will turn off when the cycle is complete.

Cleaning the Washer

Clean the exterior, interior and automatic dispenser as needed.

Exterior:

- ◆ Clean the exterior with a soft cotton cloth dipped in lukewarm soapy water. Do use a polish as this can damage the finish.

Interior:

- ◆ To remove build-up, run the washer through a complete cycle using hot water and two cups of non-precipitating water softener.
- ◆ Apply paste wax periodically to the inner door to prevent staining.

Automatic Dispenser:

- ◆ Remove the inner portion of the dispenser tray by pulling up and out.
- ◆ Rinse under warm water until buildup dissipates.

Winterizing the Washer

To Winterize:

- ◆ Ensure the washer is off, and pour 1 pint of FDA approved RV antifreeze into the washer drum.
- ◆ Close the door and turn the cycle knob to a spin cycle.
- ◆ Press the on/off button and wait one to two minutes.
- ◆ Press the on/off button to turn washer off.
- ◆ Disconnect power supply and turn water faucets off.
- ◆ Disconnect and drain inlet hoses.

To De-winterize:

- ◆ Connect inlet hoses and turn water faucets on.
- ◆ Connect power supply.
- ◆ Add ½ tablespoon of detergent to the dispenser detergent compartment (#1).
- ◆ Turn cycle knob to #4, and let the washer run through the complete cycle to ensure all antifreeze is purged.

CAUTION:

Replace inlet hoses every five years.

Dryer

The front-loading dryer operates on 120 Volts AC from shore power or the generator.

INFORMATION:

Read the instructions in the dryer OEM manual located in the owner's information file.

NOTE:

Due to the automatic load shed feature in the load center, power to the dryer may be disabled until sufficient AC power is available. See "Load Center" Section 8 for more information.

CAUTION:

Open a window or vent while operating dryer. Negative air pressure inside the motorhome can be dangerous while operating fuel burning appliances.

CAUTION:

Do not use the dryer while the motorhome is in motion as this can damage internal components.

CAUTION:

Do not dry articles that have previously been cleaned, washed, soaked or spotted with gasoline, dry cleaning solvents or other flammable or vaporous substances that can ignite or explode.

CAUTION:

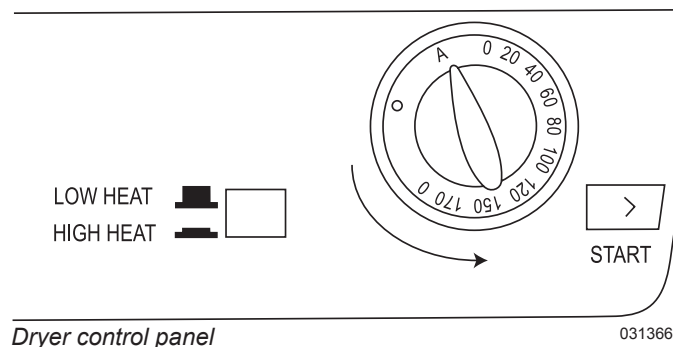
Do not use heat to dry articles containing foam rubber or similar textured, rubber-like materials. Clean the lint screen (located inside the dryer door) after each use. Keep the exhaust opening and adjacent areas free from accumulation of lint, dust and dirt.

Operation

1. Load laundry loosely into dryer and close the door. Allow space for the clothes to tumble freely.
2. Select appropriate cycle and heat (see OEM manual for detailed instructions).
3. Press the Start button to initiate the cycle.
4. Open the door to stop the dryer at any time.

NOTE:

Timer knob rotates only counterclockwise.



Dryer Maintenance

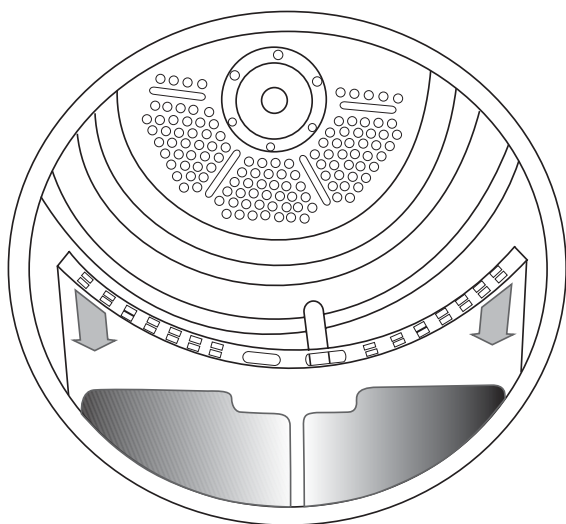
Clean the exterior and interior as necessary, and clean the lint filter after each load.

Lint Filter:

- ◆ Open the door and pull the lint filter upwards.
- ◆ Remove lint and replace the filter.

CAUTION:

Do not operate the dryer without the filter in place.



Lint filter removal

031366b

Exterior:

- ◆ Clean the exterior with a soft cotton cloth dipped in lukewarm soapy water. Do not use a polish as this can damage the finish.

Interior:

- ◆ Do not use abrasives, steel wool or stainless steel cleaning agents to clean the dryer drum. Discoloration from fabric softeners and water is normal and does not affect dryer operation.

Technical Service:

For detailed technical service contact Splendide at 1-800-356-0766.

Equipment

Section 5



EQUIPMENT - INTRODUCTION	94	FANS	102	DASH RADIO	106
ENTRY STEP	94	Automatic	102	Dash Radio Switch	106
Operation	94	SOLAR SCREEN & BLACKOUT SHADE	102	Steering Wheel Controls	106
Maintenance	94	Cockpit	102	Satellite Radio (Optional)	107
GRAB HANDLE	95	DOOR - SLIDING	103	GPS NAVIGATION (OPTIONAL)	107
ENTRY DOOR	95	SEAT CONTROLS	103	TV ENTERTAINMENT COMPONENTS	108
SLIDEOUT OPERATION	96	Swivel Seats	103	Television (Front) Lockout Feature	108
Extending & Retracting Slide Rooms	96	SOFA	104	TV ANTENNA	108
Lock Bar	97	Hide-A-Bed	104	Cable TV, Satellite & Phone Connection	109
Troubleshooting	97	Hide-A-Bed Air Mattress (Optional)	104	Front TV Operation	109
Manual Override – Living Room	98	BED - AIR MATTRESS (OPTIONAL)	105	DVD Player (Optional)	109
Manual Override - Bedroom	99	Setting the Mattress	105	BEDROOM TV OPERATION	110
AWNINGS	99	BOOTH DINETTE	106	SATELLITE SYSTEMS	110
Slide-out Cover	99	Booth Ensemble (Optional)	106	Satellite Prewire	110
Rain Water	99			KVH R6 (Optional)	112
Patio Awning - Freedom	100			Winegard Trav'ler (Optional)	112
Patio Awning - Apex	100			Satellite Wiring	113
Awning Care & Cleaning	101			SYSTEMS PANEL	114
Storm Precautions	101			SWITCH LEGEND	115
				CONTROL CENTER	116

EQUIPMENT - INTRODUCTION

This section covers the basic operation and care of equipment. More detailed information about specific equipment may be found in that particular OEM manual. Optional equipment will also be discussed in this section that may not apply to all motorhomes.

INFORMATION:

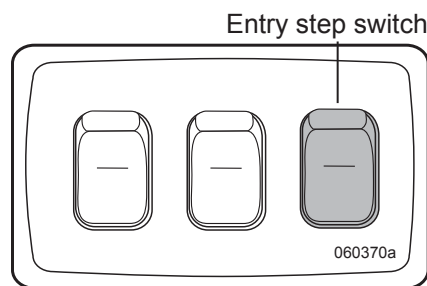
Detailed information with CAUTION or WARNING instructions for the various electronics, other than what is provided in this section, can be found in their specific OEM manual.

ENTRY STEP Operation

The exterior electric entry step will extend and retract with door opening and closing, automatic retraction with the ignition key in the run position and a “last out” feature. The entry switch illuminates when turned on.

NOTE:

When dry camping, it is important to note that when the switch is illuminated all step circuits are active and drawing current from the chassis battery.



Located next to entry door.

NOTE:

The chassis battery disconnect switch must be on for the entry step to operate.

Entry Step Operation:

With entry step switch on, the step will extend and retract when the entry door opens and closes.

Cancel Step Operation When Parked:

Open door to extend step. Turn the entry step switch off. The entry step will remain extended.

Last Out Feature:

Turn the ignition off and open the door. The step will extend. This is the “last out” feature.

Ignition Override:

When the ignition is on, the step will extend and retract with door movement with the entry step switch off. This ensures the step will not be extended during travel and will extend when the door is opened.

WARNING:

The entry step will retract when the ignition switch is turned on. Always confirm the entry step is fully extended and locked in position prior to exiting the motorhome.

WARNING!

This vehicle is equipped with an automatic electric step. Turning the ignition switch to the "ON" position while the vehicle is parked will cause the step to retract. Visually confirm that the step is fully extended prior to exiting the vehicle.

BE SAFE - LOOK BEFORE YOU LEAP!

020325

CAUTION:

High curbs can impede step operation. Use care when parked on side streets.

If the entry step fails to operate:

- ◆ Verify that the entry step switch is on.
- ◆ Check the main power supply for the step: a 25 Amp fuse located in the roadside front electrical panel.
- ◆ A magnetic door jam switch is used to control step operation. Use a separate magnet to apply a “trigger” to the door jam switch. Rotate test magnet to align polarity field.

WARNING:

If the motorhome is driven with the step in the extended position, damage could occur to both the step and the motorhome.

CAUTION:

Keep fingers, clothing and other hardware away from moving components.

Maintenance

The steps are equipped with self-lubricating bushings in the drive assembly and step joints and require no maintenance. If in extreme weather conditions and lubrication is deemed necessary a silicon based grease or spray can be used on the bushings.

INSPECTION:

Clean and inspect step more frequently in adverse weather conditions. Mud, snow, road salts and sand could quickly break down lubricant and corrode painted surfaces.

GRAB HANDLE

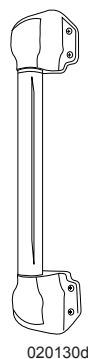
The grab handle is used to aid in entering and exiting the motorhome.

Cleaning the Handle:

- ◆ Clean the acrylic grab handle using mild Soap and Water only!

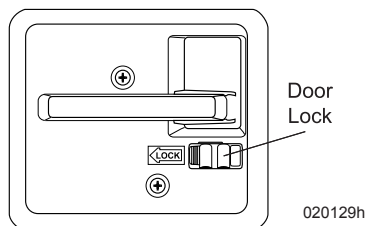
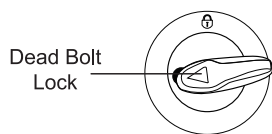
What Not To Use:

- ◆ **Do not** use alcohol or ammonia based glass cleaners as these solutions adversely affect acrylic material causing stress cracks leading to eventual failure of the grab handle.
- ◆ Use of alcohol based cleaners combined with heat and light will expedite deterioration of the acrylic material.



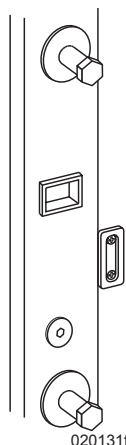
ENTRY DOOR

The entry door is adjusted at the factory and tested for all operations. The door uses two separate locks for safety and security. One locking system is the door lock and the other is a dead bolt. The door handle incorporates a primary and secondary latching system used to ensure secure and safe latching. Adjustments can be made to help maintain entry door performance.



Adjusting the Entry Door Latch:

- ◆ Determine which bolt needs adjustment.
- ◆ Slowly close the entry door, observing the latch and strike bolt alignment. **Do not** attempt to latch if the alignment is off. If the alignment is correct, allow the latch to catch in the first (primary) position only.
- ◆ The latch should move to the second position with only slight pressure applied to the entry door. Upper and lower latches should be evenly timed. Press on the entry door to check for further movement.
- ◆ The entry handle should operate with little effort to open the entry door. Excess pressure indicates the bolts are set too far back.
- ◆ With a box wrench or socket, loosen the movable strike bolt. Adjust in small increments. Tighten the bolt firmly after making adjustments. Bolts should have slight up and down movement for vibration control in travel.
- ◆ Test the operation of the dead bolt lock to ensure proper functions.
- ◆ Apply silicone weekly to the entry door rubber gaskets to prevent squeaking while the motorhome is in use. Use a 1" sponge paint brush sprayed with silicone for easy application.

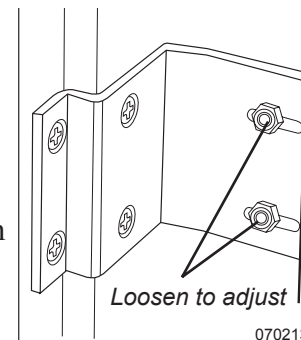


Changing Screen Door Glass:

- ◆ The screen slider is Tuffak®. The slider can be bowed for removal and replacement.
- ◆ Replace with new Tuffak and reverse the procedure.

Adjusting the Screen Door:

- ◆ Loosen the fasteners on the hinge side of the screen door: two on the top and two on the bottom.
- ◆ The steel hinge has slots to allow movement.
- ◆ Four type screws are on the top hinge and four on the bottom hinge to adjust the screen door for proper fit to the entry door. The hinge should fit tightly to the trim of the door when the screen door is latched to the door and the door is open.



070213

CAUTION

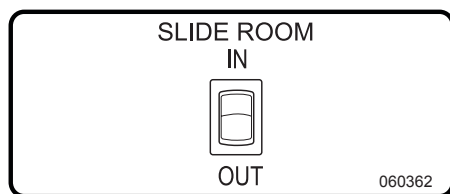
When operating the entry door, ensure the dead bolt latch is fully unlocked prior to closing. Failure to do so can result in damage to the dead bolt and/or entry door.

SLIDEOUT OPERATION

Slideout room operation uses safety features to prevent mechanical damage or physical harm. Slideout room(s) will not operate until all safety requirements are met. To prevent damage to cabinet doors or the slideout room, secure all cabinet doors in the closed position prior to room activation. Some interior doors may require being fully open or fully closed for the slideout room to operate.

Slideout Operation Requirements:

- ◆ Ignition key is Off.
- ◆ Park brake is applied.
- ◆ House battery disconnect switch is on.
- ◆ House batteries are charged.
- ◆ Lock bar (if equipped) is removed.
- ◆ The motorhome is supported by the air suspension (air springs).



Located on monitor panel

Extending & Retracting Slide Rooms

CAUTION:

The motorhome must be supported by the air suspension (air springs) whether extending or retracting any slideout room. Do not operate the slideout room with the air suspension deflated. Damage to the slide out room, mechanism or seals can occur.

To Extend or Retract Slideout Room:

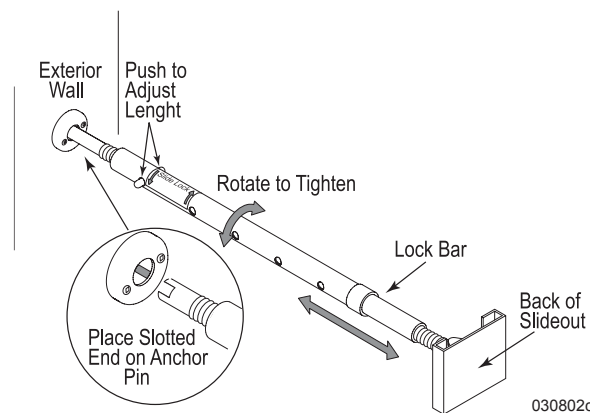
- ◆ Start the engine. Allow time for the air suspension (air bags) to support the chassis. The motorhome must be supported by the air suspension **before** operating any slideout room.
- ◆ Move the driver seat forward to avoid potential contact. Clean the floor of dirt or grit that could result in damage during operation.

MOVE CAB SEAT
FORWARD BEFORE
ACTIVATING
SLIDE-OUT ROOM

020329

- ◆ Confirm there is enough clearance inside/outside the motorhome for the room to extend/retract.
- ◆ Allow at least five feet of clearance to extend the slideout.
- ◆ Turn off the engine. Ensure park brake is applied.

- ◆ If applicable, remove any locking bars.



Lock bar

- ◆ Confirm the house batteries are fully charged and operating.
- ◆ Open a window or vent to equalize pressure during slideout operation.
- ◆ Ensure people, pets and objects are clear of the slide room path.
- ◆ Firmly latch all cabinet doors and close drawers. Damage to the doors, drawers and fascia can occur.
- ◆ Locate the slideout room control switch. Press and hold the slide room switch to the desired (In or Out) direction.
- ◆ Release the switch to stop room movement. The drive motor will not automatically stop. The switch must be released. A change in motor sound indicates full extension/retraction.

CAUTION:

Firmly latch all cabinet doors adjacent to the slide before extending or retracting the rooms. Damage to doors or the fascia may occur.

CAUTION:

Do not leave the slide room extended during severe weather. Conditions such as high winds or heavy rain may cause damage. Rain water can pool on the slide room awning, adding weight and causing the awning to sag. Retract the room in small increments to allow water run off.

CAUTION:

Extensive damage could occur to the slideout room and awning when extending the slideout room in snow, sleet, ice or freezing rain conditions. In such conditions, if the slideout room is extended, clear the awning and ensure free movement prior to operating the slideout room.

CAUTION:

Dirt and grit trapped under the slideout room can scratch and damage the floor. Clean the floor before retracting the slideout room. Never move the motorhome with the slide room extended.

CAUTION:

Do not use petroleum based products on the slideout seal. Petroleum based products can damage the paint and will cause premature aging of the rubber seal.

WARNING:

The outside area must be clear of obstruction that can restrict slideout room operation. Ensure there are five or more feet of clear space outside the slideout room prior to extending the room or damage to the slideout, motorhome or property can occur.

CAUTION:

Continuous operation of the slideout room can drain the batteries and overheat the motor.

CAUTION:

If a problem with the slideout occurs, contact a qualified technician.

Lock Bar

The lock bar is a manual locking device to help retain the slideout room in the in position.

CAUTION:

Remove locking bar prior to extending slideout.

Troubleshooting

If the slide room does not operate, a safety feature may be engaged to prevent room operation.

If slideout room does not respond from switch, check the following operating requirements:

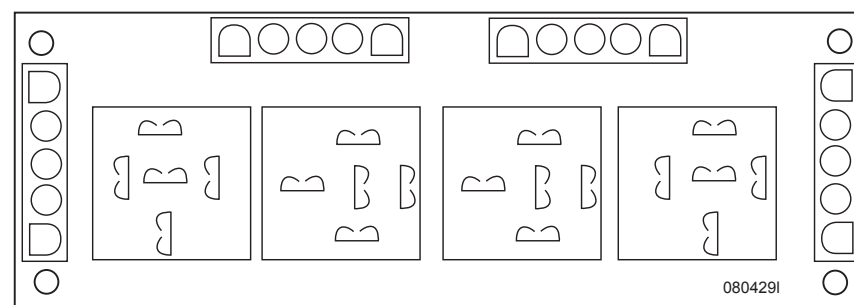
- ◆ Ignition key is Off.
- ◆ Park brake is applied.
- ◆ House battery disconnect switch is on.
- ◆ House batteries are charged.
- ◆ Lock bar is removed.

If the slideout room does not operate after checking the operating requirements:

- ◆ Check the slideout fuse in the 12 Volt DC interior fuse panel.
- ◆ Check the slideout fuses located on the front distribution panel in the roadside electrical compartment.
- ◆ Check the electrical connections at the slideout switch.
- ◆ Check the relays and connections on the slideout relay board.
- ◆ It may be necessary to contact a repair facility to have the problem diagnosed and repaired.

WARNING:

Do not work on slideout system unless both house and chassis batteries are disconnected.

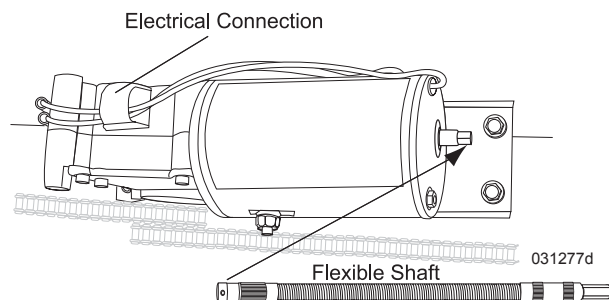


Slideout relay board located behind pantry.
Remove drawers and guides to access.

Manual Override – Living Room

While it is recommended to diagnose and repair the problem so the slideout room operates as intended, conditions may require the slideout room be retracted manually.

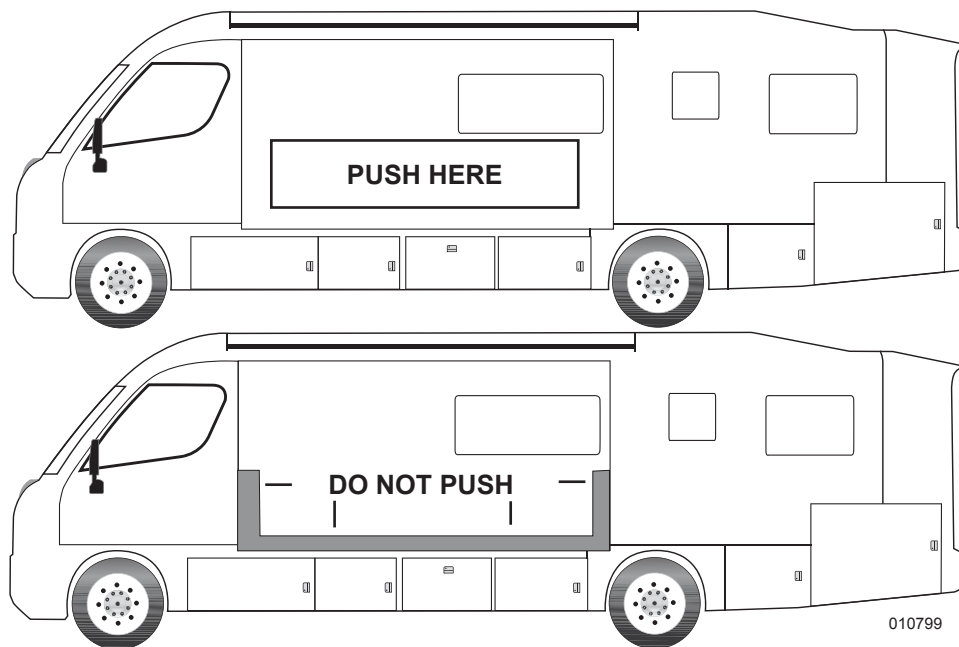
- ◆ Turn off both the battery and house disconnect switches.
- ◆ The slideout motor is located near the ceiling of the slideout. It may necessary to remove the fascia for full access.
- ◆ Disconnect the slideout motor electrical plug to remove 12 Volt DC power from the slideout motor. The plug can be located by following wires that run from the motor to the plug.
- ◆ Attach the flexible shaft to the fitting on the end of the slideout motor.
- ◆ Attach a socket and ratchet or drill to the other end of the flexible shaft.
- ◆ Turn in proper direction to move the room. If the cables tighten and the motor is difficult to turn, reverse the direction. Over-torquing can cause severe damage.
- ◆ Take the motorhome to an authorized repair center.



Broken Cable:

If a cable on the slideout breaks, it is recommended to call an authorized repair center for assistance. If obtaining assistance is not possible, the slideout must be manually pushed in. When pushing, use extreme caution and safety. Take extra precaution to prevent pinched fingers. Avoid getting fingers near edge of slideout wall or around wall edge.

Push only at points indicated (see illustration.) Keep fingers away from frayed or broken cables. A frayed or broken cable is sharp and will cut. Cables can also jam then whip free causing serious injury.



Do not push in shaded area

Manual Procedure:

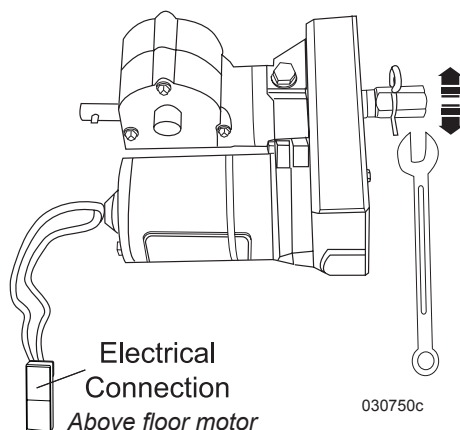
- ◆ Turn off both the battery and house disconnect switches.
- ◆ The slideout room is heavy. Use safety and care when pushing to prevent personal injury. It will require several people working in unison to push the room into position.
- ◆ Once the slideout is in position, take the motorhome to an authorized repair center.

Manual Override - Bedroom

The bedroom slideout motor operates on 12 Volt DC. The motor is located under the bed. If after checking all pre-conditions, fuses and ensuring the batteries are fully charged and the bedroom slideout system is still not functioning, it may be necessary to manually retract the bedroom slideout.

To Manually Move the Bedroom Slideout Room:

- ◆ Turn off both the chassis and house battery disconnect switches.
- ◆ The above floor slideout motor is located under the bed. Lift the bed and remove the access panel.



- ◆ Disconnect the slideout motor electrical plug to remove 12 Volt DC power from the slideout motor. The plug can be located by following wires that run from the motor to the plug.
- ◆ Use a wrench to turn drive shaft and retract room. Once the slide room is manually retracted, apply pressure to the wrench to firmly set the room and prevent room drift.
- ◆ Once the slide room is manually retracted, reconnect power supply.
- ◆ Take the motorhome to an authorized repair center.

CAUTION:

Do not continue to turn the motor after the room is fully extended or retracted. Further damage to the slide mechanism can occur.

AWNINGS Slide-out Cover

The slideout cover automatically reacts to slideout direction. A fixed edge of the slideout cover is installed into an awning rail, mounted just above the slideout. A spring-loaded roller with special brackets mounts to the slideout. In a hard rain the cover helps prevent water from penetrating the seal of the slideout. The slideout cover automatically reaches full extension when the slideout room is fully extended. The slideout cover automatically rolls up into the travel position when the slideout room is fully retracted.

INSPECTION:

When retracting the slideout, stop the room approximately halfway. Confirm that the fabric is properly rolling before fully retracting the slideout.

CAUTION:

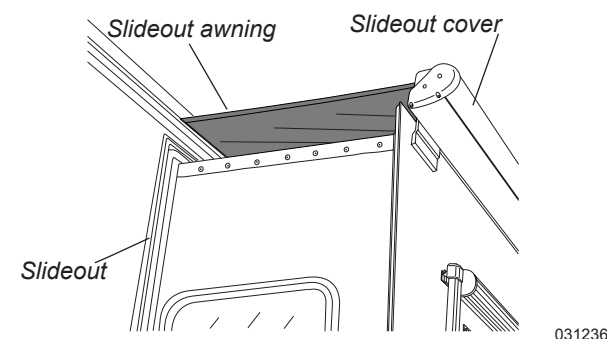
The slideout room and slideout awning should be retracted before heavy wind, rain or snow to prevent damage to the awning or motorhome. Wind can drive rain under the slideout awning and into the motorhome.

CAUTION:

At least five feet of clearance are needed between the side of the motorhome and any objects, such as trees or fences, to allow the slide room and slideout awning to fully extend.

Rain Water

Caution rain water can pool on the slideout awning. The added weight will cause the awning to sag. Upon retracting the room, material can become caught in between the top of slide room and the opening in the motorhome. It will be necessary to retract the room in small increments and allow the water time to run off.

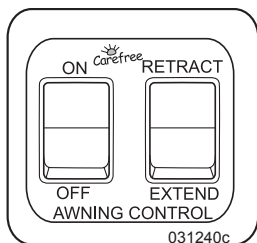


Patio Awning - Freedom

The Freedom patio awning operates on 12 Volt DC. The awning requires 10 feet of lateral side clearance.

To Operate:

- ◆ Turn the ignition switch off.
- ◆ Check for sufficient clearance before extending the awning.
- ◆ House battery disconnect switch must be on.
- ◆ Battery cut-off switch must be on.
- ◆ Turn on the Awning Power button.
- ◆ Push and hold the Extend/Retract button to extend the awning. Release the button at any time to stop awning movement.
- ◆ Push and hold the Extend/Retract button to retract awning.



If the awning fails to operate:

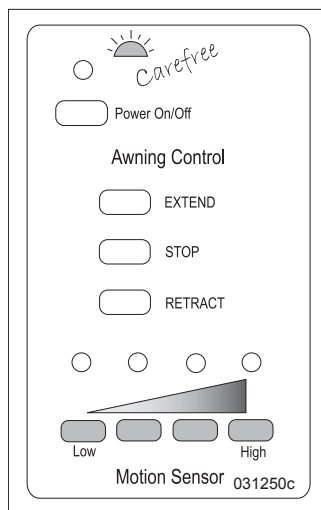
- ◆ Ensure ignition is off.
- ◆ Check the 15 Amp fuse located in the House Distribution panel.

Patio Awning - Apex

The Apex patio awning is a roof-mounted awning that requires 120 Volts AC to operate. The Apex awning includes an adjustable Auto-Retract feature that will automatically retract the awning in windy conditions.

To Operate Awning:

- ◆ Connect to shore power, start the generator or turn on the inverter.
- ◆ Ensure there is sufficient clearance before extending the awning.
- ◆ Press the “Power On/Off” button on the awning control.
- ◆ Press and release the “Extend” or “Retract” button. The awning will completely extend or retract.



Awning controller located above entry door

- ◆ Press and release the “Stop” button to stop extension or retraction at any time.
- ◆ Turn awning power off when not in use.

NOTE:

When any button is activated, the LED illuminates and stays on until another function is performed.

NOTE:

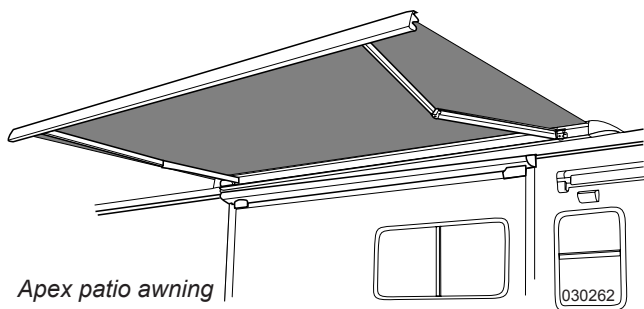
A remote control is included with the Apex awning system.



Awning remote

Auto-Retract System:

The Auto-Retract system detects awning motion caused by windy conditions. The system can be set at five levels of wind sensitivity. The system operates by monitoring the motion of the awning's front edge. When awning motion exceeds a preset sensitivity level for more than two seconds, the awning will automatically retract.



Apex patio awning

To Set Auto-Retract Sensitivity:

- ◆ Press the “Power On/Off” button on the awning control.
- ◆ Adjust sensitivity between Low and High.

NOTE:

The Awning Power button must be on and AC power must be available for Auto-Retract to operate.

INFORMATION:

See awning OEM manual for detailed operation instructions.

Awning Care & Cleaning

On a monthly basis, loosen hardened dirt and remove dust from the awning with a dry, medium bristle brush. Thoroughly rinse both the top and bottom with a garden hose. A high-quality fabric cleaner may be used to help maintain appearance. Carefully follow the instructions on cleaning products. Metal surfaces should be cleaned with soapy water and thoroughly rinsed. Allow the awning to thoroughly air dry while extended. Awning maintenance products can be found at RV supply stores.

Carefree Awnings:

Acrylic Awnings - Wash both sides of the awning with a mild soap (i.e. dish soap) and lukewarm water. **Do not** use detergents. If necessary, reapply the solution to keep fabric saturated. Rinse the awning thoroughly. Repeat, if necessary, until most of the stains disappear. Contact *Carefree of Colorado* for removal of stubborn stains.

Polyweave and Vinyl Awnings - Mildew will not form on the awning material itself, but may form on the dust accumulated on the canopy. A quality vinyl cleaner, such as *Carefree Awning Magic*, will help keep the awning looking new. A mild soap (i.e. dish soap) and lukewarm water solution can be used. **Do not** use detergents. Be sure to follow the instructions on the container.

Leaks:

It is normal for slight leakage to occur through the fabric where water is allowed to accumulate. If water drips through the needle holes in the stitching, use a commercial seam sealer that is available in canvas and trailer supply stores. Paraffin wax may also be applied to the top of the seams. As the awning “weathers” these holes will normally seal themselves.

Soap or chemical residue can “wet” the fabric so that it appears unable to repel water. Rinse the fabric thoroughly and test to see if it is water repellent after it dries. If leakage continues after washing and thoroughly rinsing, please contact *Carefree of Colorado*.

Storm Precautions

The warranty does not cover damage caused by acts of nature; therefore, steps should be taken to prevent damage from occurring due to wind, rain or storms. Retract the awning in inclement weather conditions or when leaving the motorhome unattended. Should the awning need to be retracted while the fabric is wet, extend as soon as possible to allow complete drying.

INFORMATION:

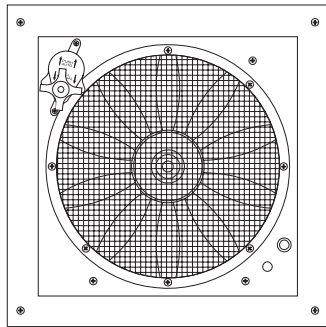
Water weighs 8.33 pounds per gallon. The awning was not designed to withstand the 500 to 700 lbs. of water that can accumulate on the canvas.

FANS Automatic

A wall rheostat controls the automatic vent and power of the fan. The system operates from 12 Volt DC power.

Fan Operation:

- ◆ House batteries must be on.
- ◆ Turn on the battery cut-off switch.
- ◆ Push the vent cover knob to the Automatic position.

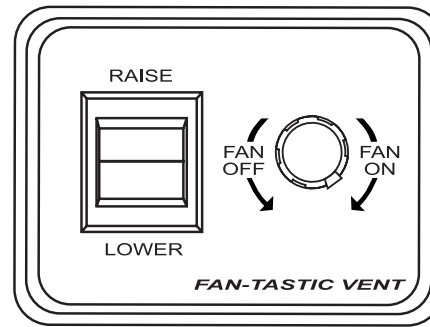


030832k

NOTE:

Push the knob in for automatic. Pull the knob out for manual.

- ◆ Use the wall switch to raise the vent cover. The vent cover must be open approximately 2" before the fan will run.
- ◆ Turn power knob clockwise to turn fan on. The power knob also adjusts fan speed.



031205d

NOTE:

To override the automatic setting, pull the vent cover knob out to the manual position and close vent. The fan blade will stop spinning when the vent is closed.

CAUTION:

Do not hold switch after the motor has stopped. This may cause damage to the automatic lift system, resulting in a stuck vent.

NOTE:

The safety switch built into the fan will not allow the fan blade motor to operate unless the vent is open approximately 2" or more.

Tips:

- ◆ Operate the fans to keep condensation from accumulating. Condensation occurs naturally from fluctuations in interior and exterior temperatures, humidity and dew point changes, steam from cooking or boiling large amounts of water on the cooktop. Shower use is another source of condensation.

- ◆ If the fan fails to operate, check for a blown fuse either in the house distribution fuse panel or the fuse on the fan.
- ◆ To remove the screen, loosen the screws holding the screen in place. Use non-abrasive soap and water to clean and reinstall.
- ◆ Slightly open windows on the shaded side of the motorhome to create the most airflow, especially on hot, sunny days. Direct airflow by slightly opening selected windows. Maximum airflow is achieved between an open window and the vent.

NOTE:

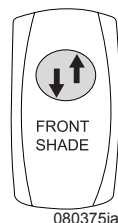
Do not leave the fan switch in the active mode while the motorhome is stored or unattended for extended periods. High winds, unusual conditions or obstructions may prevent the fan cover from fully closing, resulting in leakage and serious damage.

SOLAR SCREEN & BLACKOUT SHADE Cockpit

The front windshield is equipped with a manually operated solar screen and powered blackout shade. The solar screens and blackout shades over the passenger, driver and entry door window are manual. The windshield blackout shade is operated by switch on the dash.

Windshield Solar Screen and Blackout Shade Operation:

The "Front Shade" switch on the driver's console operates the blackout shade. Press and hold switch in the up or down position. Release switch to stop shade movement.



WARNING:

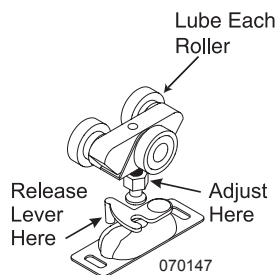
Do not attempt to move or drive the motorhome with any window view obstructed.

DOOR - SLIDING

The sliding pocket door utilizes two rollers at the top of each door. The sliding door may require adjustment during the life of the motorhome. Locate a small wrench and turn the adjusting screw upward or downward. To remove the pocket door, locate the portion secured at the top and rotate the small lever outward to release the latches.

LUBE:

The pocket door rollers should be lubed with just a small drop of oil once a year to help increase the life of the rollers and improve sliding.



SEAT CONTROLS

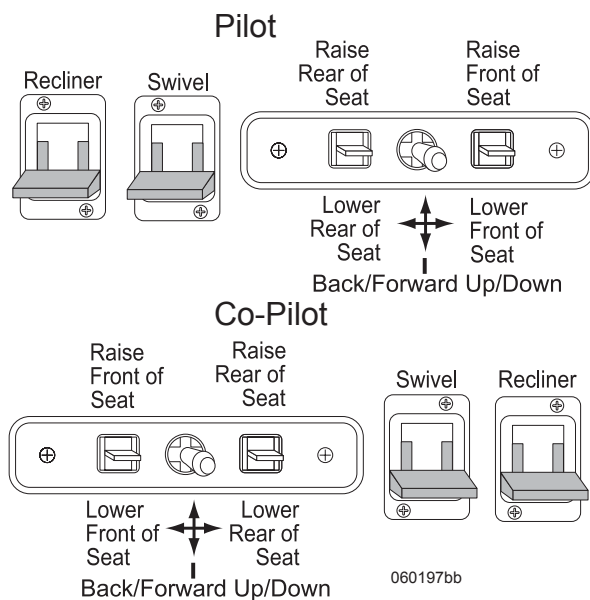
The Pilot and Co-Pilot seats are adjustable to provide maximum comfort. Seats must be locked in the forward facing direction while traveling.

NOTE:

The power seats operate from 12 Volt DC house power. The fuse is located in the roadside front distribution box.

To Operate Seat Power Controls:

- ◆ Battery disconnect switch must be on.
- ◆ Battery cut-off switch must be on.



Swivel Seats

Swivel Seat Operation:

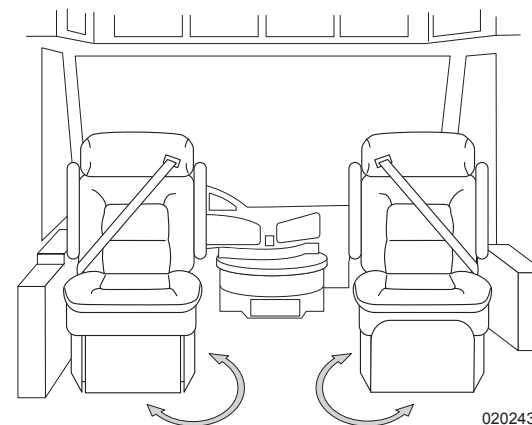
- ◆ To swivel, pull out on the swivel control lever.
- ◆ When rotating the driver seat, put the steering wheel in the upright position.
- ◆ Move the seat forward. Pull the swivel lever up and rotate to the desired position.

NOTE:

If either power seat is rotated 180°, it must be rotated back in the opposite direction. The 12 Volt wiring in the seat may disconnect if seat is rotated 360°.

WARNING:

Seats must be locked in the forward facing position while the motorhome is in transit.



SOFA Hide-A-Bed

The sofa hide-a-bed will convert into a bed. .

Sofa to Sleeper:

- ◆ Remove the seat cushions to access the hide-a-bed. The seat cushions should be stored safely until the bed is converted back to a sofa.
- ◆ Grasp the front metal bar and lift up pulling out on the bar slightly. The bed will form a V. Continue opening until the leg of the bed is firmly resting on the floor.
- ◆ When the legs of the bed are firmly on the floor there will be another lifting bar exposed to complete the conversion process.
- ◆ Grasping and opening the lifting bar will open the bed fully.

Sleeper to Sofa:

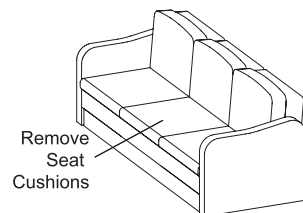
- ◆ Remove all bedding from the hide-a-bed.
- ◆ Grasp the foot of the hide-a-bed in the center using the metal lifting bar.
- ◆ Fold over the bottom portion of the bed that will form the seat.
- ◆ Lift the front portion of the lifting bar to raise and lower the hide-a-bed back into the sofa base.
- ◆ Replace the seat cushions.

Hide-A-Bed Air Mattress (Optional)

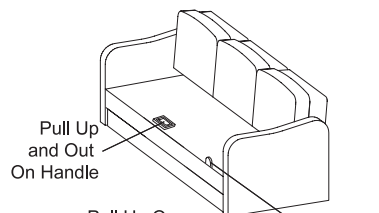
Use the hand-held electric pump to inflate the mattress. Plug the pump into a 120 Volt AC outlet. For ease of operation, position the sofa so that accessing an electrical outlet is convenient.

To Inflate Mattress:

- ◆ Open sofa and allow the mattress to lie flat.

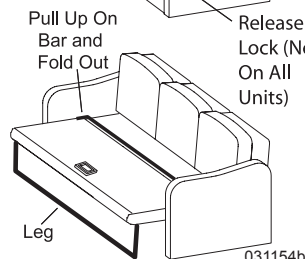


- ◆ Unzip the corner of the mattress labeled Air Pump Access.



- ◆ Remove valve cap by turning cap counter-clockwise.

- ◆ After cap is removed, insert pump motor and turn clockwise until pump is engaged.



Actual style may vary

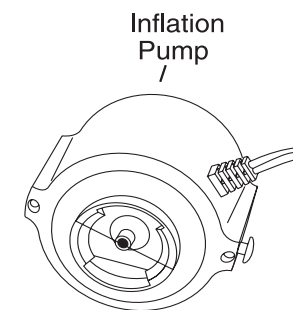
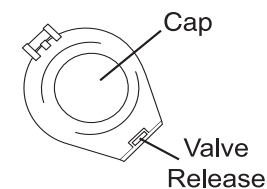
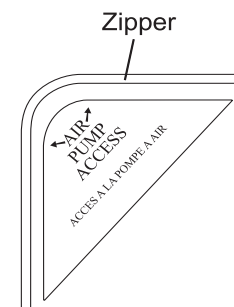
- ◆ Plug in pump motor and inflate to full, approximately 60 seconds. A motor pitch change occurs when mattress is full.
- ◆ Remove pump and reseal valve cap by turning clockwise.
- ◆ Zip the "Air Pump Access" cover closed.

WARNING:

Do not use the sofa for transporting infants or children that require safety seats or booster seats.

To Deflate Mattress:

- ◆ Remove bed linen.
- ◆ Unzip the corner cover of the mattress labeled "Air Pump Access."
- ◆ Open deflation valve by lifting valve latch. Allow mattress to deflate.
- ◆ Once the mattress is deflated, swing valve to closed position. Do not lock valve closed by locking the valve. Trapped air could damage the mattress.
- ◆ Zip the "Air Pump Access" cover closed and close the sofa.



020260e

NOTE:

Do not close deflation valve when closing the sleeper mechanism.

WARNING:

The electric inflation pump is for indoor use only. Do not use near or place in water. Keep infants and small children away from pump and product when not fully inflated. Partially inflated product can cause suffocation.

BED - AIR MATTRESS (OPTIONAL)

The air mattress uses air chambers to provide an adjustable support cushion for comfort and firmness. The mattress uses two remote controls to obtain the desired comfort level for each side of the mattress.

To Operate the Air Mattress:

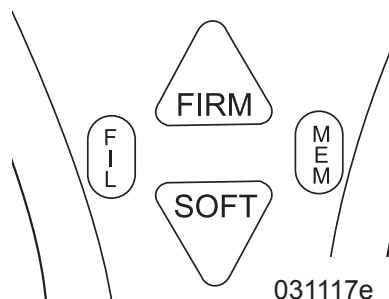
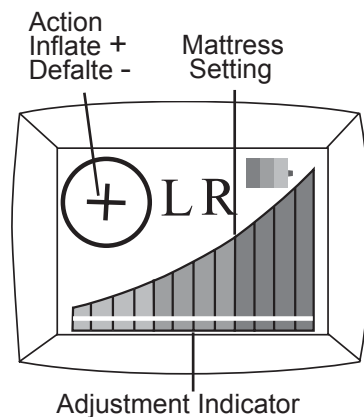
The air mattress requires 120 Volt AC power. Hook to shore power or start the generator. Ensure the battery-cutout switch is on.

Remote Control Features:

The remote control uses a graph to indicate soft to firm settings. Each press of Firm or Soft increases or decreases the mattress level one setting. Positive (+) indicates the pump is filling the mattress. Negative (-) indicates the mattress is deflating. The “Fil” button will turn on the pump and inflate the mattress to maximum then shut off. Fill or adjust only one side of the mattress at a time. The “MEM” button is used to personalize that side of the mattress to a particular setting.

Setting the Mattress

- ◆ Lie on the bed in a normal sleep position.
- ◆ Press and release any button to awaken the remote. The graph will indicate the current setting.
- ◆ Press and release Fil to inflate the mattress to maximum or press the Firm or Soft button once to change mattress setting one position. Repeat pressing of Firm or Soft will change the setting by multiple values indicated by the bottom graph.



- ◆ It is recommended to initially adjust the mattress to the bottom of the Blue zone (middle zone) for a soft setting or top of the Blue zone (middle zone) for a firm setting depending on preference. Remain still until the system completes the adjustment.
- ◆ When adjustment is complete, the remote will stay lit for five seconds and then the display will turn off.
- ◆ The ideal mattress setting may take 1-3 nights to determine. Limit adjustment increments to single settings (soft or firm) until the ideal setting is obtained.
- ◆ Once the ideal setting is obtained, press the Mem button to program the setting to memory.

CAUTION:

To prevent damage to the remotes, ensure the remotes are placed in wall-mounted holders before extending or retracting the slideout. Broken or damaged remotes are not warrantable.

Mountain Traveling:

If traveling into a mountainous region, partially or fully deflate the mattress to prevent over-pressurization of the mattress.

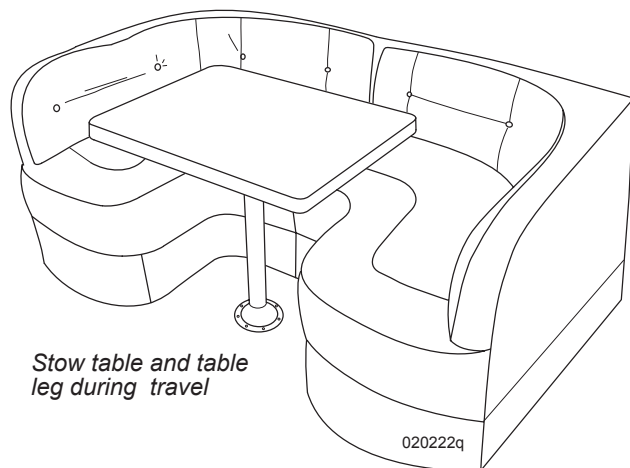
Mattress Care:

The cover may be spot cleaned with carbonated water or mild detergent. Do not dry clean the mattress cover or put it in a washing machine.

BOOTH DINETTE

Booth Ensemble (Optional)

The table and table leg can be removed for storage. The dinette does not fold down into a bed.



WARNING:

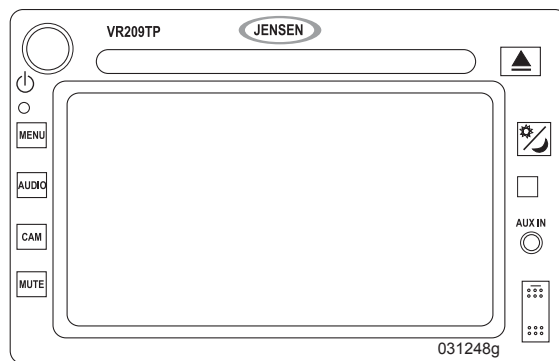
Do not use the sofa for transporting infants or children that require safety seats or booster seats.

DASH RADIO

The dash radio features a touch screen display. The dash radio is Sirius ready and includes an AM/FM tuner, CD player, Weather Band and auxiliary inputs. For backup camera operation, see *Section 2 Backup Camera*.

Operation Requirements:

- ◆ Turn on interior house power.
- ◆ Turn on the dash Radio Power switch.
- ◆ Turn on the radio.



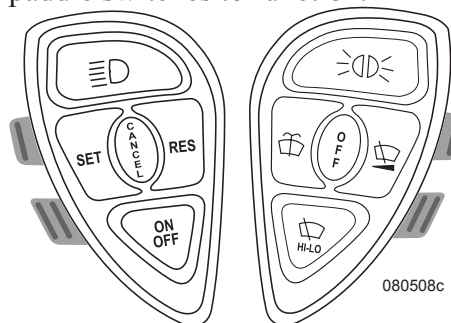
Dash Radio Switch

The Radio switch turns power on and off to the dash radio. Radio memory is not affected. Conserve battery power by turning the switch off when dry camping or when in storage.



Steering Wheel Controls

Located on each side of the steering wheel are paddle switch radio controls. The paddle switches control basic radio functions. The ignition key must be in the On position for the paddle switches to function.



Upper Left Up/Down	Lower Left Up/Down	Upper Right Up/Down	Lower Right Up/Down
Power On/Off	Radio Weather Band Front Aux Rear Aux	Volume Up	Search Up
Mute	AM or FM	Volume Down	Search Down

To Play the Radio:

Press the Audio button. The screen will display a main menu of Audio features. The audio menu features icons such as Radio, CD, Satellite Radio, iPod, Weather Band etc. Touch the corresponding icon (AM/FM for Radio) will activate that feature. Each feature will have its own onscreen display for its functions.

INFORMATION:

It is highly recommended to review the OEM radio manual for in-depth operating features and adjustments. While the onscreen display is intuitive, some features can only be accessed by pressing and holding certain buttons such as when setting the clock or adjusting tonal quality.

To Set the Clock:

- ◆ Press and hold the Menu button.
- ◆ This will display the main system setup menu.
- ◆ Press System Setup.
- ◆ Press Clock.
- ◆ Enter the time using the onscreen number labels.
- ◆ Set AM or PM.
- ◆ Press Menu or other function to exit clock setup menu.

To Play CD:

- ◆ Turn the radio on.
- ◆ Insert a CD.
- ◆ The CD will load and play automatically.
- ◆ Adjust volume to desired level.

To Play Weather Band:

- ◆ Press the WB label from the Audio menu. The tuner will scan for strongest weather band station.
- ◆ Adjust Volume knob to desired level.
- ◆ The system can also be set to sound an alert when N.O.A.A. (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration) broadcasts a severe weather notification.

Auxiliary Input (Front):

An auxiliary audio input is located on the front of the radio for use with an iPod (MP3 player) for example.

- ◆ Turn the radio on.
- ◆ Press the Mode button.
- ◆ Press the Audio label.
- ◆ Select F. Aux. to use the front auxiliary input.
- ◆ Refer to the audio device's OEM manual for operation instructions.

NOTE:

Not all MP3 players may be compatible.

USB Port:

- ◆ Remove dust cover.
- ◆ Insert a USB device. The system will automatically detect the device.
- ◆ Allow time for the system to load the files.
- ◆ Use the onscreen label to navigate.
- ◆ Playback may or may not be as displayed.

Satellite Radio (Optional)

The dash radio can be upgraded with optional Sirius® radio hardware that will decode and play Sirius satellite radio. Satellite signals are transmitted from a ground station to satellites orbiting over the continental United States. The satellite hardware decodes the transmission and plays the selected channel. Subscription to satellite radio is not included.

To Play Satellite Radio:

- ◆ Press the Mode button to display the Audio menu.
- ◆ Press the Sat label.
- ◆ Use the menu labels to navigate between stations.

INFORMATION:

For information regarding subscriptions and service coverage areas, contact the system provider.

Sirius® Radio
1-888-539-7474
www.siriusradio.com

INFORMATION:

Refer to the Sirius OEM manual for operating instructions.

GPS NAVIGATION (OPTIONAL)

The Garmin Nuvi is viewed through a portable monitor. The GPS system is Bluetooth capable and an SD card slot is located on the side of the monitor. The system provides detailed street maps, points of interest such as restaurants, hotels, and gas stations, trip computer, and turn-by-turn directions via voice guidance. The GPS is preloaded with a majority of street maps for North America. Maps can be viewed from different perspectives: 3-D, top-down, track-up, or north-up view. A SD card slot is available for loading custom points of interest, additional maps, and software updates.

CAUTION:

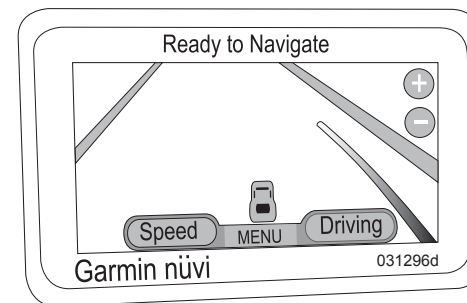
For safety, only perform GPS operations when the motorhome is parked.

INFORMATION:

Complete operating instructions and information are found in the Garmin OEM manual.

CAUTION:

The system can be locked to prevent unwanted use. If the PIN is lost, the system will need to be sent to Garmin with product registration so it can be unlocked.



TV ENTERTAINMENT COMPONENTS

The following paragraphs will discuss the operations and various components that make up the entertainment center.

INFORMATION:

It is recommended to become familiar with individual components. Refer to the respective component's OEM manual for detailed instructions.

NOTE:

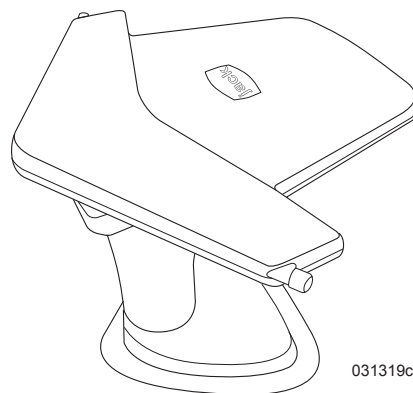
All components of the entertainment system require 120 Volts AC to operate. Hook to shore power, start the generator or turn on the inverter. The satellite system (if equipped) requires 12 Volts DC to operate. Turn on the interior house power using the battery cut-out switch.

Television (Front) Lockout Feature

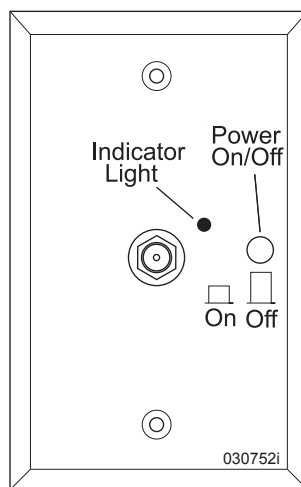
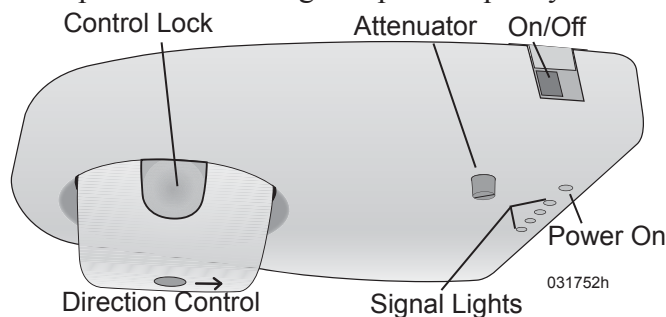
The ignition switch controls the outlet for the front TV, allowing the front TV to operate only when the ignition is off. Viewing time of the front TV from the inverter depends on state of charge of the house batteries and any additional 12 Volt DC lighting used.

TV ANTENNA

The television (TV) antenna with built-in electronics use 12 Volts DC to “boost” signal strength. Directional control, amplifier and attenuator are located on the antenna base. The Antenna Select switch, located in the bedroom (under the bedroom TV), switches between either roof antenna or shore cable if available.



Directional control and the attenuator provide the best possible picture for most situations depending on location. Certain reception conditions may occur where amplification can degrade picture quality.



Antenna select switch located in bedroom

To Use the Roof Antenna:

- ◆ Turn on Antenna Select switch.
- ◆ Turn on Signal indicator.
- ◆ Rotate Attenuator fully clockwise.
- ◆ Press inwards on lock to directional control then rotate antenna until maximum number of signal strength lights illuminate.
- ◆ Rotate Attenuator counterclockwise until maximum number of signal strength lights illuminate.
- ◆ Rotate antenna until strongest signal indicator flickers then adjust attenuator counterclockwise until maximum number of signal strength lights illuminate.
- ◆ Antenna direction and attenuator is now set for the best possible picture.

NOTE:

The Antenna Select switch must be on to power the attenuator and signal strength lights.

NOTE:

Rotation control stops allow the antenna to rotate 360°.

NOTE:

Rotate direction control knob with arrow pointing rearward for travel.

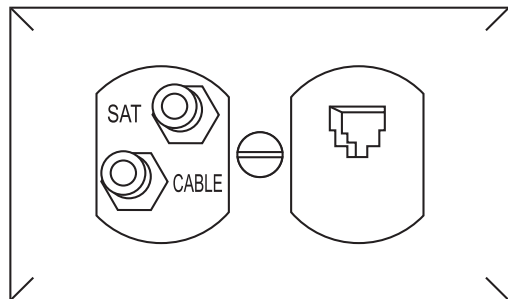
To Use Shore Cable:

- ◆ Turn the Antenna Select switch off.
- ◆ Make the cable connection to the shore cable port located on the water service center panel.

Cable TV, Satellite & Phone Connection

The motorhome is equipped with cable TV, satellite, and phone hook-up located in the roadside water service center.

- ◆ The Cable connection in the water service center is for a Cable input, for example, a campground cable TV hookup.
- ◆ The Sat connection is for use with a stand-alone satellite dish. See “Satellite Systems” for more information on equipment hookup and cable routing.



Located in the water service center compartment

060192e

Front TV Operation

NOTE:

Due to options in entertainment equipment and floor plans, operation of entertainment components may vary.

NOTE:

Refer to the OEM manuals for further information and programming instructions.

- ◆ Hook to shore power, start the generator or turn on the inverter.
- ◆ Ensure the house batteries are fully charged.
- ◆ Turn on interior house power.
- ◆ Ignition key must be off for the front TV to work.

To Watch TV from the Antenna:

- ◆ Turn on Antenna Select switch.
- ◆ Turn on the TV. Repeatedly press the TV Input button to select TV.
- ◆ Select desired channel.
- ◆ Adjust antenna direction and attenuator.
- ◆ Adjust volume on TV.

To Watch TV from Shore Cable:

- ◆ Hook to shore cable using the Cable port in the water service compartment.
- ◆ Turn off antenna select switch.
- ◆ Turn on the TV. Repeatedly press the TV Input button to select TV tuner.
- ◆ Select desired channel on TV.
- ◆ Adjust volume on TV.

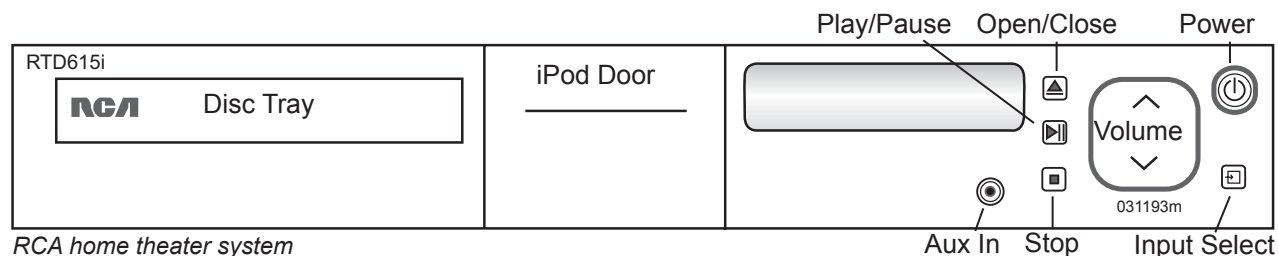
DVD Player (Optional)

Watch a DVD:

- ◆ Press the Power button to turn DVD player on.
- ◆ Press the Open/Close button to open DVD tray.
- ◆ Place DVD onto tray. Close tray. DVD will load and play automatically.
- ◆ Repeatedly press the Input button on the TV until the DVD appears on the TV.
- ◆ Adjust volume on TV.

Home Theater Sound:

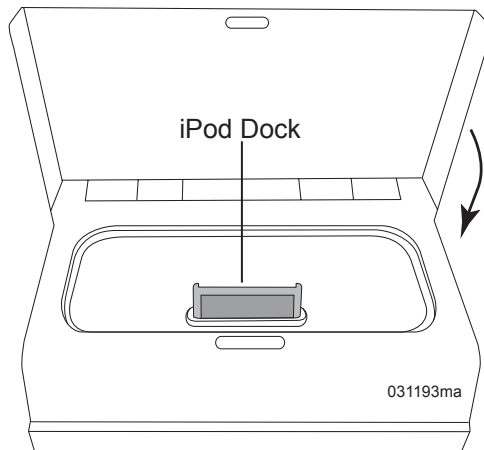
- ◆ Turn on the DVD player and insert DVD.
- ◆ Turn on the TV. Turn down TV volume.
- ◆ Adjust volume on the DVD player.



RCA home theater system

Listen to CDs:

- ◆ Turn on the DVD player.
- ◆ Insert a CD into the DVD player.
- ◆ Adjust volume to desired level.

iPod Dock:

- ◆ Turn on DVD player.
- ◆ Open iPod dock door.
- ◆ If necessary, install iPod adapter.
- ◆ Turn on TV. Press TV Input button until DVD screen displays.
- ◆ Repeatedly press DVD input select button to select iPod.
- ◆ Use the iPod controls to navigate, select and play media.

NOTE:

An adapter (not provided) may be required to dock (connect) the iPod depending on iPod model and series. Most iPod models are compatible with the DVD player. Refer to the OEM manual to determine compatibility.

BEDROOM TV OPERATION**To Watch TV from the Antenna:**

- ◆ Turn on Antenna Select switch.
- ◆ Turn on the TV. Repeatedly press the TV Input button to select TV.
- ◆ Select desired channel.
- ◆ Adjust antenna direction and attenuator.
- ◆ Adjust volume on TV.

To Watch TV from Shore Cable:

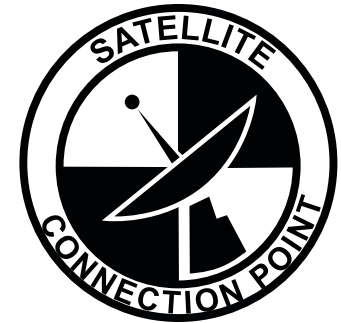
- ◆ Hook to shore cable using the Cable port in the water service compartment.
- ◆ Turn off antenna select switch.
- ◆ Turn on the TV. Repeatedly press the TV Input button to select TV tuner.
- ◆ Select desired channel on TV.
- ◆ Adjust volume on TV.

To Watch TV from the DVD Player:

- ◆ Press the Power button to turn DVD player on.
- ◆ Press Open/Close to open DVD tray.
- ◆ Place DVD into tray. Close tray. DVD will load and play automatically.
- ◆ Repeatedly press the Input button on the TV until DVD appears on the TV.
- ◆ Adjust volume on TV (or home theater).

SATELLITE SYSTEMS

The motorhome is pre-wired with coaxial cables for a roof mounted satellite dish or for a stand alone system. The cables are located in the roof approximately 12" in front of the forward air conditioner. A sticker on the roof marks the location of the cable.



Roof sticker marks
satellite cable
location

031318f

Satellite Prewire**Sat:**

This cable comes from the satellite connection plate in the water service center. This is used to hookup a portable satellite dish. Connect this cable to Satellite In on the satellite receiver.

LNB #1:

This cable comes from the roof mount satellite dish. It is used to hookup a standard definition satellite receiver. Connect this cable to Satellite In on the satellite receiver.

LNB #2:

This cable comes from the roof mount satellite dish. It is used in conjunction with LNB #1. Connect LNB cables 1 & 2 to a high-definition satellite receiver.

Bed Sat:

This cable runs to the bedroom. Hook this cable to Satellite Out on the back of the satellite receiver to supply a satellite signal to the bedroom TV.

HDMI:

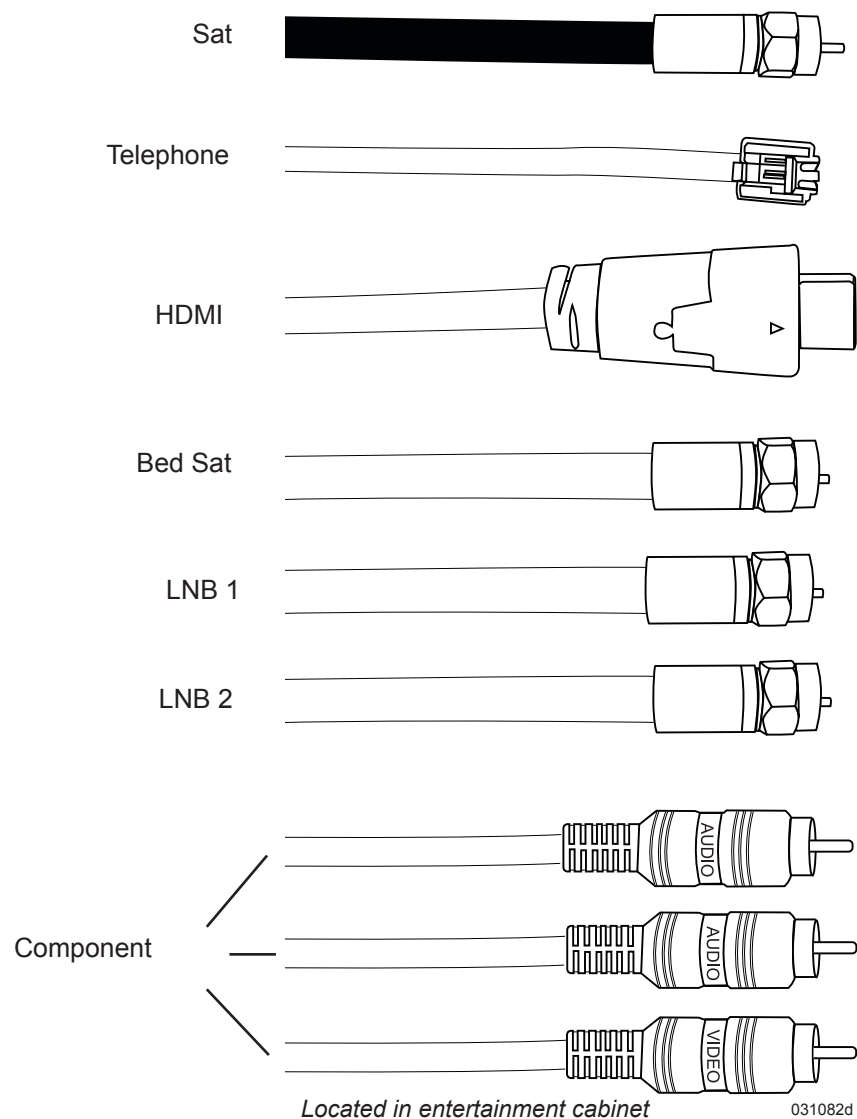
This High Definition cable hooks to the living room TV. Cable can be used to hook to a satellite receiver or video game console.

Telephone:

This cable comes from the telephone connection plate in the water service center. The telephone cord hooks to a satellite receiver to order pay per view programming.

Component:

Available with front TV only. Used to connect standard definition satellite receiver or game console.



KVH R6 (Optional):

The KVH R6 satellite system includes an antenna (dish), a control box and receiver pre-wiring. The system **does not** include satellite receiver(s).

NOTE:

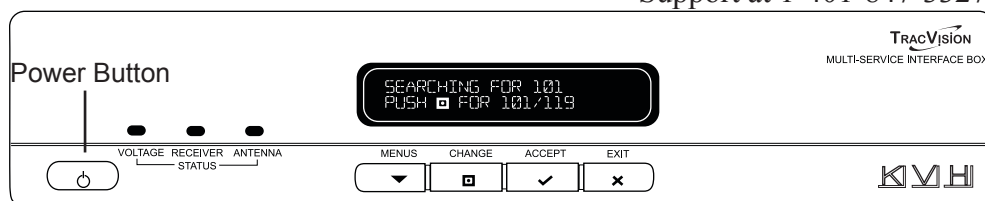
Satellite service requires subscription activation. Contact your service provider to activate the account.

NOTE:

For specific satellite coverage areas and providers refer to the OEM manual.

Turning On the Antenna:

1. Turn on the KVH satellite system.
Press the power button on the KVH control box
2. Turn on the satellite receiver (not supplied).
3. Wait 30 to 60 seconds for the antenna to acquire the satellite signal.
4. Turn on the TV and press the Input button on the top of the TV until the Satellite screen displays.
5. It takes approximately one minute for the receiver to download guide data. Channels can be selected once the guide is downloaded.



KVH R6 System

031301

Monthly Maintenance:

- ◆ Periodically clean the dome with water and mild soap (if necessary) to maintain reception performance. Dirt buildup can affect satellite TV reception.
- ◆ **Do not** spray the dome with high-pressure water.
- ◆ **Do not** apply abrasive cleaners or volatile solvents, such as acetone, to the ABS dome.
- ◆ Do not paint the dome.

CAUTION:

If a need arises to paint the radome, use only non-metallic automotive paint without a primer coat to avoid degrading the RF signal strength. Metallic paint impairs satellite signals.

TIP:

For optimum signal strength, keep the dome clean from dirt, bugs and other debris. Periodic washing of the dome with mild soap and water is recommended. If the motorhome is stored for long periods of time it is recommended that the system be put through a search procedure on a quarterly basis to keep all moving parts in good working order.

Technical Support:

- ◆ For assistance in operation or for technical support, call KVH Technical Support at 1-401-847-3327.

Winegard Trav'ler (Optional)

The Winegard system is compatible with virtually any DirecTV® receiver, including HD and DVR receivers. The system can also be programmed for use with SHAW direct Canadian satellite receivers and services. The system includes a roof-mounted antenna and interface box. The interface box is used to raise and stow the antenna. The system **does not** include receivers. Before ordering service from a satellite provider, ensure the service provider's receiver is compatible with the Winegard system. Consult the receiver manual or www.winegard.com for receiver compatibility.

NOTE:

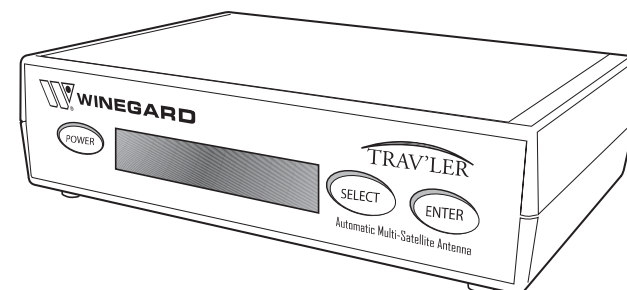
The satellite system does not include a satellite receiver. Refer to the satellite receiver OEM manual for complete operating instructions and information.

NOTE:

Satellite service requires subscription activation. Contact your service provider to activate the account.

INFORMATION:

For specific satellite coverage areas and providers see the OEM manual.



Winegard Trav'ler. Designed for use with DirecTV and SHAW (Canadian) receivers.

031268b

Operation:

- ◆ Press and hold the Power button for two seconds or until the interface box screen displays Power On. The system is on and the satellite antenna will raise.

For Travel:

- ◆ Press and release the Power button to stow the satellite antenna. The interface box will not turn off until the satellite antenna is successfully stowed.

Technical Support:

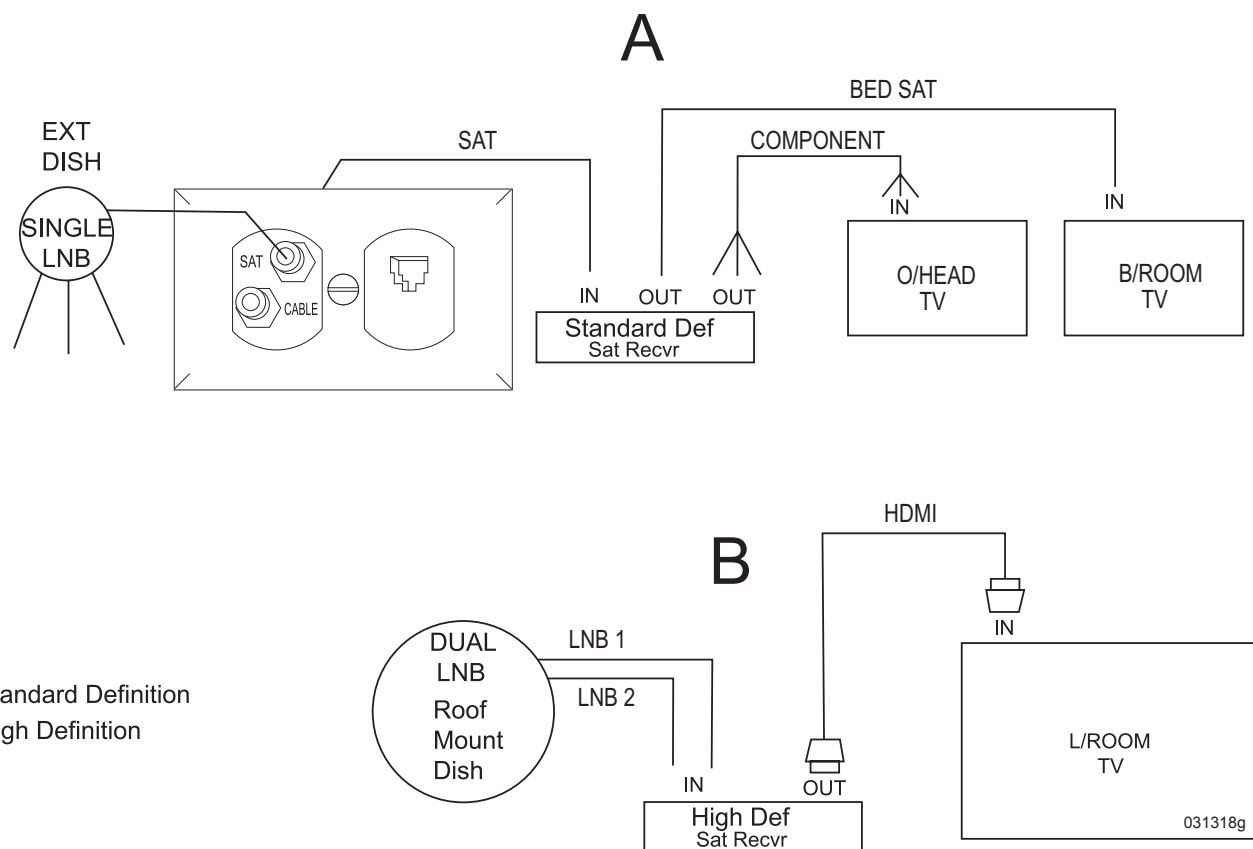
- ◆ Call Winegard technical support @ 1-800-788-4417.

Satellite Wiring

The motorhome is pre-wired to accept a roof-mounted or portable satellite dish system. Factory installed coaxial and audio/video cables are provided from the satellite connection plates to the TVs. A phone cable is provided for pay-per-view programming. The “Sat” coax connection located in the water service bay allows connection of a stand-alone dish.

NOTE:

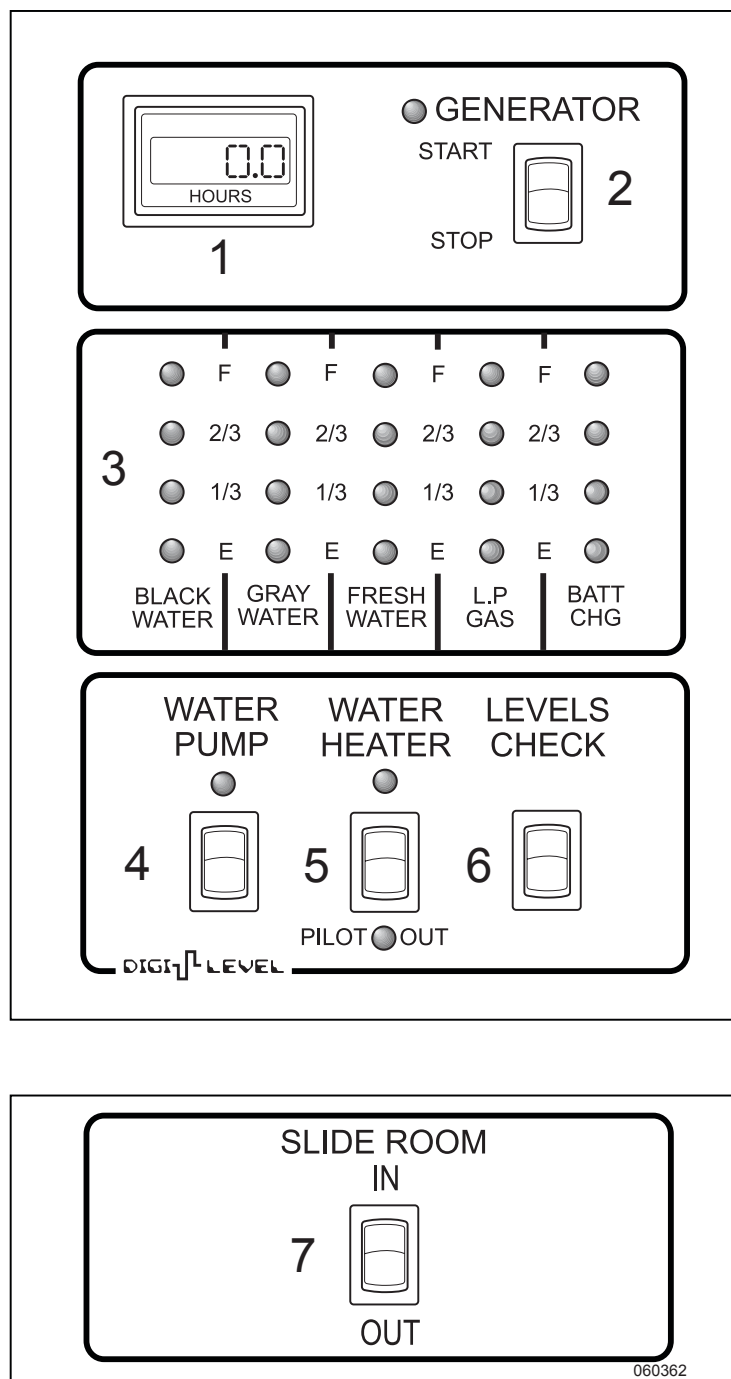
There are a number of methods satellite reception can be obtained dependant upon: types of satellite dishes, equipment hardware, standard definition, high-definition and DVR receivers, satellite subscription providers etc. Due to available possibilities, only the most probable receiver installation diagrams are provided. Additional hardware and cabling can be required when installing satellite equipment.



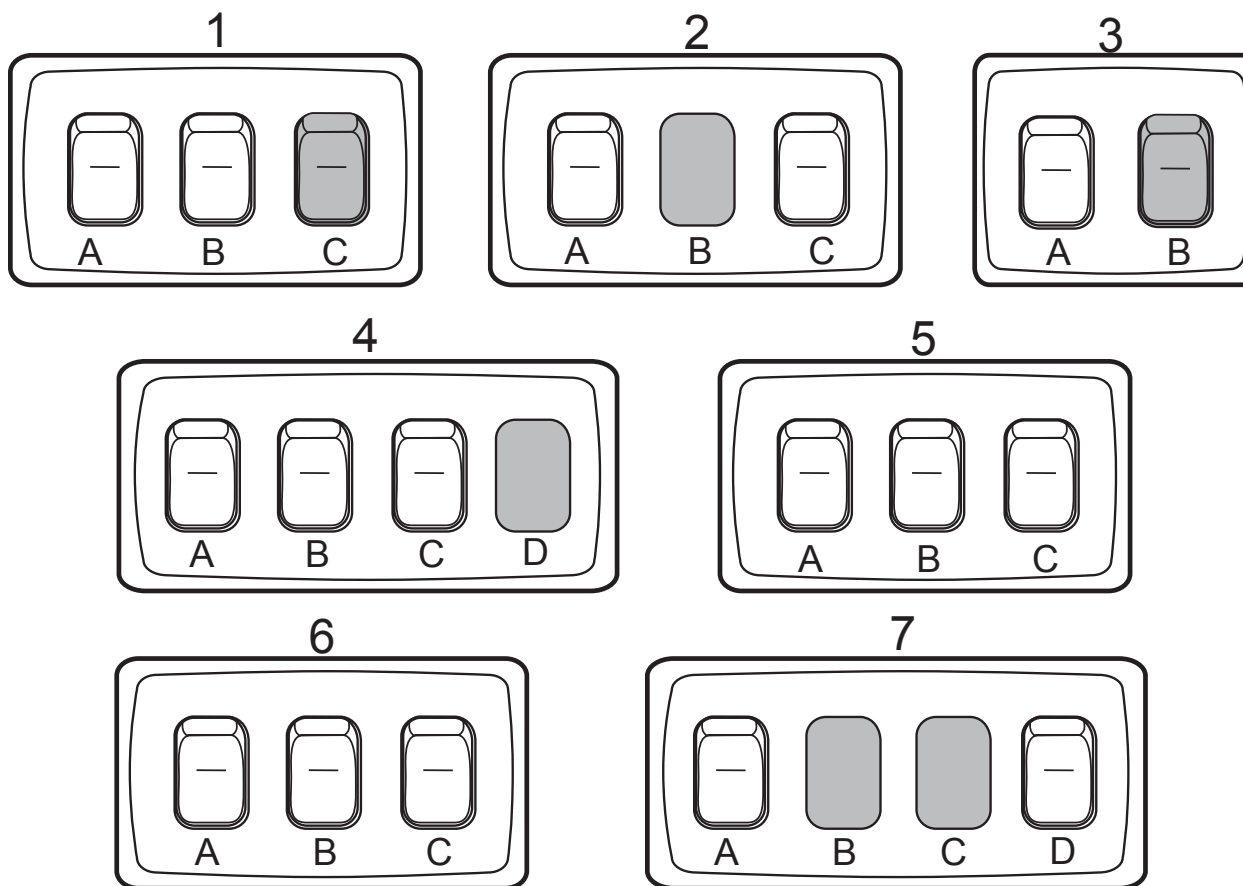
SYSTEMS PANEL

The System Control Center enables a central location for many of the switches and control monitors used to operate the motorhome.

1. **Generator Hour Meter:** Logs total number of hours on the generator.
2. **Generator Remote Switch:** Starts and stops the generator.
3. **Tank Monitor Panel:** Displays the status of the black and grey holding tanks, fresh water tank and propane tank. Also displays status of house batteries.
4. **Water Pump Switch.** Activates the onboard water pump.
5. **Water Heater (Propane) Switch:** Applies 12 Volt DC power to ignite the water heater. If the water heater fails to ignite, the Pilot Out fault lamp will illuminate. If problems persist consult a qualified technician.
6. **Levels Check:** Displays tank and house battery status on the Tank Monitor Panel.
7. **Slideout Room Controls:** Extends and retracts the living room slideout.



SWITCH LEGEND

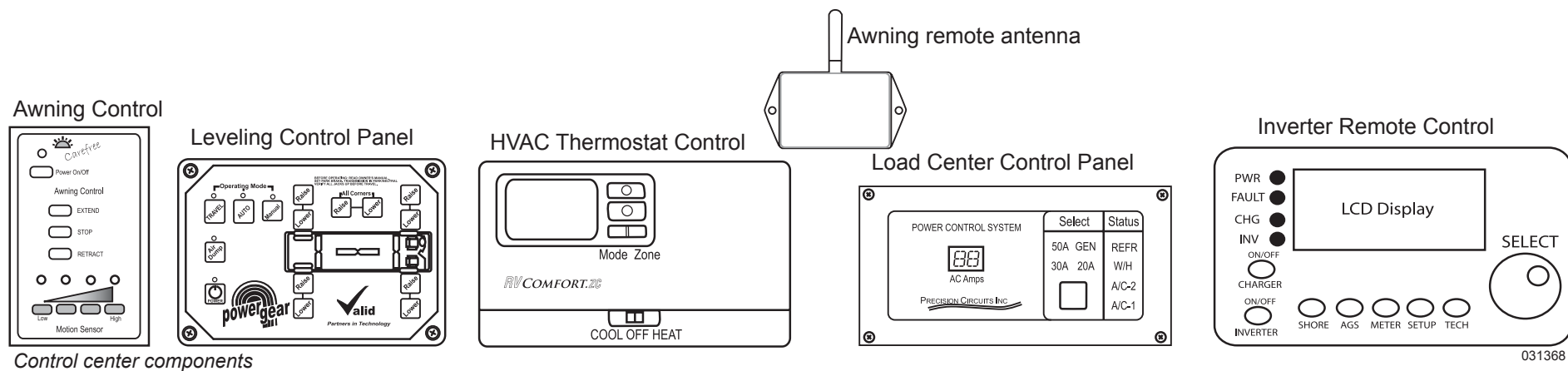


Switch legend

060370b

SWITCH LEGEND					
SWITCH	LOCATION	A	B	C	D
1	Entry Door	Cieling Lights	Porch Light	Entry Step	
2	Entry Door	Storage Lights	Stor. Ind, Lamp	Battery Cutoff	
3	Monitor Panel	Entertainment Soffet Lights	Water Heater 120 AC		
4	Galley Base	Galley Ceiling	Galley Soffit Lts	System Heat	System Heat Indicator Lamp
5	Dinette	Dinette Ceiling Lights	Accent Light	Sofa Ceiling Lights	
6	Bedroom	Bedroom Cieling lights	Hallway Cieling Light	Cieling Lights	
7	Service center	Storage Llights	Stor. Ind, Lamp	Water Pump Ind Lamp	Water Pump

CONTROL CENTER



For ease of operation, a majority of operating controls for the motorhome are located above the entry door. In depth information regarding operation of each system control is located in the following Sections of the manual. Controls are listed in order from left to right.

- ◆ Awning Control: Section 5
- ◆ Leveling Control Panel: Section 10
- ◆ HVAC Thermostat Control: Section 4
- ◆ Load Center Control Panel: Section 8
- ◆ Inverter Remote Control: Section 8

Water Systems

Section 6



WATER SYSTEMS - INTRODUCTION	118	WASTE WATER SYSTEMS	123	DRAIN TRAPS & AUTO VENTS	128
WATER TANKS	118	Proper Waste Disposal	123	COLD WEATHER CONDITIONS.....	128
Measurements & Calibration	118	Do Not Put in Waste Holding Tanks.....	123	Systems Heat	128
FRESH WATER	119	What to Put in Holding Tanks	123	Cold Weather Storage.....	128
Pressurized Water Fill	119	Waste Drain Hose	123	WINTERIZATION	129
Gravity Fill	119	Black Tank Flush	124	Using Air Pressure	129
City Water Hook-Up.....	119	TOILET	125	Using Non-Toxic Antifreeze	130
WATER PUMP	120	Pedal Flush	125	De-Winterization.....	131
Water Pump Troubleshooting.....	120	Electric Flush	126	WATER SERVICE CENTER	132
WATER FILTER	121	Cleaning	127	WATER SYSTEM DIAGRAM	133
WATER SYSTEMS	122	Maintenance	127		
Troubleshooting	122	Troubleshooting	127		
Disinfecting Fresh Water.....	122	Winterization	127		
FAUCET SCREENS.....	122				

WATER SYSTEMS - INTRODUCTION

This section contains information about the operation and care of various water system equipment. Optional water equipment will also be discussed, so not all information may be applicable to each motorhome. More detailed information with CAUTION or WARNING instructions for various equipment, other than what is found in this section, can be found in the OEM manuals.

Water Consumption:

Newcomers to a self-contained motorhome soon discover water does not last long unless consumption is drastically reduced. For example, less water can be used for showering if the shower is turned off while soaping down, then turned back on to rinse. Plenty of water will be available to meet personal needs once habits are adjusted.

Plumbing Overview:

The motorhome plumbing system can be operated independantly of shore service. The plumbing system holding tanks include a fresh water tank, a grey water (liquid waste) tank and a black water (solid waste) tank. Sinks and shower drain into the grey tank. The toilet drains into the black tank. An onboard water pump will supply all faucets and toilets with water from the fresh tank. Close monitoring of the holding tanks is necessary when not connected to shore service.

Water Service Center:

The motorhome plumbing system can be attached to shore services (city water and sewer) at the roadside water service center. The service center includes the city water/fresh tank fill connection and the grey and black tank valves, drains and tank flush connections. If shore services are available, the shore water supply (city water) can be used to pressurize the water system and the onboard water pump can be turned off. The grey and black tanks share a common termination drain. A sewer hose is attached from the termination drain to the shore sewer facility. It is recommended to leave the black tank drain valve closed and the grey tank drain valve open when hooked to shore services to avoid a clogged sewer hose. Drain and flush the black tank after dumping and/or prior to departure.

Fresh Water System:

The fresh water system consists of a fresh water tank, water pump, gravity fill connection, water filter and a potable water connection. Use only a water hose made for potable water. Proper care of the hose is necessary. After each use, drain the water hose and coil the hose neatly. Attach the ends together to keep dirt, debris and insects out of the hose.

INFORMATION:
Potable water is safe for human consumption.



Waste Water System:

The waste water system consists of a liquid waste holding tank (grey water), sewage holding tank (black water), flush system, toilet, sewer hose and drains.

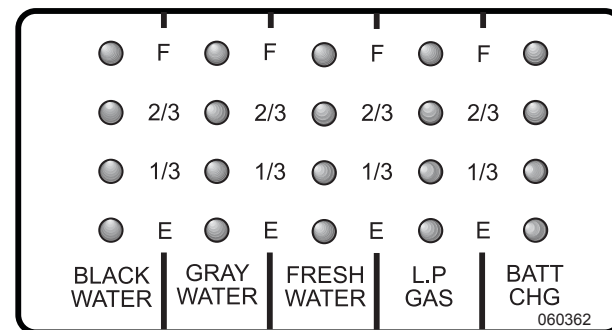
WARNING:

Water is electrically conductive. Do not use any electrically powered item or electrical outlet that may be exposed to a water source. Such use can result in a serious shock, causing injury or death.

WATER TANKS

Measurements & Calibration

The motorhome is equipped with a monitor panel to aid in managing the holding tanks. The switch marked Test will illuminate the level of the storage tanks. Each scale uses colored lights to indicate the level. The color of lights in a given scale will change depending on which system is being indicated.



Propane & Fresh Tanks	Holding & Grey Tanks
Red = Empty	Green = Empty
Amber = 1/3 Full	Yellow = 1/3 Full
Yellow = 2/3 Full	Amber = 2/3 Full
Green = Full	Red = Full

FRESH WATER

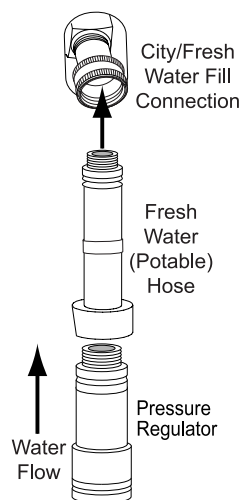
Pressurized Water Fill

When connecting to fresh water or when filling the fresh water tank, use a hose manufactured and labeled for “potable” water. This ensures the hose and hose fittings are safe for drinking water. It is recommended to install a water pressure regulator at the water source to protect the potable hose and plumbing system from excess pressure.

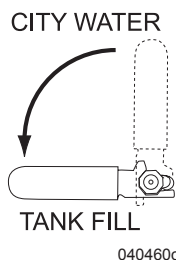
WARNING:

Hose and hose fittings not manufactured for potable water can contain unsafe levels of lead. It is highly recommended to use only fresh water supply hoses manufactured for potable water use.

- ◆ Connect one end of the pressure regulator to the water source and the other end to the potable hose.
- ◆ Connect a potable hose to the City Water/Fresh Tank Fill connection located in the roadside water service center.
- ◆ Set the water control lever to the Tank Fill position.
- ◆ Turn on water at the source.
- ◆ Periodically press the Test switch on the monitor panel to gauge fill rate. Do not leave the motorhome unattended while filling the fresh water tank.



040480ya



CAUTION:

It is recommended to place a pressure regulator at the water source to protect the potable water system from over-pressurization. Some water sources have high water pressure, particularly in mountainous regions. High water pressure is anything over 55 psi (pounds per square inch). Excessive water pressure may cause leaks in water lines and/or damage the water heater. Excess pressure can cause the water hose to swell and burst.

Gravity Fill

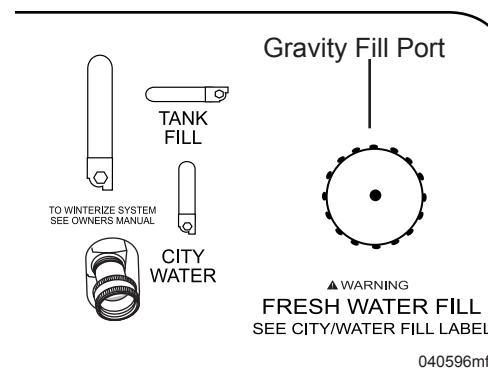
The gravity fill port located on the water service center panel allows fluids to be introduced directly into the fresh water tank. Water can be poured directly from a container into the fresh water tank. The gravity fill inlet can be used to pour disinfecting solution into the fresh water tank. Use only potable water sources, solutions and delivery systems when using the gravity fill inlet.

Filling the Tank:

- ◆ Unscrew fill cap taking care to keep cap and inlet clean.
- ◆ Insert potable water hose into inlet.
- ◆ Fill tank until water overflows from inlet.

NOTE:

Do not leave the gravity fill inlet unattended when in use.



Gravity fill port located on water service center panel

City Water Hook-Up

When connecting the motorhome to fresh water, use a hose manufactured and labeled for potable water. It is required to install a pressure regulator to prevent over-pressurization of the fresh water plumbing system. Attaching the regulator at the water source will also protect the hose from expanding and bursting due to excess pressure.

- ◆ Install the pressure regulator at the water source.
- ◆ Connect the potable hose to the City Water/Fresh Tank Fill connection.

- ◆ Set City Water/Fresh Tank Fill handle to the City Water position.
- ◆ Turn on the water.
- ◆ The water pump can either be off or on. It will not affect the water pump to leave it on.
- ◆ Slowly open each faucet, one at a time, to purge trapped air.

WATER PUMP

The water pump pressurizes the fresh water system when the system is not connected to city water. The water pump is self-priming, operating on demand as water is used. The water pump is located in the water service center.

To Operate the Water Pump:

- ◆ Ensure the house battery disconnect switch is on.
- ◆ Battery cut-off switch must be on.

WARNING:

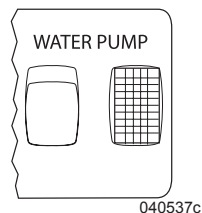
Before leaving the motorhome for extended periods of time (i.e. overnight or longer) the city water source and water pump must be turned off. The manufacturer is not responsible for damage caused from neglect.

The water pump can be operated from these locations:

- ◆ Systems Panel.
- ◆ Water Service Center.

To turn the water pump On or Off:

- ◆ Press the water pump switch. The indicator lamp illuminates when the water pump is turned on.



Service center
water pump switch

WARNING:

Do not continue water pump operation if the fresh water holding tank is empty. Damage to the water pump or electrical supply system may result.

To operate the water pump after unhooking from a city water source or after storage:

- ◆ Close all drain valves and low point drains.
- ◆ Fill the fresh water tank.
- ◆ Open the hot and cold water valves of each faucet.
- ◆ Turn the water pump on. Wait for the water lines and the hot water tank to fill.
- ◆ Close each faucet when it delivers a steady stream of water (cold water faucets first).

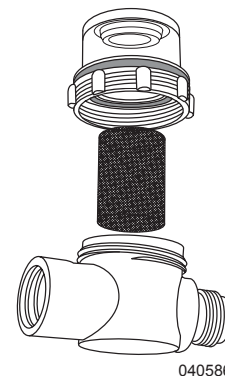
Water Pump Troubleshooting

Water pump will not start or blows the fuse:

- ◆ Check the electrical connections, fuse or breaker, main switch and ground connection.
- ◆ Is voltage present at the pressure switch on the pump? If voltage is present, the pressure switch may be faulty. As a test, temporarily bypass the pressure switch.
- ◆ Check the charging system for correct voltage and good ground.
- ◆ Check for an open or grounded circuit or motor.
- ◆ Check for a seized or locked diaphragm assembly (water frozen).

Water pump will not prime or sputters (No discharge/motor runs):

- ◆ Check the pump inlet strainer for clogs and debris.
- ◆ Check the tank for water or air collected in the water heater.
- ◆ Check the inlet tubing and plumbing to see if it is sucking in air at plumbing connections (vacuum leak).
- ◆ Check for proper voltage with the pump operating.
- ◆ Check the pump housing for cracks or loose drive assembly screws.



Water pump inlet screen: Clean every two months.

Water pump will not shut-off or continues to run when the faucet is closed:

- ◆ Check to see if the fresh water/tank fill valve is fully set in position.
- ◆ Check the output (pressure) side plumbing for leaks and inspect for a leaky toilet or valves.
- ◆ Look for a loose drive assembly or pump head screws.

Water pump is noisy or rough in operation:

- ◆ Check for plumbing that may have vibrated loose.
- ◆ Does the mounting surface multiply noise (flexible)?
- ◆ Check for mounting feet that are loose or compressed too tight.
- ◆ Look for loose pump head to motor screws.

Water pump is rapid cycling:

- ◆ Look for restrictive water flow in the faucets or shower heads.

WATER FILTER

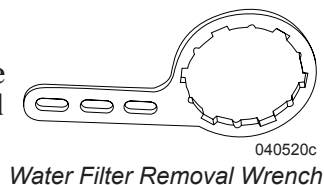
A whole house water filter is located in the water service center. Change the water filter after 1,000 gallons of use or sooner if water flow is noticeably reduced.

INFORMATION:

For specific water filter information, cautions and additional filter replacements consult the water filter OEM instructions or contact Shurflo Customer Service at 1-800-854-3218.

CAUTION:

Protect filter from freezing or damage to the system could occur.



Water Filter Removal Wrench

Filter Removal:

- ◆ Turn off the water supply and the water pump.
- ◆ Open faucets to bleed off pressure.
- ◆ Unscrew the filter bowl using the bowl wrench.
- ◆ Check O-ring for damage and lubricate if necessary. O-ring should be replaced every third cartridge change to ensure proper sealing.
- ◆ Remove the old cartridge and discard.
- ◆ Empty any remaining water in the bowl.

Filter Installation:

- ◆ Insert new cartridge into filter bowl.
- ◆ Screw filter bowl back onto head and hand tighten securely.
- ◆ Turn on water pump or city water.
- ◆ Thoroughly flush and purge air from the system by opening faucets and running the water.
- ◆ Check for leaks.

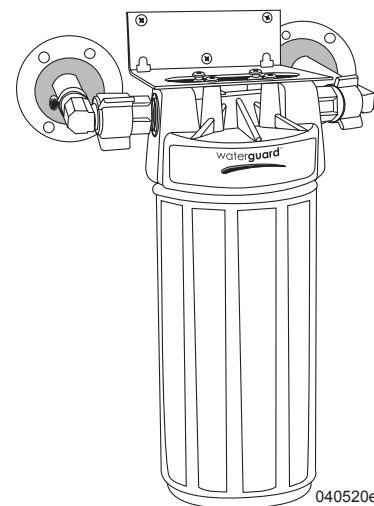
Filter Replacement: RV-10C1

INFORMATION:

Replacement filter number is accurate at time of printing. Confirm replacement filter number before ordering or obtaining a replacement.

To Winterize:

- ◆ Winterize the motorhome.
- ◆ Unscrew the filter bowl using the bowl wrench.
- ◆ Remove the old cartridge and discard.
- ◆ Store the filter bowl. **Do not** screw filter bowl back onto filter head.



To De-Winterize:

- ◆ Insert new cartridge into filter bowl.
- ◆ Screw filter bowl back onto head and hand tighten securely.
- ◆ Turn on water pump or city water.
- ◆ Thoroughly flush and purge air from the system by opening faucets and running the water.
- ◆ Check for leaks.

CAUTION:

O-ring must be properly seated in the groove of the lower housing or a water leak could occur.

WATER SYSTEMS

Troubleshooting

If the water pump cycles after closing the faucets, drain valves and inlet valves, a leak may be present. At this time check for leaks around fittings, valves, filter and connections of the hot and cold water system. If problems continue, take the motorhome to an authorized dealer for repair.

Disinfecting Fresh Water

Disinfecting the water system with household bleach (superchlorination) protects against bacteriological or viral contamination from common water sources.

Disinfect the fresh water system:

- ◆ If the motorhome is new.
- ◆ If the motorhome has been in storage.
- ◆ Every three months during use.

NOTE:

Use the gravity fill to perform this task. Remove cap from the gravity fill. Add the solution. When finished, secure the gravity fill cap.

- ◆ Remove and discard water filter cartridge (See "Water Filter"). Re-install filter bowl without cartridge.
- ◆ Prepare a household chlorine bleach solution of 1 gallon water and ¼ cup of chlorine bleach. Use 1 gallon of solution for every 15 gallons of tank capacity.

- ◆ This mixture puts a 50 ppm (parts per million) residual in the water system and acts as a quick-kill dosage for harmful bacteria, viruses and slime-forming organisms. Concentrations higher than 50 ppm may damage the water lines and/or tanks.
- ◆ Set water heater bypass valves to Bypass. This ensures that none of the prepared disinfecting solution enters the water heater. Refer to the water heater OEM instructions on flushing the water heater.
- ◆ Drain the fresh water tank. Close the drain and pour the concentrated solution into the fresh water tank using the gravity fill.
- ◆ Top off the tank with fresh water.
- ◆ Turn the water pump on.
- ◆ Individually open each faucet, hot and cold valves, and run the water until there is a distinct chlorine bleach odor. **Do not** forget the shower faucets.
- ◆ Turn off all faucets and allow the system to stand for four hours.
- ◆ Drain the system and flush with fresh water with fresh water repeatedly until the water system no longer smells or tastes like chlorine bleach.
- ◆ Install the new water filter cartridge.
- ◆ Set water heater bypass valves to Normal Flow position.

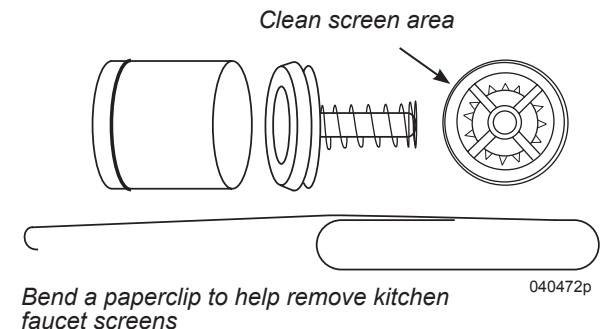
INFORMATION:

Household bleach is 5.25% Sodium Hypochlorite. Higher concentration will increase PPM ratio.

FAUCET SCREENS

Fresh water sources vary by location. Build up of lime deposits, or debris in the faucet screen, will restrict or plug the flow of water from the faucets. Should the flow of water reduce, the faucet filter screen may be clogged.

- ◆ The bathroom faucet screen is located on the outlet side of the faucet and held in place with a threaded collar.
- ◆ The kitchen faucet has two screens, one located where the hose attaches to the faucet head, the other where the hose attaches to the faucet manifold. The faucet hose must be removed to access both screens.
- ◆ Clean screen using a small soft brush and de-liming solution.
- ◆ Reinstall screen and check water flow.



WASTE WATER SYSTEMS

Proper Waste Disposal

Dumping raw sewage from toilet holding tanks, except at authorized dumping stations, is universally prohibited. Most National, State and private parks have either a central dump facility or campsite hook-up for sewage. Many modern rest areas along the interstate now have dump stations available. Woodall's Campground Directory, Trailer Life's RV Campgrounds and Services Directory, Rand McNally's Campground and Trailer Park Guide, Good Sam Park Director (Good Sam Club) and other similar publications list dumping stations. Some major oil companies also offer dump facilities at select stations.

Do Not Put in Waste Holding Tanks

- ◆ Do not use strong or full strength detergents to deodorize and disinfect. Use odor control chemicals made especially for holding tanks.
- ◆ Do not use automotive antifreeze, ammonia, alcohol or acetone in holding tanks. These products will dissolve plastic.
- ◆ Do not use standard household tissue that remains in one piece. Paper designed specifically for holding tanks is available at most RV supply stores. Facial tissue is thicker, softer and stronger than rapidly dissolving tissue. White toilet paper dissolves faster than colored. To test tissue dissolvability, immerse one tissue square into a jar of water. Shake the jar five times to determine how the tissue disintegrates.

- ◆ Do not dispose of table scraps or cooking grease into the tanks. They can clog pipes or damage termination valve seals.

CAUTION:

Do not dispose of sanitary supplies or other non-dissolving items into the system. Facial tissue, wet strength tissue, paper towels or an excessive amount of toilet tissue can create clogging in the holding tank system.

CAUTION:

Do not use any products that contain petroleum distillate or ammonia in place of RV odor controlling chemicals. Petroleum distillate or ammonia will damage the ABS plastic holding tanks and seals.

What to Put in Holding Tanks

Grey Water Tank:

The grey water waste tank stores the sink and shower drain water. A reduced mixture of chemicals may help to control odor in the grey tank.

Ensure that there is enough liquid in the holding tanks prior to dumping the waste holding tanks to provide a smooth flow through the valve, termination drain and sewer hose. Empty the waste holding tanks weekly to prevent stagnation and overfilling.

Black Water Tank:

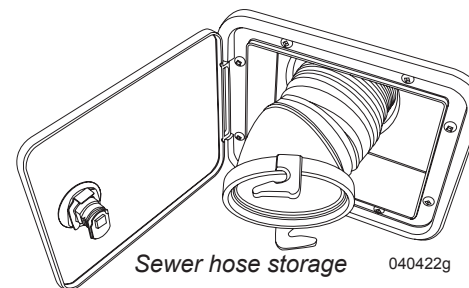
To help prevent buildup, pre-treat the sewage holding tank with a few gallons of water and an odor-control chemical (available at most RV supply stores). First, add approximately three gallons of water to the holding tank. Next, add the chemicals, in accordance with the manufacturer instructions. Pour mixture through toilet to the holding tank. Be careful not to spill the chemical on hands, clothing, toilet bowl or carpet. Hot weather conditions may require adjusting the amount of chemical used to control odor. Repeat the chemical pre-charge each time the black tank is cycled.

WARNING:

Most chemical mixtures for holding tank odor control are poisonous. Follow the product manufacturer's directions and warnings when using holding tank additive. Do not use products that contain petroleum distillate or ammonia in place of RV odor controlling chemical. Petroleum distillate or ammonia will damage the ABS plastic holding tanks and seals.

Waste Drain Hose

A flexible three-inch sewer hose attaches between the common termination drain and the shore sewer facility. Sewer hoses usually come in 10 and 20 foot lengths.

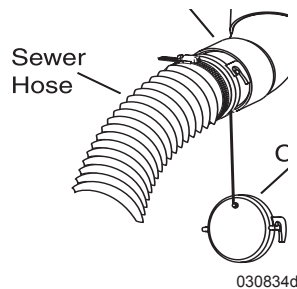


The shore fitting for the sewer hose may be a three or four-inch, male or female thread pipe; or a four-inch pipe with no threads, covered by a metal plate. Different style of adapters are available to fit most configurations. Hose ladders may also be purchased to support the hose.

It is **important** that the hose remains secure. Always tighten clamps and restraining devices before use. Lay the sewer hose inline between the termination drain and the shore fitting. Restrain the hose to prevent movement during use. Wear protective and/or disposable gloves when handling the sewer hose.

To Attach the Sewer Hose:

- ◆ Remove sewer hose from storage.
- ◆ Remove termination cap. Align coupler tangs with termination tabs. Twist coupler clockwise 90° locking coupler to termination drain.
- ◆ Unscrew access port and feed the sewer hose through the opening.
- ◆ Attach other end of hose to shore sewer facility. Restrain hose to prevent movement during use.
- ◆ Open the liquid waste drain (grey water) valve.



The solid waste drain (black water) valve remains closed until the tank is full or until time of departure to help prevent clogging. Use the outside faucet or shower attachment for washing or rinsing the sewer hose after dumping the black tank.

NOTE:

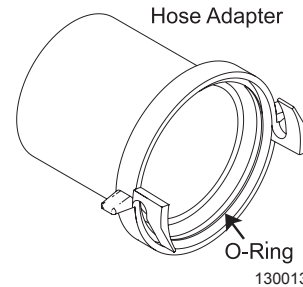
Use care when connecting the sewer hose adapter to the termination drain in cold weather.

NOTE:

Close the grey water valve 24 hours prior to departing to allow the tank to fill with liquid to help in the dumping process.

LUBE:

Periodically lubricate the O-ring on the sewer hose adapter with silicone spray.

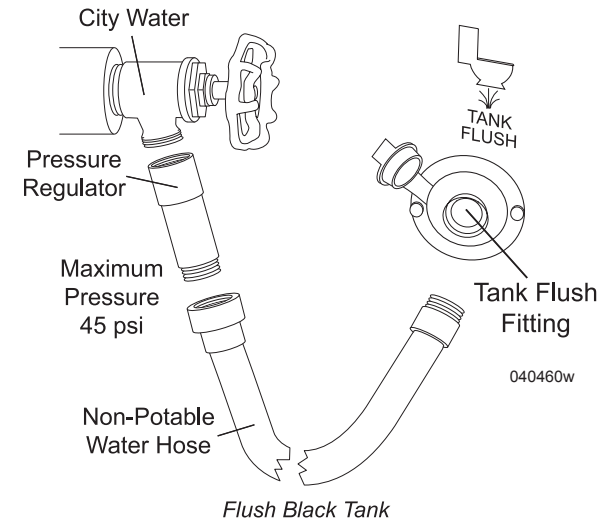


Black Tank Flush

The motorhome comes equipped with a power flush nozzle, located in the black tank to help reduce the build-up of solids. Flush the black tank each drain cycle. Failure to thoroughly rinse the black tank may result in accumulated solids and a clogged spray nozzle.

Gravity Drain Hose Dumping:

- ◆ Attach sewer hose to termination drain and shore facility.
- ◆ Prepare to dump the solid waste (black) tank first. Close the liquid waste drain (grey water) valve.
- ◆ Fill the grey tank to at least 50% by running water in the shower or sinks.
- ◆ Open the solid waste drain (black water) valve. Allow the black tank to drain.



- ◆ Connect one end of the pressure regulator to the water source and the other end to the non-potable water hose. Connect the non-potable hose to the tank flush fitting.
- ◆ Turn on the water source and allow water to rinse the black tank at least three minutes. Never operate the system unattended. Ensure the water flows freely through the drain hose.

WARNING:

Operating the flush system unattended can risk flooding. Use the tank flush system each time the holding tanks are cycled. Failure to routinely use the flush system will result in a clogged spray nozzle. Turn off the water supply when finished flushing the tank.

- ◆ When completed, turn off the water source and close the black water valve.

- ◆ Open the grey water valve. The water in the grey tank will flush remaining solids from the hose. With the grey water valve open, run two gallons of water down any drain to flush grey tank. The grey valve remains open until the next drain cycle, or time of departure.
- ◆ When preparing for travel, close both dump valves. Undo restraining devices from the hose. Disconnect the hose from the termination drain by rotating the fitting counterclockwise 90°.
- ◆ Raise the hose and drain using hand over hand method working the hose towards shore fitting. Rinse the hose with outside facility and repeat the hose drain process.
- ◆ Remove the hose from shore fitting. Install hose in carrier and lock door. Secure the termination cap (required by law in some states) to termination drain.
- ◆ If desired, add chemicals to the tanks to control odor. Follow the directions given by the manufacturer of the chemical.

NOTE:

Dump the black tank before driving.

TOILET ***Pedal Flush***

The toilet uses water from either the fresh water tank or a city water supply. The water pump must be on or connected to city water. The toilet flushes directly into the sewage holding tank (black water).

CAUTION:

To prevent accumulation of solids below toilet, add several gallons of water to the holding tank before use. Most chemical mixtures for holding tank odor control are poisonous. Follow the product manufacturer's directions and warnings when using any holding tank additive.

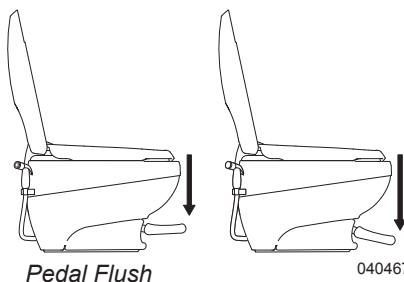
NOTE:

Do not dispose of sanitary supplies or other non-dissolving items into the toilet. Facial tissue, wet strength tissue, paper towels or an excess toilet tissue can clog the tank or termination valve.

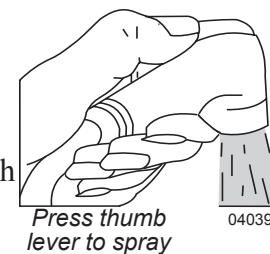
NOTE:

Avoid use of multi-ply tissue. Household toilet tissue does not break down quickly. Quick dissolving toilet tissue is available at most RV supply stores.

- ◆ To add water to the toilet before using, press and hold the pedal halfway until the desired water level is reached. Generally, more water is required only when flushing solids.
- ◆ To flush the toilet, push and hold the lever all the way down.



Water flow pressures vary. Therefore, holding the flush lever down for several seconds may be required. Release the flush lever, allowing it to snap back, permitting positive sealing around the flush ball. A small amount of water should remain in bowl.



- ◆ To operate the hand sprayer, step on foot pedal then press thumb lever on the sprayer. Direct water into the bowl.

Leak between closet flange and toilet:

Confirm that flange screws are snug. **Do not** over tighten screws. If leak continues, remove toilet and check flange height. Adjust the flange height to 7/16" above floor, if necessary. Replace flange seal if damaged.

Poor flush: Flush should be obtained within two to three seconds. If a problem persists, adjust the water level. If problems continue, the water pressure or flow rate may be low. Remove the water supply line and check flow rate. Flow rate should be at least ten quarts (9.5 liters) per minute. Water pressure should not be below 25 psi.

Bowl will not hold water: Check for and remove any foreign material from blade seal track. Check blade seal compression with mechanism. If blade seal is worn, replace.

Electric Flush

The toilet is an electric macerating toilet. To avoid damage, flush only organic material and toilet paper. The house battery cut-off switch must be on for the toilet to operate.



CAUTION:

To prevent accumulation of solids, add several gallons of water to the holding tank before use. Most chemical mixtures for holding tank odor control are poisonous. Follow the product manufacturer's directions and warnings when using any holding tank additive.

NOTE:

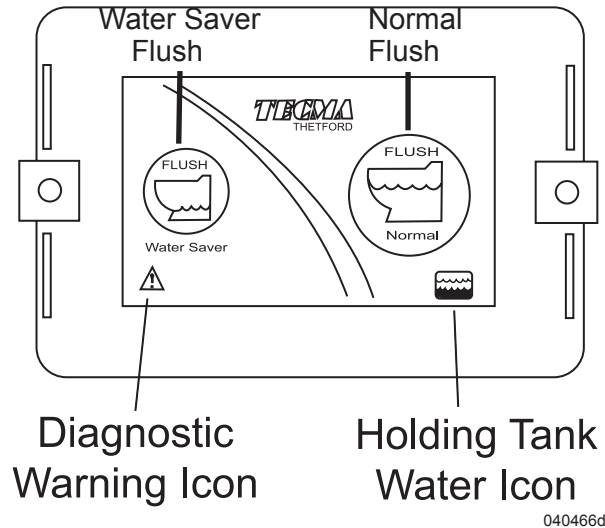
Do not dispose of sanitary supplies or other non-dissolving items into the toilet. Facial tissue, wet strength tissue, paper towels or an excess toilet tissue can clog the tank or termination valve.

Water Saver Flush:

- ◆ Press and release left button. This mode is recommended for flushing liquids and small amounts of toilet paper only.

Normal Flush:

- ◆ Press and release right button. This mode is recommended for flushing solids and toilet paper.



Diagnostic
Warning Icon

Holding Tank
Water Icon

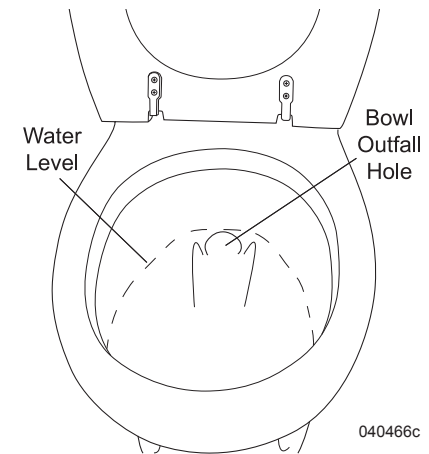
Empty Bowl:

- ◆ Press both buttons simultaneously and release. This empties the bowl and leaves it dry for travel.
- ◆ Press either button once to add water, run motor, and return to normal use.

Programming the Water Level:

The water level in the bowl can be programmed to different levels. The minimum recommended level is ½" above the bowl outfall hole. After changing water sources such as city water to the water pump, the water level may need to be adjusted.

- ◆ Press both buttons on the toilet control panel and hold.
- ◆ LEDs will flash indicating the toilet is in program mode.
- ◆ Release buttons to set the level of standing water in the bowl.



Holding Tank Level Sensors:

The toilet system has tank level sensors mounted on the outside of the black tank. On the toilet control panel is a water icon located in the bottom right corner.

Water Icon Not Lit:

- ◆ Toilet system is off, in sleep mode or not receiving power.

Water Icon Lighted Green:

- ◆ Toilet system is on and the holding tank is between empty and half full.

Water Icon Lighted Yellow:

- ◆ Toilet system is on and the holding tank is at least half full.

Water Icon Lighted Red:

- ◆ Toilet system is on and the holding tank is full.

Full Tank Lockout:

- ◆ To prevent overflow or flooding, the toilet will not flush when the system senses a full tank. This occurs when the Water Icon is red.

Emergency Override:

If the tank is full (Water Icon is red) and an emergency flush is needed, do the following:

- ◆ Press and hold either flush button for 6 seconds to flush toilet.

WARNING:

The LED warning icon will flash when the black tank is full. Flushing may cause tank overflow and potential flooding.

LED Sleep Mode:

To save power consumption when not in use, an automatic LED sleep mode is programmed on this control panel.

If the toilet is not used for 8 hours, the keypad LED lights will go out. Press any button to activate the keypad.

Cleaning

Clean the toilet bowl with a mild bathroom cleaner. Do not use chlorine or caustic chemicals, such as drain opening types, as they will damage the seals. Clean out the system by flushing several gallons of fresh water through with one cup of dry laundry detergent. Add odor control deodorant, in the amount specified for the holding tank capacity, after cleaning and every few days during use.

POISON:

Most chemical mixtures for holding tank odor control are poisonous. Follow the product manufacturer's directions and warnings when using any holding tank additive.

Maintenance

To find leaks, check behind or under toilet. Take four or five sheets of toilet tissue and wipe all the water line connections. Start at the top of the unit and work downward. When the tissue comes in contact with leaking water it immediately changes texture.

NOTE:

Before storing the motorhome, the toilet must be flushed repeatedly to remove any solids that may have built up.

CAUTION:

If the motorhome is in storage for six months, spray silicone on the toilet valve and work it back and forth. Perform this maintenance monthly (silicone will evaporate in about 30 days). Do not use a petroleum-based lubricant, damage to the seals will occur.

Toilet Shut-Off Valve:

A shut-off valve is located behind the toilet. In the event of an emergency the water line that leads into the toilet can be shut off.

Troubleshooting

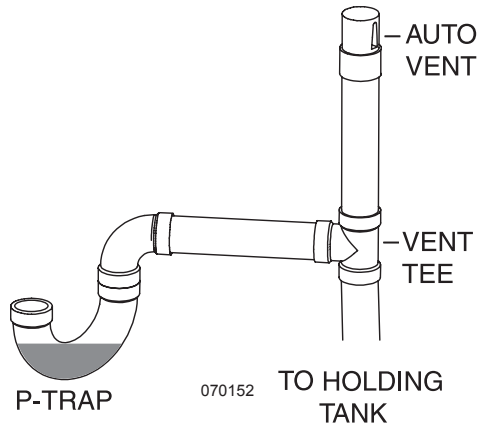
- ◆ The toilet uses a 40 Amp mini-breaker located below the pantry floor. Remove access panel at bottom of pantry.

Winterization

The toilet must be winterized to avoid freeze damage. Press both buttons until water is purged from macerator. Add 3 pints antifreeze to bowl then press then flush to ensure macerator and discharge line is winterized.

DRAIN TRAPS & AUTO VENTS

Sinks and shower drains incorporate a water trap (P-Trap) and auto vents to prevent waste water holding tank odor from entering the motorhome.



Drain Traps:

P-Traps are usually within 54" of a vent tee and must contain water to block odors. During storage water can evaporate and allow odor into motorhome. If odor is detected, run water into sinks and shower to fill P-Traps.

AutoVents:

The auto vent is designed to assist in the smooth flow of water in the drain without creating a vacuum. If stuck in the open position the auto vent can allow grey odors to enter the motorhome. Some auto vents can double as "clean outs" in the event the line needs to be snaked out.

COLD WEATHER CONDITIONS

Systems Heat

Extended use in below freezing (32° F./0° C.) weather will require operation of the furnace to protect the interior plumbing system from freeze damage. Below floor level, exposed drains and water lines can quickly freeze. To help prevent freeze damage to the holding tanks, heating pads controlled by the Systems Heat switch, are located under the grey, black and fresh water tanks.

If the motorhome is not in use when freezing temperatures can occur, it will be necessary to winterize the motorhome to prevent freeze damage. While the interior is heated through use of the furnace, plumbing located below floor level is not heated therefore exposed to potential freeze damage.

CAUTION:

Freeze damage is not covered under warranty.

System Heat Operation:

A 12 Volt DC heating pad is located under each holding tank. Turn the System Heat switch on when cool or freezing temperatures may occur. The Systems Heat indicator lamp will activate when the Systems Heat switch is turned on. The heat pads are active whenever the Systems Heat switch is on.

Requirement for Operation:

- ◆ House battery disconnect switch must be on.
- ◆ House battery cutoff switch must be on.
- ◆ Turn on the Systems Heat switch.

NOTE:

Each heating pad is rated 80 watts (approximately 6.6 Amps each). House battery power can be quickly consumed. It is recommended to hook shore power when using Systems Heat.

Cold Weather Storage

If the motorhome is stored where freezing temperatures may occur, drain the fresh water system. Begin draining the fresh water tank and allowing the water to drain.

CAUTION:

Icemakers, water filters, and water heaters all use the fresh water tank for water. These systems should be drained and stored in accordance with the OEM recommendation for winterization. Consult specific OEM manual for instructions and recommendations.

WINTERIZATION

Water, plumbing and sewer systems require winterization when the motorhome is placed in storage. The recommended method of winterizing the motorhome is using air pressure to remove liquids that may freeze and cause damage to the various systems and appliances. The lines can then be left empty or filled with an FDA approved RV antifreeze. When plumbing lines are drained, antifreeze is not necessary, and the decision to use antifreeze is left to the motorhome operator.

POISON:

Use only non-toxic FDA approved RV antifreeze that is specifically made for potable water systems. Automotive antifreeze, if ingested, can cause blindness, deafness or death.

Using Air Pressure

This process will require an air compressor and air pressure regulator to protect the potable water system from over-pressurization. Hardware stores will have the fittings necessary to connect an air hose to the potable water system. Limit air pressure to a maximum of 40 PSI. Higher pressure can damage the potable water system.

CAUTION:

It is recommended that a qualified RV service technician familiar with motorhomes, such as an authorized dealer, perform the winterization procedure.

WARNING:

Freeze damage is not covered under warranty.

1. Empty and flush the holding tanks.
2. Remove water filter bowl. Discard filter cartridge and empty remaining water. Screw filter bowl (without cartridge) onto filter head. The filter bowl will need to be emptied again as air purges water from the system.
3. Drain the fresh water tank.
4. Open hot and cold water low point drains in the service center and propane tank compartment.

WARNING:

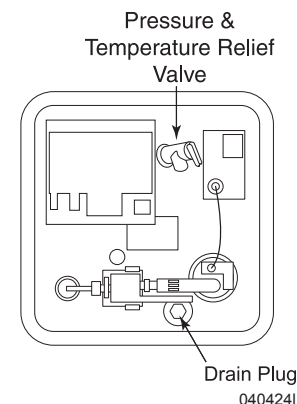
Ensure the water heater is off and water is not hot when draining the low point water drain lines. Hot water from the lines can burn or injure skin.

CAUTION:

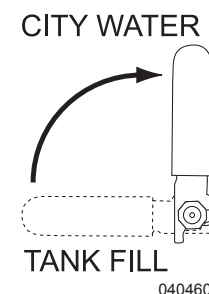
Some appliances, such as the ice maker, require special winterizing instructions not covered in this section. Refer to the specific appliance OEM manual for instructions and recommendations.

5. Turn on the water pump until all the water is cleared out of the water pump, fresh water tank and low point drains then turn the water pump off.
6. If applicable, disconnect the water line to the icemaker.

7. Open the high temperature/pressure relief valve on water heater to vent water heater. Remove water heater drain plug to allow water heater to drain.



8. Locate bypass valves at back of the water heater and set valves to the Bypass position.
9. Close hot and cold water low point drain valves.
10. Connect air supply to the City Water/Fresh Tank Fill connection. Set the City Water/Fresh Tank Fill lever to the City Water position.
11. Turn on air supply. Do not exceed 40 PSI in the potable water system.
12. One at a time, open hot and cold valves for all interior faucets and shower until only air comes out. This will clear water from potable water supply lines. Do not forget outside faucet and shower.
13. Hold toilet mechanism open (flush toilet) until only air is present.
14. Open hot and cold water low point drain valves. Allow water to finish draining from low point drains.



15. Shut off the air supply and disconnect the air hose.
16. Remove water filter bowl.
17. Use one (1) gallon of FDA approved RV antifreeze to protect various water drain lines. Pour 1 pint into the kitchen drain and 1 pint into the bath shower drain. Pour 2 pints into the bath sink drain. This will protect the P-Traps, with some of the antifreeze going into grey tank to protect the drain valve. Open the flush valve on the toilet. Pour 3 pints into the toilet to protect the black water drain valve.

POISON:

Use only non-toxic FDA Approved RV antifreeze that is specifically made for potable water systems. Never use automobile engine antifreeze. If ingested, automobile antifreeze can cause blindness, deafness or death.

CAUTION:

Clean up antifreeze spills immediately to prevent permanent staining.

18. Use a soft cloth to wipe out the sinks and shower to protect the surfaces from stains.
19. Leave open hot and cold water low point drains. Leave open water heater drain.

When the motorhome is used again, install water heater drain plug, close water heater pressure relief valve. Close hot and cold water low point drain valves. Install new water filter. Set water heater Bypass valves to Normal Flow.

Using Non-Toxic Antifreeze

Approximately five to eight gallons of FDA approved RV antifreeze will be required to winterize the motorhome.

WARNING:

It is recommended that a qualified RV service technician familiar with motorhomes, such as an authorized dealer, perform this procedure.

POISON:

Use only non-toxic FDA Approved RV antifreeze that is specifically made for potable water systems. Never use automobile engine antifreeze. If ingested, automobile antifreeze can cause blindness, deafness or death.

WARNING:

Freeze damage is not covered under warranty.

1. Empty and flush the holding tanks.
2. Remove water filter bowl. Discard filter cartridge and empty remaining water. Screw filter bowl (without cartridge) onto filter head.
3. Drain the fresh water tank and close the tank supply valve to the water pump.
4. Open hot and cold water low point drains in the water service center and propane tank bay.

WARNING:

Ensure the water heater is off and water is not hot when draining the low point water drain lines. Hot water from the lines can burn or injure skin.

CAUTION:

Some appliances, such as the ice maker, require special winterizing instructions not covered in this section. Refer to the specific appliance OEM manual for instructions and recommendations.

5. Turn on the water pump until all the water is cleared out of the water pump, fresh water tank and low point drains then turn the water pump off.
6. If applicable, disconnect the water line to the icemaker.
7. Open the high temperature/pressure relief valve on the water heater to vent water heater. Remove water heater drain plug to allow water heater to drain.
8. Locate bypass valves at back of the water heater and set valves to the Bypass position.
9. Close hot and cold water low point drain valves.

CAUTION:

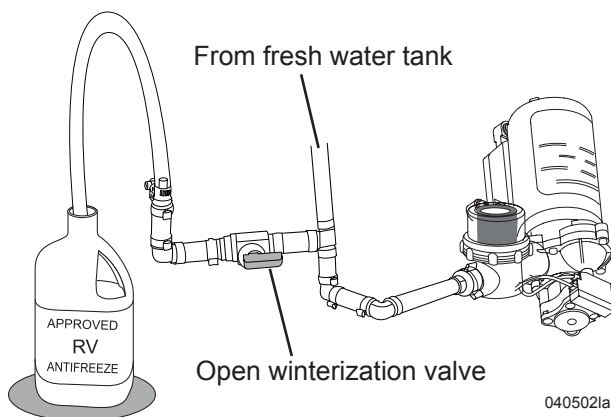
Ensure the fresh water tank is completely drained as RV approved antifreeze will not enter the fresh water tank.

10. Position the City Water/Fresh Tank Fill lever to the City Water position.
11. Insert winterization hose into antifreeze solution.

12. Close fresh water tank shut off valve.
Open winterization valve.
13. Turn On the water pump.
14. Open all faucets, one at a time, hot and cold starting with the faucet farthest from the pump, including exterior shower and faucet. Turn faucets off when a small amount of antifreeze appears.
15. Hold the toilet flush mechanism open (flush toilet) until a small amount of antifreeze appears.
16. Use a soft cloth to wipe out the sinks, shower and toilet to protect surface from antifreeze stains.
17. Turn water pump off.

CAUTION:

Clean up antifreeze spills immediately to prevent permanent staining.



Winterization procedure using non-toxic antifreeze

De-Winterization

1. Open fresh water tank low drain valve
2. Open cold water low point drain valve and hot water low point drain valve
3. Allow any water to drain.
4. Close cold water low point drain valve and hot water low point drain valve
5. Close fresh water tank low point drain valve.
6. Fill fresh water tank with water.
7. Reconnect the power supply line for the water pump.
8. Install new water filter (see "Water Filter").
9. Turn water pump on and operate all faucets, one at a time, until clear water is present.
10. If applicable, cycle ice maker several times until fresh water is present and reconnect valve outlet line.
11. Fill water heater with water. Turn bypass valve at back of water heater to Normal Flow position.

CAUTION:

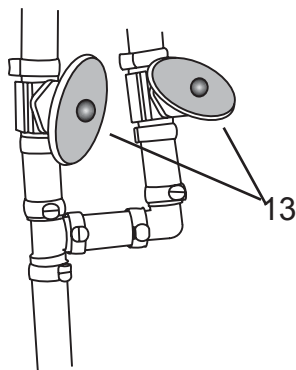
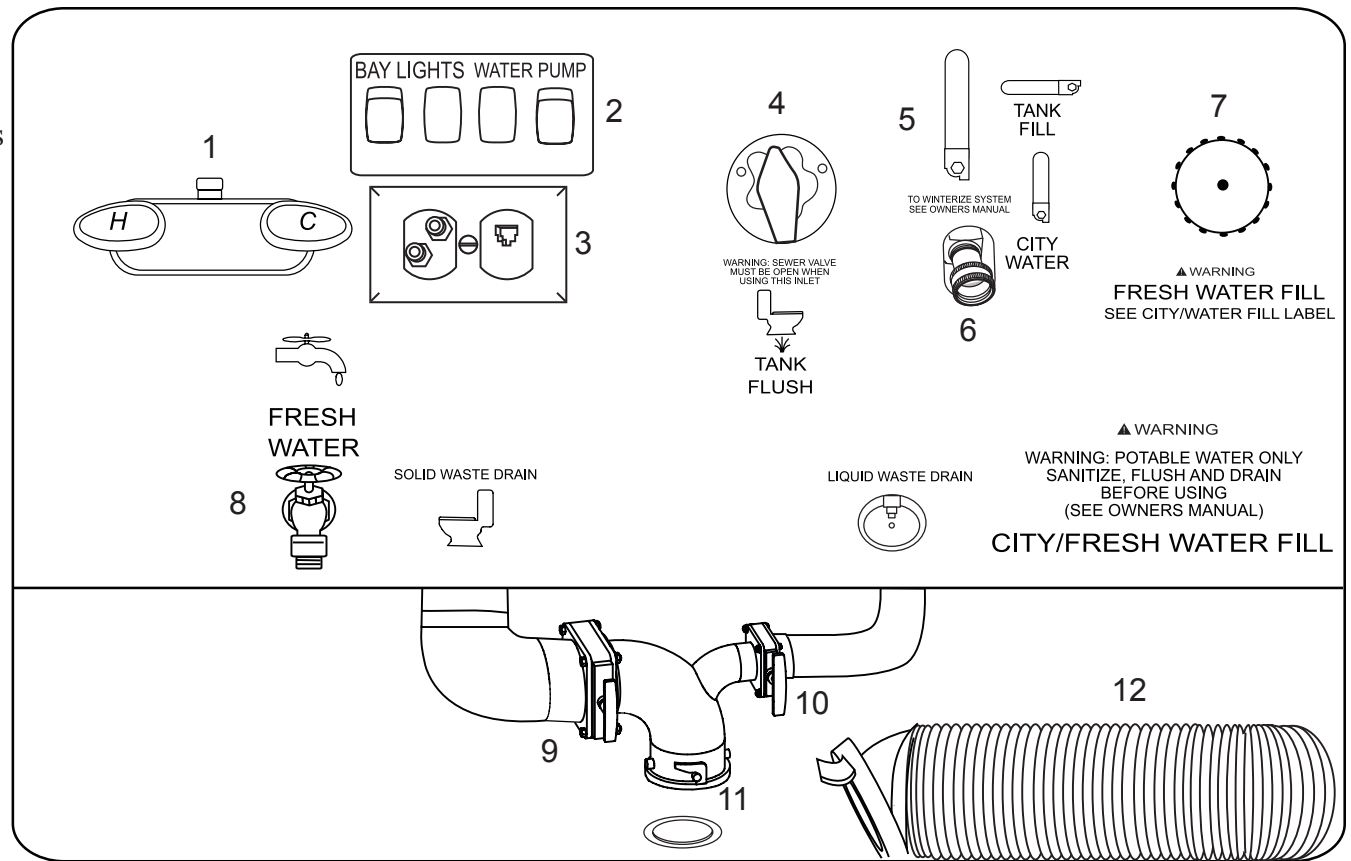
Discard the first two trays of ice from the icemaker. They may contain contaminants.

NOTE:

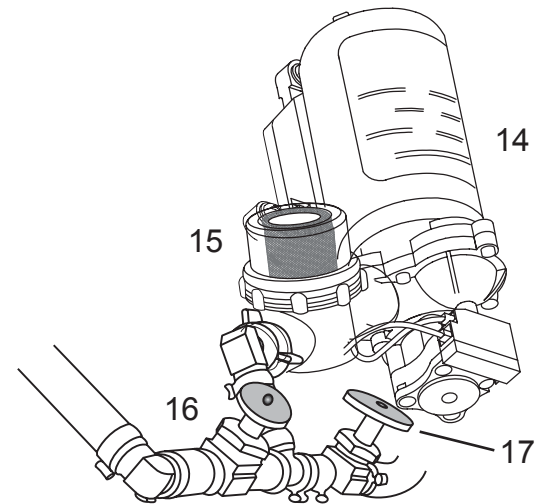
Depending on length of storage, the fresh water tank may need to be sanitized.

WATER SERVICE CENTER

1. Exterior Faucet
2. Water Pump and Bay Light Switches
3. Satellite, Shore Cable & Phone Inputs
4. Sewage Tank Flush Connection
5. City/Fresh Water Fill Handle
6. City Water/Fresh Tank Fill Connection
7. Gravity Fill Port
8. Fresh Water Spigot
9. Black Tank (Solid Waste) Drain Valve
10. Grey Tank (Liquid Waste) Drain Valve
11. Common Termination Drain
12. Sewage Hose
13. Fresh Water (Hot and Cold) Low Point Drain Valves
14. Water Pump
15. Water Pump Filter
16. Winterization Valve
17. Fresh Water Tank Shutoff Valve



Typical Water Center

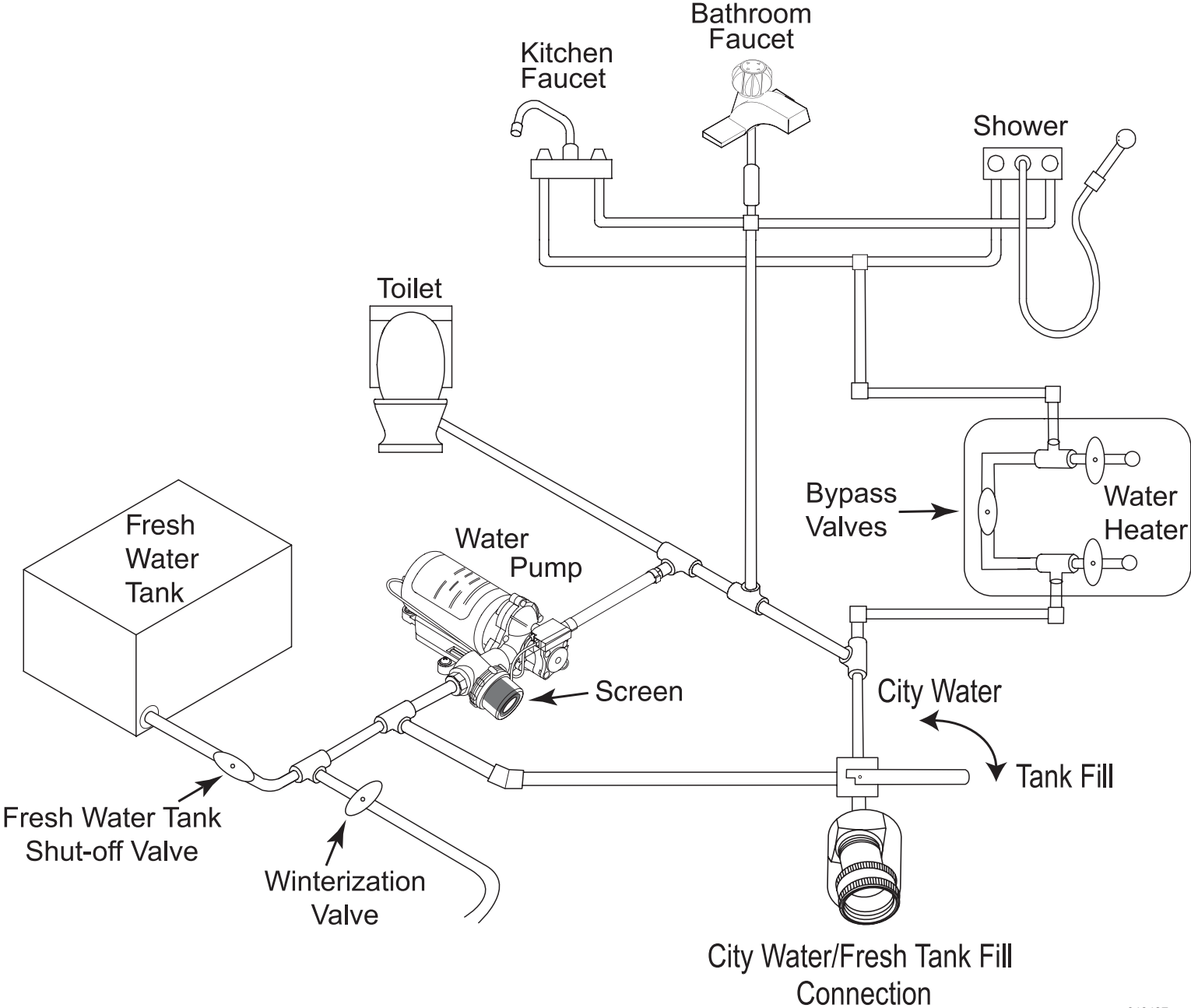


040592mf

NOTE

Layout of the water service center and location of components will vary with floor plans, options, and changes to the motorhome.

WATER SYSTEM DIAGRAM



040487va

NOTES

This image shows a blank sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

Propane Systems

Section 7



PROPANE SYSTEMS	136
PROPANE DETECTOR	137
Testing	138
Alarm	138
Maintenance	139
PROPANE EMERGENCY PROCEDURES.....	139
PROPANE TANK.....	139
Measurement	139
Tank Capacity	139
Tank Filling	139
Tank Operation	140
ACCESSORY HOOKUP	140
PROPANE FUNDAMENTALS	141
PROPANE REGULATOR.....	141
Manometers	142
PROPANE HOSE INSPECTION.....	143
PROPANE DISTRIBUTION LINES	144
PROPANE CONSUMPTION	144
PROPANE SAFETY TIPS	145

PROPANE SYSTEMS

This section contains safety information and operating instructions of the Liquefied Petroleum Gas (propane) system and related equipment in the motorhome. Some items discussed may not be applicable to all motorhomes. More detailed information with CAUTION or WARNING instructions for various equipment, other than items within this section, can be found in the OEM manuals in the owner's information box.

NOTE:

Some appliance displays and appliance manuals may refer to LP-Gas as a fuel source; however, the actual fuel source used and required for these appliances is propane. The phrase "LP-Gas" is synonymous with not only propane, but butane and propane/butane mixtures. Since propane is the actual fuel required, the term "Propane" will be used throughout this manual except for references to third party appliances (such as the refrigerator) that include the term "LP-Gas" on their displays or other literature.



Propane Overview:

The tank mounted in the motorhome contains propane under high pressure. As fuel is used, the liquid vaporizes and passes through the primary tank valve to a regulator that reduces pressure. Low-pressure gas is then distributed to components through a pipe manifold system.

Component ignition problems are commonly caused by air in the manifold system or incorrect gas pressure. **Do not** attempt to adjust the regulator. Adjustments must be made by a dealer or an authorized service personnel with the proper equipment. In higher elevations or extreme cold weather (10° F/-12° C or lower) a shortage of propane may be experienced. If propane is going to be used in higher elevations or cold climates for a long period of time, have authorized service personnel adjust the propane regulator for these conditions.

Propane System Testing:

Have the propane system tested by an authorized dealer or service center at least once a year and before every extended trip. The test will include having the system checked for leaks and the regulator pressure checked and tested for functionality. Although the manufacturer and the dealer test the system carefully for leakage, travel vibrations can loosen fittings.

WARNING:

When storing portable propane tanks that are not connected to a propane system, install an approved plug in the tank outlet hole to prevent leaks. Do not store or transport empty propane tanks, portable tanks, gasoline or other flammable liquids in the interior area of the motorhome. Keep open flame and spark producing materials away from the propane area. Shut off all appliances and the primary propane tank valve when the motorhome is in storage. If this warning is ignored, a fire or explosion could result.

Propane Leaks:

Leaks (identified by the odor of rotten eggs or sulfur) can be easily found by applying a leak detector solution on all connections. **Do not** light a match, have an open flame or use any spark producing equipment or appliance to test for leaks. Leaks can usually be repaired by tightening the fittings. If not, turn off the primary gas valve at the tank. Hand-tighten the primary valve only. Do not use a wrench or pliers as over tightening may damage valve seats and cause leaks. If a leak is suspected, immediately see an authorized dealer or service center for repairs.

WARNING:

Propane is highly volatile and extremely explosive. Do not use matches or a flame to test for leaks. Only approved propane leak testing solution for leak detection should be used. Unapproved solutions can damage copper tubing and brass fittings. A liquid dish soap solution of 10 parts water may be used. Shake the solution until bubbles form and then apply the mixed solution to fittings and accessory control valves. All fittings tested should be thoroughly rinsed and dried after testing. Do not attempt to adjust propane regulators. Only qualified service personnel should perform maintenance or repairs to the propane system.

NOTE:

It may be illegal to travel in some States and Canadian provinces with the primary propane shut-off valve open. Failure to comply with these State and Canadian province requirements may result in fines and/or pose a safety hazard.

PROPANE DETECTOR

The propane detector is required safety equipment in RVs. American National Standards Institute (ANSI) 1192 - Fire & Life Safety 6.4.8 Propane Detectors states

“All recreational vehicles equipped with a propane appliance and electrical system shall be equipped with a propane detector listed as suitable for use in recreational vehicles under the requirements of UL 1484 and installed according to the terms of its listing.”



Propane Detector

Propane is heavier than air and will settle to the lowest point in the motorhome. The propane detector is also sensitive to other fumes, such as hair spray, of which most contain butane as the propellant. Butane, like propane, is heavier than air and will settle to the floor level. Sulfated batteries (rotten egg odor) will also sound the alarm. When this occurs, reset the detector to stop the alert sound.

About the Propane Detector:

Be aware of the difference between a leak versus propane escaping from an unlit, open burner. Pure propane vapors from a leaking pipe or fitting are heavier than air and will build up heaviest concentration at the leak and float down to mix with air. If a burner is left on, the area around the burner, range and adjoining counter space is combustible and can cause injury and damage when ignited. This condition will exist for an extended time period. Eventually, the propane will reach the detector location and cause the alarm to sound.

CAUTION:

The propane detector indicates the presence of propane only at its sensor. Combustible levels of propane may be present in other areas. The detector is intended for detection of propane only.

The propane detector is not designed to detect other types of gas. However, some products may cause the detector to alarm, such as alcohol, liquor, kerosene, gasoline, deodorants, colognes, propellant used in spray cans and cleaning solvents. In some cases, vapors from glue and adhesive used in the manufacturing of the motorhome may also cause the detector to alarm for several months after the date of manufacture. If it is determined that the detector has false alarmed because of the above mentioned nuisance gases, reset the detector and ventilate the motorhome with fresh outside air. Take precautions to ensure one of these cases has not masked an actual propane alarm condition.

The propane detector draws less current than one instrument panel lamp and will detect gas until the battery is drained down to 7.0 Volts. A voltage higher than 7.0 Volts is needed for the detector to operate properly. If the power source is disconnected, or if the power is otherwise interrupted, the detector will not operate.

The propane detector has a self-check circuit running at all times while the detector is powered. In the event that the circuitry fails, a failure alarm will sound and the operating indicator will cease to light.

The propane detector is wired to the house batteries. This allows reliable protection by alerting the build up of potentially dangerous levels of propane.

Propane Detector Operation:

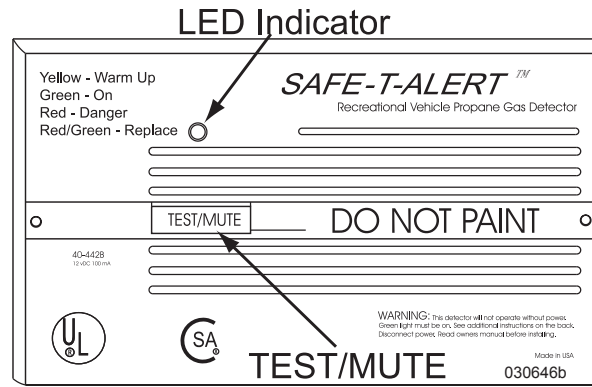
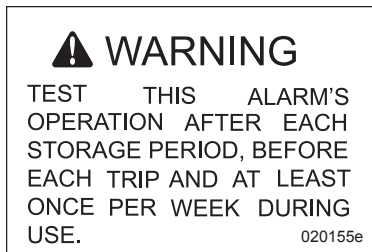
Upon first application of power the LED will flash yellow for three minutes while the detector is stabilizing. At the end of the start cycle the LED will turn Green indicating full operation. If the detector senses unsafe levels of propane it will immediately sound an alarm. The propane detector operates on 12 Volt DC, with a current draw of less than 1/10th of one amp.

CAUTION:

The detector will not sound an alarm during the three minute warm up cycle.

Testing

Press the Test switch any time during the warm up cycle or while in normal operation. The LED will turn red and an alarm will sound. Release the switch. This is the only way to test full operation of the detector.



Alarm

The red LED will flash and the alarm will sound whenever dangerous levels of propane are detected. The detector will continue to alarm until the gas clears or the Test/Mute switch is pressed.

Alarm Procedures:

- ◆ Turn off all propane appliances (stove, water heater, furnace, refrigerator) and extinguish all flames and smoking material. Evacuate immediately. Leave doors and windows open.
- ◆ Turn off primary shut-off valve on the propane tank.
- ◆ Determine and repair the source of the leak. If necessary, contact a qualified professional for service.

POTENTIAL SOURCES OF PROPANE LEAKS WHEN OPERATING THE MOTORHOME	
◆ Cooktop burners ◆ Oven ◆ Refrigerator ◆ Water Heater	◆ Defective Propane Connection ◆ Defective Regulator ◆ Portable Propane Powered Appliances/Accessories ◆ Furnace

WARNING:

Do not operate any electric switch. This can produce a spark and ignite the gas.

CAUTION:

Do not re-enter until the problem is corrected.

Alarm Mute:

Press the Test/Mute switch when the detector is in alarm.

- ◆ The red LED will continue to flash and the alarm will beep every 30 seconds until the gas level has dropped to a safe level.
- ◆ The LED will flash green until the end of the Mute cycle.
- ◆ If dangerous gas levels return before the end of the Mute cycle, the alarm will beep four times and return to phase 1.
- ◆ After two minutes the detector will return to normal operation (solid green) or resound the alarm if dangerous levels of propane remain in the area.

Fault Alarm:

The alarm will sound twice every 15 seconds should the detector develop a fault. The LED will flash alternately from red to green and the Mute switch will not respond to any command. The propane detector must be repaired or replaced.

Maintenance

1. Vacuum the detector cover weekly (more frequently in dusty locations) using the soft brush attachment of a vacuum.
2. Do not spray cleaning agents or waxes directly onto the front panel. This can damage the sensor, cause an alarm or cause a detector malfunction.

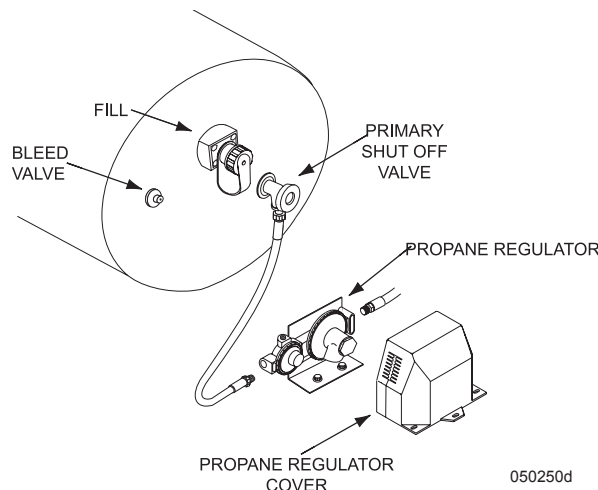
PROPANE EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

If a propane smell is detected (a rotten egg or sulfur smell) at any time, perform the following steps immediately:

- ◆ Shut off propane appliances.
- ◆ Manually turn off the primary shut-off valve at the propane tank.
- ◆ **Do not** operate any electric switch. This can produce a spark and ignite the gas.
- ◆ Open windows and doors.
- ◆ Evacuate the motorhome. Stay clear of the surrounding area.
- ◆ Keep all ignition sources out of the area.
- ◆ Contact a qualified service technician to find the source and repair the propane leak.

WARNING:

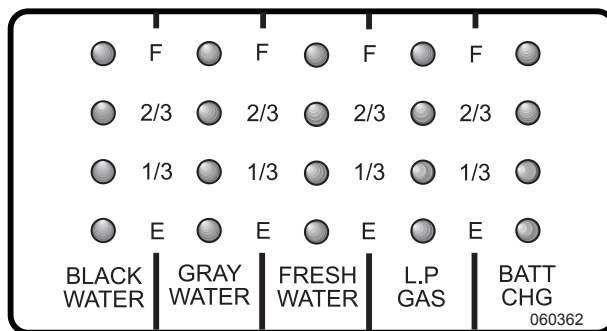
A fire or explosion from ignited propane or propane fumes can cause serious injury or death.



PROPANE TANK Measurement

The motorhome is equipped with a monitor panel to aid in managing the propane tank. The monitor panel is located on the systems panel. The switch marked Test is a momentary switch which requires being held down along with a corresponding scale reading.

Propane and Fresh Tank	Holding and Grey Tanks
Red = Empty	Green = Empty
Red = 1/3 Full	Yellow = 1/3 Full
Yellow = 2/3 Full	Red = 2/3 Full
Green = Full	Red = Full



Tank Capacity

NOTE:

This chart reflects product specifications available at the time of printing.

Propane Tank Capacity
*16 Gallons
*Actual filled propane capacity is 80% of listing due to safety shut-off required on tank.

NOTE:

Propane tank capacity is estimated based upon calculations provided by the tank manufacturer and represents approximate capacity. The actual “usable capacity” may be greater or less than the estimated capacity. Actual full liquid capacity is 80% of full tank capacity.

Tank Filling

Woodall’s Campground and Trailer Guide, and other similar publications, list refueling stations. Many travel parks sell propane. Before filling the propane tank, shut off pilot lights, appliances and igniters to prevent a fire or explosion. Have a trained service person fill the propane tank.

WARNING:

Before entering a refueling station, turn off all pilot lights and propane operated appliances. Most propane appliances used in motorhomes are vented to the outside. Fuel vapors can enter an appliance vent on a motorhome that is parked close to a gasoline pump, resulting in an explosion or fire.

WARNING:

Extinguish all sources of heat, sparks, flames and smoking materials within a 50' radius during the fueling process.

The propane tank must be filled to the proper level to allow for expansion and vaporization of liquid. An overfilled tank can damage the propane regulator and/or cause the safety valve to open and release pressure emitting a strong rotten egg odor near the tank and/or a hissing noise may be detected.

WARNING:

Small amounts of propane can escape and evaporate during the fueling process. Protect bare skin. Instant freezing will occur if exposed to propane.

** DANGER**

ALL PILOT LIGHTS, APPLIANCES AND THEIR IGNITORS (SEE OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS) SHALL BE TURNED OFF BEFORE REFUELING OF MOTOR FUEL TANKS AND/OR PROPANE CONTAINERS. FAILURE TO COMPLY COULD RESULT IN DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY.

** WARNING**

DO NOT FILL PROPANE CONTAINER(S) TO MORE THAN 80 PERCENT OF CAPACITY. FAILURE TO COMPLY COULD RESULT IN A FIRE OR PERSONAL INJURY.

** CAUTION**

THIS PROPANE PIPING SYSTEM IS DESIGNED FOR USE WITH PROPANE ONLY. DO NOT CONNECT NATURAL GAS TO THIS SYSTEM.

Securely cap inlet when not connected for use. After turning on propane, except after normal cylinder replacement, test propane piping and connections to appliances for leakage with soapy water or bubble solution. Do not use products that contain ammonia or chlorine.

020155i

DD-37

Propane exists in both liquid and vapor form within the tank. A full tank is approximately 80% liquid. The pressure inside the tank varies with the temperature of the liquid. All tanks are required to have a safety pressure relief device to release excess pressure. Actual full liquid capacity is approximately 80% of full tank capacity. The monitor panel is adjusted for this and will indicate full at this point.

NOTE:

If the tank is new and being filled for the first time, inform the service technician to purge any air from the tank prior to filling.

Tank Operation

- ◆ Manually open the primary shut-off valve located on the propane tank when operating appliances.
- ◆ Turn off the primary shut-off valve on the propane tank when the tank is being filled, during travel, in between trips and while in storage.
- ◆ Hand-tighten the primary valve only. Do not use a wrench or pliers. This will over-tighten the valve. The primary valve is designed to be closed by hand. Over-tightening may permanently damage the valve seat.

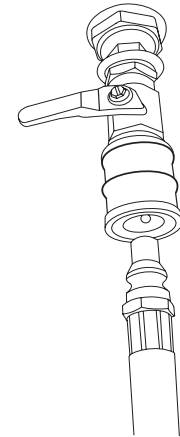
CAUTION:

In some States and Canadian provinces, it may be illegal to drive the motorhome while primary valve on the propane tank is open.

ACCESSORY HOOKUP

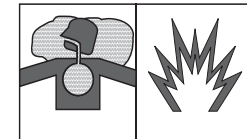
An auxiliary remote propane hookup is for external propane accessories and to be used for external components only. For safety, only approved propane quick disconnect fittings and flexible hose should connect external accessories to the remote hookup. A propane quick disconnect fitting should be installed by a qualified agency as defined in the National Fire Protection Association NFPA (Fire) 54-02 code.

CAUTION
SHUT OFF GAS SUPPLY BEFORE
DISCONNECTING APPLIANCE.
ATTENTION
COUPER LE GAS AVANT DE
DECONNECTER L'APPAREIL



050285

Propane quick disconnect located in cubside bay

** WARNING**

Hazardous vapors, explosive and flammable gas can cause suffocation, severe injury or death.

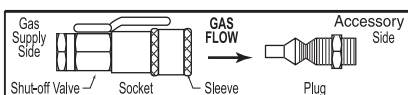
020155b

The exterior propane quick disconnect is located in a curbside compartment with the propane tank.

INSPECTION:

Check for leaks on all connections each time the remote propane is used. If a leak is detected, turn off the primary shut-off valve on the propane tank. Contact a qualified service center for the necessary repairs.

QUICK DISCONNECT FITTING



NOTE:

COUPLING TO BE INSTALLED BY A QUALIFIED AGENCY AS DEFINED IN THE NATIONAL FUEL GAS CODE (NFPA 54)

INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

- 1) INSTALL SOCKET WITH SHUT-OFF VALVE ON THE GAS SUPPLY SIDE
- 2) INSTALL PLUG ON THE ACCESSORY SIDE
- 3) LEAK TEST USING SOAPY WATER SOLUTION

OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

TO CONNECT:

- 1) CLOSE SHUT-OFF VALVE
- 2) PULL SOCKET SLEEVE BACK
- 3) INSERT PLUG; RELEASE SLEEVE
- 4) PUSH PLUG INTO SOCKET UNTIL SLEEVE SNAPS FORWARD
- 5) OPEN SHUT-OFF
- 6) LEAK TEST USING SOAPY WATER SOLUTION

TO DISCONNECT:

- 1) CLOSE SHUT-OFF VALVE
- 2) TO RELEASE PLUG, PULL SLEEVE BACK AWAY FROM PLUG; PULL OUT PLUG
- 3) INSERT PLUG; RELEASE SLEEVE
- 4) LEAK TEST USING SOAPY WATER SOLUTION

020155b

PROPANE FUNDAMENTALS

#Capacity	Gallon Capacity	BTU Capacity
5	1.18	107,909
10	2.36	215,807
11	2.59	237,387
20	4.72	431,613
30	7.08	647,420
40	9.43	863,226

The above capacities allow for 20% vapor space on each cylinder. Data taken from the National Fire Prevention Association (NFPA). Pamphlet #58-1998.

CONVERSIONS

Gallons to Liters (1 Gallon = 3.785 Liters)
 Fahrenheit to Celsius ($F^{\circ} - 32 \div 1.8 = C^{\circ}$)
 11 in Water Column = 6 1/4 ozs. per sq. in. pressure.
 27.7 in. Water Column = 1 lb. per sq. in. pressure.

PROPANE STATISTICS

Pounds Per Gallon	4.24
Specific Gravity of Gas	1.50
Specific Gravity of Liquid	.504
Cubic Feet Gas Per Gallon of Liquid	36.38
Cubic Feet Gas Per Pound	8.66
BTUs Per Gallon	91,502
BTUs Per Pound	21,548
Dew Point in Degrees Fahrenheit	-44° F
Vapor Pressure at 0° F	31
Vapor Pressure at 70° F	127
Vapor Pressure at 100° F	196
Vapor Pressure at 110° F	230
Flash Point	842° F

NOTE:

The propane fundamentals information is not a complete guide for the use of propane tanks or appliances. In cold climates keep propane level above 50% to keep vaporization of propane at the highest level.

BASIC FACTS ABOUT PROPANE

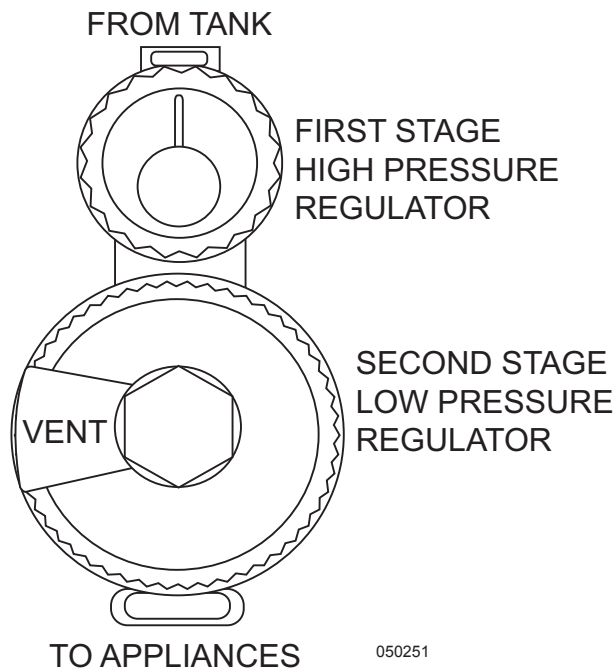
- ◆ Propane detectors are a federal requirement on all propane equipped recreation vehicles.
- ◆ Propane is a by-product produced by refining oil.
- ◆ Oil is added to propane after the refining process.
- ◆ Each liquid gallon of propane produces 91,502 BTUs (British Thermal Units).
- ◆ Temperature affects pressure of propane. Internal tank pressure can exceed 200 psi.
- ◆ Tanks or valves contain pressure relief valves. The relief valve opens at 125% above tank rating.
- ◆ Propane stops vaporizing at -44° F.
- ◆ Standard propane operating pressure is 11" of Water Column or approximately 6 1/4 ounces per square inch.
- ◆ An inch of Water Column is a measurement of applied pressure to one side of a U-Tube 1/2 filled with water at sea level. The amount of pressure required to raise the water level 11", represents 11" of Water Column.

PROPANE REGULATOR

Propane is compressed into liquid form in the tank. Only the vapor is used during combustion by an appliance. As vapor is removed from the tank, the remaining liquid will vaporize to maintain pressure that is removed during consumption. This process will continue until there is no liquid remaining in the tank. Temperature affects the vaporizing action of the liquid. If temperature of the liquid is - 44° F, the liquid remains stable with tank pressure, about 0 psi.

If liquid temperature is 100° F, the liquid quickly vaporizes with tank pressure, about 200 psi. Vapor pressure must remain relatively consistent, regardless of temperature, for the appliance heat output to remain stable. Vapor pressure regulation is performed by the regulator.

The two-stage regulator reduces vapor pressure so that it is safe for use. The first stage of the regulator reduces tank pressure to a range of 10 to 13 psig (pounds per square inch gauge). The second stage further reduces pressure to a working pressure of 0.4 psig (11 Inches of Water Column or about 6¼ ounces psi.). A vent is installed to allow the internal diaphragm to move with atmospheric pressure change. It is important to keep the vent clean and clear of obstruction or corrosion.



If the vent becomes clogged, pressure from the propane tank may cause erratic pressure regulation. If there is any corrosion, contact a qualified propane service technician. The regulator is mounted so that the vent faces downward. If the vent becomes clogged, clean it with a toothbrush.

Under normal atmospheric conditions a propane regulator will not freeze, nor will the propane. Vapor passing through the regulator will expand and cool, condensing moisture in the propane. The moisture will freeze, build up and block the vent. The possibility of freeze up is greatly reduced with the two-stage regulator.

To Prevent Freeze Up:

- ◆ Ensure the propane tank is totally free of moisture prior to filling.
- ◆ Ensure the tank is not overfilled.
- ◆ Keep the valve closed when the tank is empty.

If A Freeze Up Occurs:

- ◆ Have a propane distributor purge the tank.
- ◆ Have the propane distributor inject methyl alcohol in the tank.

Damage to the regulator can occur when the tank is overfilled. The regulator is designed to work with vapor only. This is why the tank is filled to only 80% of its liquid capacity. The other 20% allows for vaporization of the liquid. The primary vapor valve is located in the vapor section of the tank. In an overfilled tank, liquefied propane can fill the regulator. Vaporizing liquid can freeze the diaphragm.

High tank pressure on a frozen diaphragm can cause a rupture and result in erratic pressure regulation. This is why it is important to have the propane pressure checked for proper pressure and accurate regulation during appliance operation. Erratic pressure regulation dramatically affects refrigerator operation on propane.

WARNING:

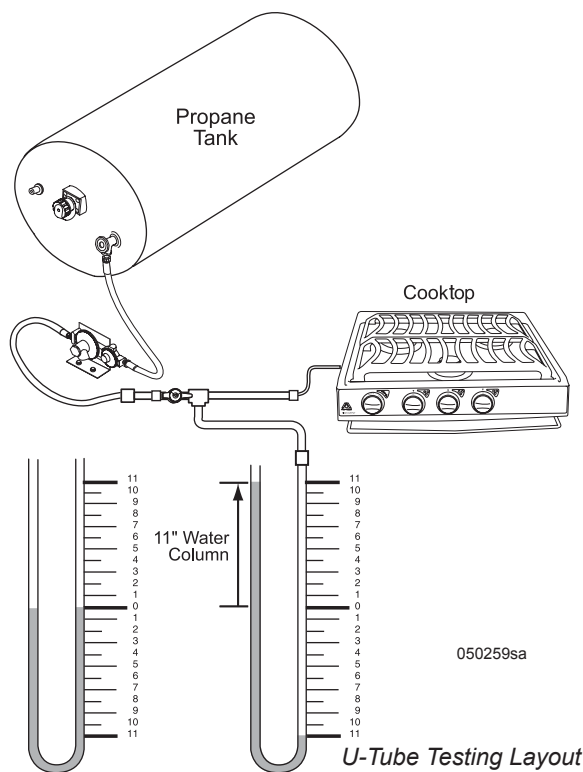
Do not attempt to adjust the regulator. Adjustments require special equipment. Failure to follow these instructions may result in a fire or explosion, and can cause severe personal injury or death. Do not operate propane appliances until the propane pressure is checked and a leak down test is performed.

Manometers

The manometer is the best way to accurately determine propane pressure. There are two different styles of manometers: Gauge and U-tube. Propane pressure is measured in Inches of Water Column. This is the amount of pressure applied to one side of a U-shaped tube half filled with water. The amount of pressure needed to raise the column of water 11" represents 11 Inches of Water Column.

TIP:

Attach the manometer gauge to the accessory hookup line to avoid loosening any interior propane line connections.



PROPANE HOSE INSPECTION

The hose manufacturer suggests that a flexible propane supply hose undergo regular inspection. As a guideline, it is recommended that all flexible propane lines connecting the slide-out, appliances and tanks be inspected in the spring and fall of each year by a qualified RV technician.

Inspection tips:

Hose strength is controlled by the plies of reinforcement. Damage in this area cannot be tolerated. It is important that if a damaged propane hose is found, the source of the damage be determined and corrected prior to the replacement. Small cuts, nicks, or gouges that do not go completely through the cover are not cause for replacement of the hose. Inspection should be performed when the hose is not under pressure.

NOTE:

Pricking of the cover in the manufacture of this type of hose is common and necessary for satisfactory hose performance. Consequently, the uniformly pricked cover should not be viewed with alarm.

Cause for hose replacement:

- ◆ Damage to the textile reinforcement or wire braid; wire braid reinforced hose, which has been kinked or flattened so as to permanently deform the wire braid in the un-pressurized state.
- ◆ Blistering or loose outer cover.
- ◆ Slippage; evidenced by the misalignment of the hose and coupling and/or the scored or exposed area where slippage has occurred.

CAUTION:

Only a qualified RV service technician should complete replacement of propane components.

Additional suggested maintenance:

After performing extensive testing, the manufacturer of the flexible propane supply hoses has determined that the hoses be replaced every ten (10) years as failure rate may increase after this period of time. The motorhome manufacturer recommends following this guideline to assure continued safety and dependable use.

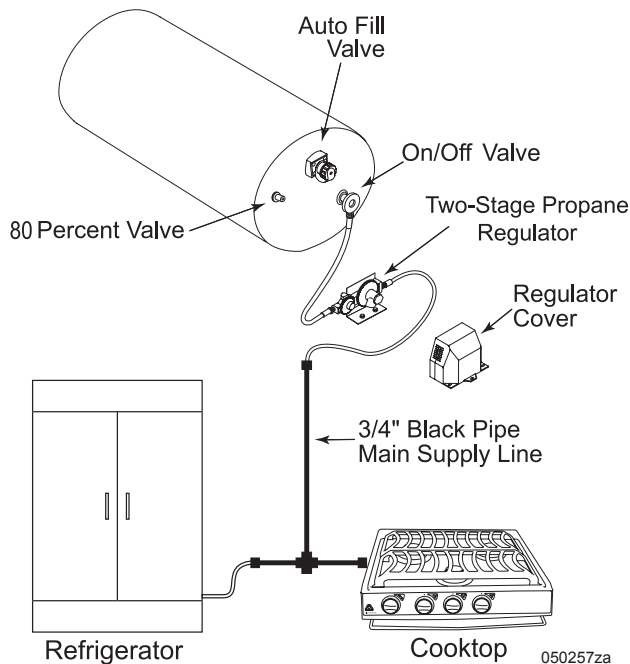
PROPANE DISTRIBUTION LINES

A primary manifold black steel pipe running throughout the motorhome distributes propane to secondary lines. All secondary lines leading to propane appliances are made of copper tubing with flared fittings. It is recommended that propane distribution work be performed by an authorized dealer or an authorized service technician.

INSPECTION:

Inspect the rubber flexible lines twice a year for abrasions, tears, kinks or other signs of damage.

If a propane leak is suspected, have the system inspected and repaired by a qualified service technician as soon as possible.



PROPANE CONSUMPTION

Each gallon of propane produces 91,502 BTUs of heat. One 27 gallon tank produces two million BTU's. Total consumption depends on the rate of usage by each appliance and the operating time. The cooktop typically uses the most propane.

Determine Fuel Consumption:

To determine approximately how many hours an appliance will operate on one gallon of propane, use the following formula:

- ◆ Propane appliances are rated in Input BTU (British Thermal Units). The rating is usually stamped or printed on a tag affixed to the appliance. For example: the Input rating of the appliance is 10,000 BTUs.
- ◆ One gallon of propane produces 91,502 BTUs.
- ◆ Divide the amount of BTUs of one gallon of propane (91,502) by the rating on the appliance in this example 10,000. Net continuous operation time for one gallon of propane for this appliance would be approximately 9.2 hours.

The above formula can be useful when trying to determine the approximate length of time a tank of propane will last. Generally, propane appliances do not continuously operate. An example would be the typical cycling of the refrigerator.

Determining how long a tank of Propane will last:

- ◆ Combine the BTU input totals of all appliances and the approximate length of time these appliances operate per day.
- ◆ Multiply the number of liquid gallons in the propane tank by 91,502.
- ◆ Divide the total of BTUs of the propane tank by the total number of BTUs the appliances consume, equals the approximate number of hours of operation before refueling.

Typical Appliance BTU Ratings

Cooktop
Front - 9,500 BTU
Small - 6,500 BTU

Refrigerator (Norcold)
4-door - 2,200 BTU

Furnace
30K BTU

WARNING:

Propane is highly volatile and extremely explosive. Do not use matches or open flame to test for leaks. Use only approved propane leak testing solution to test for leaks. Unapproved solutions can damage copper tubing and brass fittings. Do not attempt to adjust the propane regulator without the use of proper equipment. Improper propane regulator adjustment will affect the performance of propane operated appliances. Incorrect flame or explosion can occur. Only qualified personnel should perform any maintenance or repair to the propane system.

PROPANE SAFETY TIPS

Propane is one of the safest and most reliable fuels available on the market when handled properly. Propane, however, does have a great explosive potential if handled improperly. Danger is minimized by becoming familiar with and following a few safety precautions and by learning how to properly operate propane appliances. Use of propane requires the responsibility to enforce extra safety measures.

The motorhome is equipped with many propane operated appliances because it is a convenient and efficient source of fuel. Propane appliances must be operated and maintained in accordance with the product manufacturer's instructions.

The National Propane Gas Association (NPGA) has a special service program offered called GAS® (Gas Appliance System) Check. The GAS® Check program is aimed at educating users about the convenience of propane with safety and peace of mind. For information on the NPGA Gas® Check program, call 1-202-466-7200 or visit www.npga.org.

Maintenance and Safety Tips for the Propane Refrigerator and Furnace:

- ◆ Have the refrigerator and furnace systems inspected annually by an authorized service center.
- ◆ Have the venting system checked for blockage before using the refrigerator or furnace for the first time each season. Insects may have built nests that will obstruct flow.

- ◆ At the first indication of incomplete combustion (yellow flame instead of a blue flame or soot is present) contact a service technician. Improper combustion can cause carbon monoxide buildup, which is potentially fatal.

Maintenance and Safety Tips for the Propane Cooktop:

- ◆ Burner flame should be a blue color, which indicates complete combustion. If not, have the cooktop serviced by a qualified technician.
- ◆ Do not cover the oven bottom with foil. Air circulation will be restricted.
- ◆ **Do not** use the propane cooktop for heating purposes.
- ◆ Ensure children understand never to turn or play with the knobs on the front of the propane cooktop.

Maintenance and Safety Tips for the Propane Water Heater:

- ◆ Have the water heater venting system inspected annually or before first use of the season.
- ◆ Keep flammable substances away from the water heater. **Do not** store items close to it as this may block the airflow the water heater needs to operate completely.
- ◆ At the first indication of incomplete combustion (yellow flame instead of a blue flame or soot is present) call a service technician immediately. Improper combustion can cause carbon monoxide buildup, which is potentially fatal.

NOTES

This image shows a blank sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

House Electrical

Section 8



HOUSE ELECTRICAL - INTRODUCTION	148	INVERTER	155	FUSES & CIRCUIT BREAKERS - 12 VOLT DC...159	
BATTERY DISCONNECT - HOUSE	149	Providing AC Power with Inverter.....	155	BATTERIES - HOUSE	161
BATTERY CUT-OFF SWITCH	149	Battery Charging with Inverter	155	Battery Maintenance	161
SHORE POWER HOOK-UP	150	Factory Default Settings	156	Testing the Battery	163
TRANSFER SWITCH	152	Battery Temperature Sensor	156	Charge Time & Consumption Rate.....	165
GENERATOR - 120 VOLT AC	152	Power Assist.....	156	LIGHTS.....	166
Pre-Start Checks.....	152	LOAD CENTER - 120/240 VOLT AC	157	Interior Halogen.....	166
Starting the Generator	153	Power Control System	157	Incandescent Light.....	166
Stopping the Generator.....	153	Circuit Breakers.....	158	TYPICAL ELECTRICAL LAYOUT	167
Powering the Equipment.....	153	GFCI Breakers & Outlets	158		
Generator Fuel.....	154	DISTRIBUTION PANEL - HOUSE 12 VOLT DC...159			
Resetting the Circuit Breaker.....	154				
Generator Exercise	154				

HOUSE ELECTRICAL - INTRODUCTION

This section contains guidelines, procedures and information on the electrical system and operation of various components. Refer to the OEM manuals included in the Owner's Information File box for respective, in-depth, individual component operating instructions.

General Overview:

The motorhome can utilize various sources of electrical power: shore power connection, generator, inverter, chassis batteries and house batteries. All of these electrical power sources, while independent of each other, can be combined in a variety of ways to provide a highly efficient electrical operating system. Two types of electrical systems are used: 120/240 Volt AC and 12 Volt DC.

The motorhome 120/240 Volt AC system can be operated from three different power sources: shore power, on-board generator or the inverter. Shore power is the most efficient and should be used whenever possible. The generator can be used when shore power is unavailable. The inverter supplies silent AC power by using the house batteries to power select outlets and appliances. However, inverter AC power output is limited and should be used sparingly to conserve house battery power. Two different sources supply the main AC circuit breaker panel (Load Center) with power: the 50 Amp shore power cord or the on-board generator. The transfer switch automatically selects between shore power and generator power.

WARNING:

The electrical system is engineered and tested for safety. Circuit breakers and fuses protect the electrical circuits from overloading. When planning modifications or additions to the electrical system, ensure safety of the electrical system. Please note that any modifications may void the warranty.

WARNING:

Water is electrically conductive. Do not use any electrically powered item or outlet that may be exposed to a water source. Such use can result in a serious shock causing injury or death.

12 Volt DC System:

The motorhome has two 12 Volt DC systems: chassis and house. These two systems, for the most part, are separate from one another. The house system does not operate engine functions; the engine system does not operate house functions. However, within the two systems there are some inner connections. For example: While the motorhome is driven the alternator on the engine will maintain a charge to the house batteries. Likewise, while the motorhome is plugged into shore power, or the generator is running, the chassis batteries are being charged. Each system will supply 12 Volt DC power to the 12 Volt DC distribution panels.

Chassis and House System:

The chassis and house systems have their own sets of batteries. The chassis batteries supply 12 Volt DC power to the chassis fuse boxes and the front distribution box. These panels contain mostly engine system circuits and wiring such as headlights, taillights, dashboard functions, gauges, etc. The house batteries supply 12 Volt DC power to the house distribution panel. This panel contains fuses for the house, interior lighting and appliances. Become familiar with these panels and the items they operate.

Maintenance:

It is important to keep the 12 Volt DC systems in good working order as many of these systems use electronics. These systems, with their incorporated electronics, are voltage sensitive. Some items can be damaged if the DC voltage is not maintained within the designed specifications.

Why Batteries are Important:

A majority of the lighting and appliances are designed to operate from 12 Volt DC (direct current) power. This is why the batteries play such an important role in the function of the motorhome. There are exceptions with appliances such as the microwave or television; however, indirectly they still operate from 12 Volt DC power, as they can be operated from the inverter. The chassis functions (engine, transmission, dash air, etc.) are also 12 Volt DC.

Shore Power:

The motorhome is equipped with a shore power cord to connect the motorhome to outside electrical services. Shore power service is the most efficient source of electrical power. The plug end of the power cord is 50 Amp 240 Volt AC. When this type of power source is not available, electrical adapters will be required to allow a proper and safe connection to the electrical service supply.

NOTE:

When 50 Amp shore service is not available, care will have to be used when operating the appliances and using the outlets to avoid overloading the shore power service.

Generator:

The generator can be selected for use when shore power is unavailable. The maximum amount of generator output power, measured in watts, is calculated at an elevation of 500 ft. above sea level. This figure decreases slightly at higher altitude. Ambient temperature also effects total maximum output. The amount of AC electrical load applied to the generator determines fuel consumption.

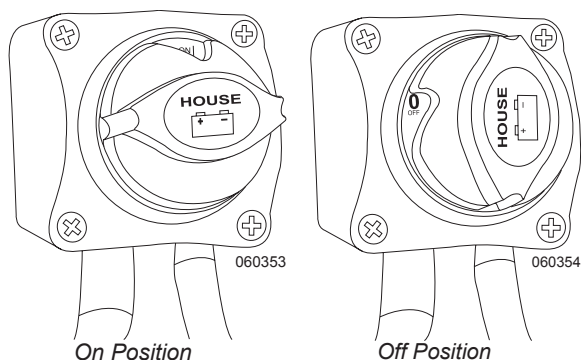
Inverter:

The inverter is an auxiliary 120 Volt AC power source that inverts 12 Volt DC house battery power to 120 Volts AC. This device has limited AC power output, measured in watts, and operates only selected appliances and outlets.

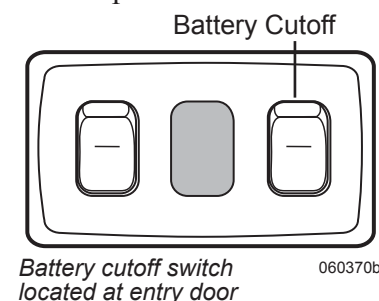
The inverter also converts 120 Volts AC power, supplied from either shore power or the generator, to 12 Volts DC power to recharge the batteries. Generally, the inverter is used when dry camping or when shore power is unavailable.

BATTERY DISCONNECT - HOUSE

The main house battery disconnect switch is located in a curbside battery compartment. The disconnect switch turns the house battery power supply on or off to the following items: inverter, house distribution (fuse) panel and house circuits in the front distribution panel. Turn the house battery disconnect switch off when the motorhome is going to be stored for more than 48 hours or before performing electrical maintenance or service. If possible, leave the motorhome plugged into an outside electrical service with the house battery disconnect switch on to help prevent the possibility of dead batteries. The house battery disconnect switch will not turn off all DC electrical items or other parasitic loads present on the house battery.

**BATTERY CUT-OFF SWITCH**

The battery cut-off switch is located inside and next to the entry door. This switch controls the 12 Volt DC power to the house fuse panels.



When the switch is activated, power is supplied to all the interior DC lighting and DC operated appliances. Some appliances require both DC and AC power to operate, such as the roof air conditioner. This switch is helpful when dry camping to conserve house battery power. Refrigerator and inverter operation are unaffected by the operation of this switch. When turned off, this switch will not stop all parasitic loads and therefore is not a substitute for the house battery disconnect switch.

CAUTION:

Avoid flash damage to electrical contacts. Turn off the interior lighting before activating the battery cut-off switch.

SHORE POWER HOOK-UP

The power requirement for the motorhome is 50 Amp 120/240 Volt AC single phase. The motorhome can be operated from 30 Amp 120 Volt AC but with limited capacity. If 50 Amp shore power service is available, connect the supplied shore power cord. If less than 50 Amp service is available, electrical adapters are required and power consumption must be reduced to avoid tripping the shore power breaker. The power cord is stored in the rear roadside compartment.

CAUTION:

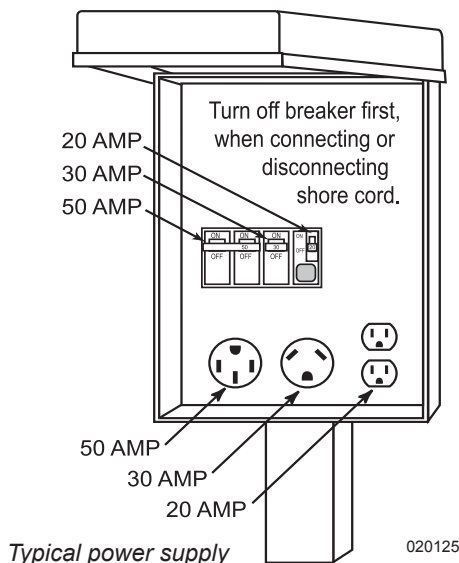
Avoid flash damage to the electrical system contacts. Turn off all appliances before hooking up to shore power, starting the generator or using the inverter.

WARNING:

Keep fingers away from metal contacts of the shore plug end. Do not stand in water when making electrical connections. Serious electrical shock and personal injury can occur. To avoid the risk of an electrical shock, turn the circuit breaker off for the power supply outlet before making the shore power connection.

CAUTION:

If there is no power to the motorhome, do not attempt to troubleshoot a problem with the power supply. Serious personal injury or death can occur. If the power supply is in doubt or suspected to be faulty, inform the park manager. It is the responsibility of the park to correct any problems with the shore power supply.



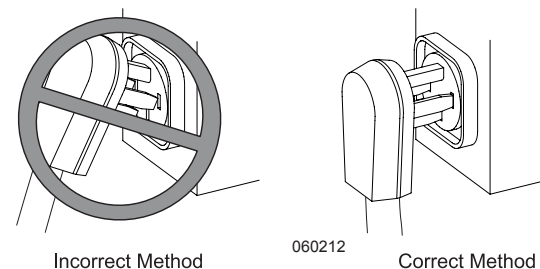
Plugging in the Shore Cord:

- ◆ The shore power cord is located in the roadside rear compartment. Unscrew the deck plate and insert the end of the shore cable through the deck. Extend a sufficient amount of cable to reach the power supply.
- ◆ Turn all appliances off.
- ◆ If 50 Amp service is available, no adapters are required. If shore power service is less than 50 amps, install the proper adapter on the shore plug to ensure a safe connection.

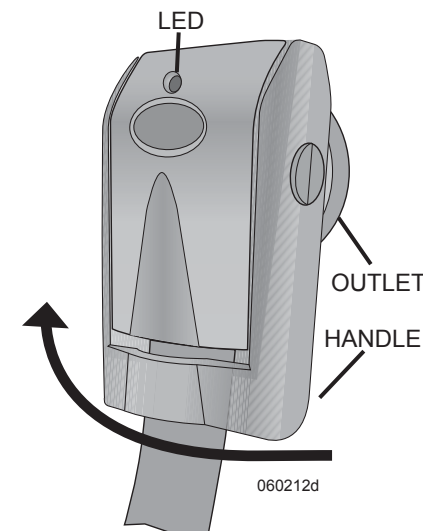
- ◆ Always turn off the shore power breaker before connecting or disconnecting the shore cord. This will prevent an accidental shock or flashing of electrical contacts.
- ◆ Align plug terminals with socket terminals. Carefully (without touching electrical contacts) push plug completely into socket until the plug is firmly seated.

**THIS CONNECTION FOR
120/240 VOLT,
3-POLE, 4-WIRE,
60 HERTZ,
50 AMPERE SUPPLY**

060203



- ◆ After the connection is made, turn the shore power breaker on. The transfer switch should make an audible click.



- ◆ The LED on the power cord will illuminate to verify power.

NOTE:

The LED does not illuminate when connected to 30 Amp or 20 Amp service. The microwave display will illuminate to indicate shore power.

When Hooked to 50 Amps:

After verifying proper voltage, wait approximately one minute for the inverter to stabilize charging of the batteries before starting air conditioners or other large AC loads.

When Hooked to 30 Amps:

Allow the inverter sufficient time to stabilize battery charging before operating electric appliances. Operate appliances and outlets in sequence rather than all at the same time.

Disconnecting the Shore Cord:

- ◆ Turn off all AC appliances.
- ◆ Turn off the shore power breaker.
This will prevent accidental shock and flashing of electrical contacts when disconnecting.
- ◆ Pivot plug handle to disconnect the plug from the outlet.
- ◆ Straighten, clean and store the cord.

Maintenance:

Routinely extend the cord full length and straighten the cord on the ground to relieve kinking.

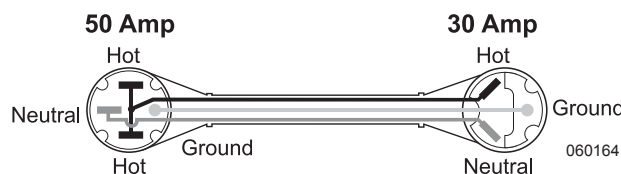
Power Supply:

Amperage supplies vary greatly depending on the amount of available current.

- ◆ The continuous amount of current through a breaker or fuse is 80% of its rated capacity.
- ◆ 50 Amp 240 Volt AC shore power service consists of two power supply conductors, a neutral and a safety ground. The 50 Amp breaker simultaneously limits each power supply conductor to no more than a short-term maximum of 50 amps for each conductor. 50 Amp 240 Volt AC service actually provides 80 continuous amps.
- ◆ Use care when hooked to anything less than 50 Amp shore service. Shore power service less than 50 Amps consists of one power supply conductor, a neutral and a safety ground; 30 Amp shore service is limited to 24 continuous Amps; 20 Amp shore service is limited to 16 continuous Amps.

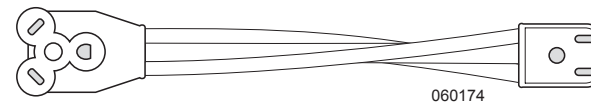
Electrical Adapters:

Different types of electrical adapters are designed to suit a variety of different needs. Only UL approved adapters should be used. The most common adapter is a 50-30 Amp adapter. This type of connector adapts the 50 Amp shore cord to a 30 Amp shore power outlet. Always install the adapter to the cord prior to making the connection to the outlet.



Typical 50 - 30 Amp Adapter

Another common adapter is a 30 to 20 Amp adapter. This type of connector adapts the 30 Amp shore cord to a 20 Amp shore power outlet.



Typical 30 - 20 Amp adapter:

CAUTION:

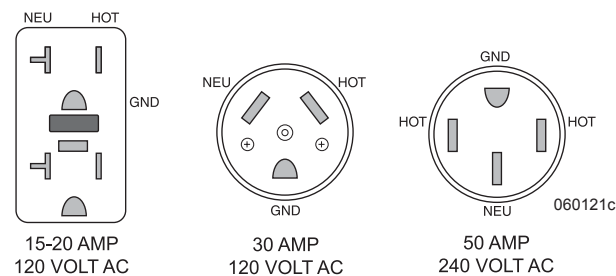
If shore power service is limited to 15 or 20 Amps, use of light duty extension cords and electrical adapters will create a voltage loss through the cord and at each electrical connection. Line voltage loss and the resistance at each electrical connection can be a hazardous combination. Damage to sensitive electronic equipment may result!

WARNING:

Avoid the risk of electrical shock or component damage by disconnecting from shore power during electrical storm activity. Use the inverter or start the generator if AC power is needed.

NOTE:

Three types of shore power outlets most commonly used are shown in the illustration.



WARNING:

Before working on the electrical system, disconnect from shore power and turn off the inverter. Disconnect the negative 12 Volt DC battery cables at the batteries. Remove rings, metal watchbands and other metal jewelry before working around batteries and connectors. Use caution when working with metal tools. If the tool contacts a battery terminal or metal connected to it, a short circuit could occur causing personal injury, explosion or fire.

TRANSFER SWITCH

The automatic transfer switch will automatically transfer AC power from the shore power cord or generator through the transfer switch to the 120/240 Volt AC breaker panel. In the event both shore and generator power are available, generator power will override shore power after a 20 second delay. This allows the generator time to stabilize output voltage before applying an AC load. Once the generator is shut down, shore power will be available after a two second delay. Plug sensitive electronic equipment (such as laptops) into a surge protector.

NOTE:

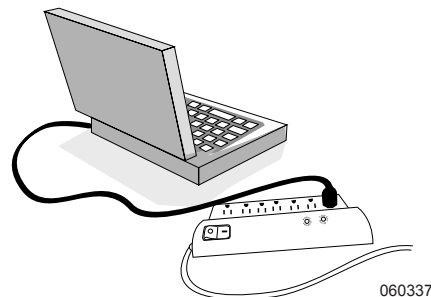
The electrical contacts of the shore cord are not electrically energized when the generator is operating,

NOTE:

To prevent damage to transfer switch contacts, discontinue appliance operation and turn off auxiliary electrical loads operated by outlets before connecting/disconnecting shore power or starting/stopping the generator.

CAUTION:

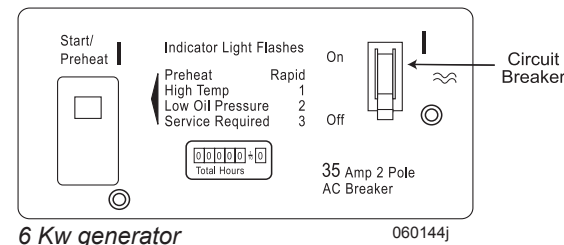
The transfer switch does not have a surge protection or high/low voltage cutout.



Use of a surge protector is recommended to protect sensitive equipment.

GENERATOR - 120 VOLT AC

The generator is located on a slideout tray in the roadside compartment. To slideout the generator, open the compartment door handle then pull the generator slideout tray open. Ensure the motorhome is level as the tray can slide out abruptly.

**WARNING:**

The motorhome must be level with accessing the generator. If unlevel, the tray can slide out abruptly.

INFORMATION

For detailed operating instructions and information refer to the generator OEM manual.

The generator can be started from the following locations:

- ♦ Generator remote switch on the dash.
- ♦ Generator switch on the generator.
- ♦ Generator switch on the systems panel.

Pre-Start Checks

Prior to the first start of the day, perform a general inspection including oil and coolant levels. Keep a maintenance log on number of hours in operation since the last service. Perform any service or maintenance that may be due.

Before Starting the Generator:

- ◆ People and animals must be clear of hazards of electrical shock and moving parts.
- ◆ All appliances and other large AC electrical loads must be off.

CAUTION:

Allow the generator to cool before removing the coolant fill cap.

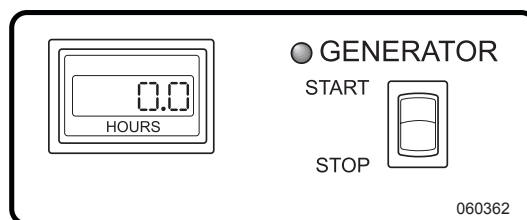
NOTE:

The generator may require priming. To prime, hold control switch in the off position. Repeat if necessary. The diesel generator fuel pick-up tube is cut to approximately $\frac{1}{4}$ tank so as not to run the main engine out of fuel.

Starting the Generator**Requirement for Generator Operation:**

- ◆ House battery disconnect switch must be on.

Push and hold the control switch in Start position until the generator starts. Release switch. The control switch may flash up to 15 seconds, indicating engine preheat.



Located on systems panel

WARNING:

Excessive cranking can overheat and damage the starter motor. Do not crank the engine more than 30 seconds at any one time. Wait at least two minutes before resuming. If the generator fails to start refer to the OEM manual.

WARNING:

When parking near high grass, be sure the hot exhaust does not come into contact with the grass as this can be a fire hazard. Hot exhaust pipe or hot exhaust gases can ignite the grass.

CAUTION:

Exhaust extensions add weight to the generator exhaust system. Exhaust piping or manifold damage can result, allowing Carbon Monoxide to accumulate or leak into the motorhome.

WARNING:

When the motorhome is parked, position the dash air conditioner vent control in the off position to prevent exhaust gases from entering the motorhome. The engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide, which is poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and/or death. Inspect the exhaust system before starting the generator. Do not block the exhaust pipe or put the motorhome where the exhaust may accumulate outside, underneath, or inside the motorhome or nearby vehicles. Operate the generator only when there is a safe dispersion of exhaust. Monitor outside conditions to ensure the exhaust continues to disperse safely.

Stopping the Generator

Turn off the appliances and disconnect other AC loads being used. Allow the generator to run unloaded for at least one minute before shutdown to allow the engine to cool.

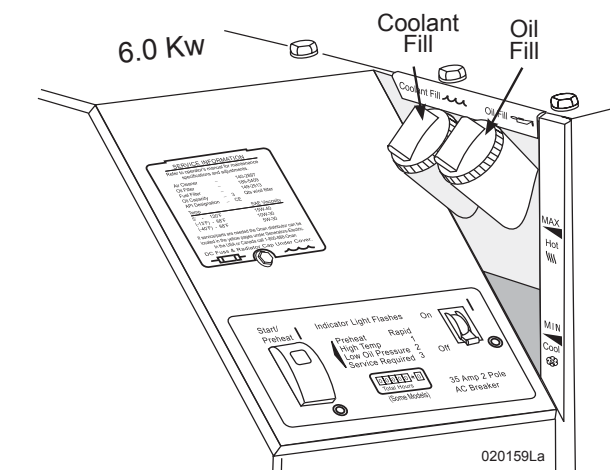
Momentarily push the control switch to the Stop position. Release the switch.

NOTE:

The generator requires only a momentary stop signal.

Powering the Equipment

The AC output of the generator powers the motorhome air conditioners, inverter, selected appliances and electrical outlets of the motorhome. The number of electrical appliances that can be operated at any given time depends upon how much power is available from the generator.



Coolant & oil level inspection

If the generator is “overloaded” or a short circuit causes “over-current,” either the generator will shut down or the circuit breaker will trip. It may be necessary to operate appliances in sequence, rather than all at the same time.

NOTE:

The generator may shut down when loaded nearly to full power and an air conditioner (or other large motor load) cycles on. Briefly during start up, an electric motor can draw up to three times the rated power. For this reason it may be necessary to operate some appliances in sequence when air conditioners or other large motor loads are on.

Compensation for temperature and elevation may also be necessary. The generator’s maximum output is rated at 500 ft. above sea level. Beyond this point, the generator will lose approximately 3.5% of its rated power for every 1000 ft. gained in elevation. High and low temperatures can also affect generator output. Power decreases 1% for every 10° F. above 85° F. Counteract these effects by operating appliances in sequence rather than at the same time.

INFORMATION:

The generator may shut down for reasons other than an overload. If a blink code appears on the control switch, refer to the OEM manual to obtain an explanation for the code.

Generator Fuel

There is always a possibility fuel may be contaminated. Diesel fuel may contain water or a microbe growth (black slime). Any contamination of fuel will greatly reduce the total output of the generator and may cause erratic AC output.

Average Fuel Consumption	Diesel 6,000 Watts (gal/hr)
No Load	.13
Half Load @ 4Kw	.49
Full Load	.80

NOTE:

The motorhome manufacturer does not cover damage to the generator caused by fuel contamination, or to appliances due to erratic AC voltage.

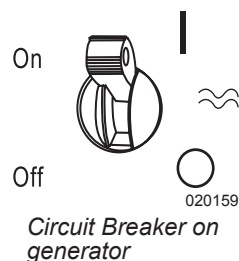
Resetting the Circuit Breaker

If a circuit breaker trips in the main AC breaker panel or on the generator control panel, there may be a short circuit or too much load.

NOTE:

The generator will continue to run after a circuit breaker trips.

If a circuit breaker trips, disconnect or turn off as many loads as possible. To reset the circuit breaker, switch the circuit breaker to Off, then switch back to On to reconnect the circuit.



If the circuit breaker immediately trips, the electrical distribution system has a short or the circuit breaker is faulty. Call a qualified electrician. If the circuit breaker does not trip, reconnect a combination of loads that will not overload the generator or cause the circuit breaker to trip again. Remember to compensate for elevation and temperature changes when reconnecting loads.

NOTE:

An appliance or load may have a short if it causes a circuit breaker to trip after reconnection. Do not continue to reset breaker. Have the problem corrected before resuming operation.

Generator Exercise

If use of the generator is infrequent, “exercise” the generator once a month by operating it at approximately half the maximum rated output for two hours. This “exercise” will help promote better starting, more reliable operation and longer engine life. This procedure drives off moisture, lubricates the internal engine parts, replaces the old stale fuel with a fresh supply, and also promotes removing oxides from the electrical switches and contacts.

NOTE:

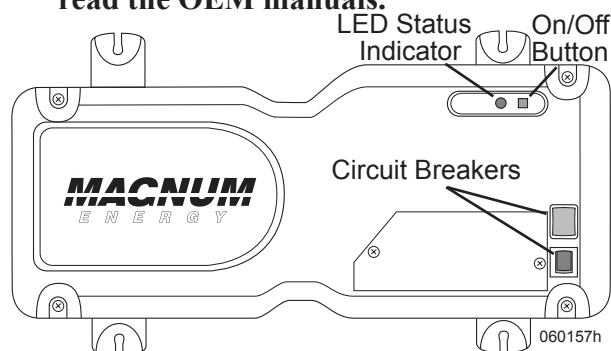
Avoid short run periods of the generator. Run the generator under a load for a minimum of one-half hour.

INVERTER

The inverter changes DC battery power to AC electrical power. It also converts AC power to DC to charge the house and chassis batteries when hooked to shore power or operating from the generator. Use the inverter to supply AC power when shore power is not available and the generator is not going to be used as a secondary AC power source. Remember that using the inverter quickly consumes house battery power. Turn off the inverter when not in use to conserve house battery power. The inverter works in conjunction with the “load shed” feature of the AC load center. In instances where shore power amperage is limited to 20 or 30 amps, the inverter will “power assist” during periods of peak demand when total amount of amperage available exceeds shore power capacity. The battery cutoff switch must be on for the inverter remote panel to function and respond to commands. The remote panel is used to change variable settings.

NOTE:

The inverter/converter is a comprehensive system with many features. It is strongly recommended to read the OEM manuals.

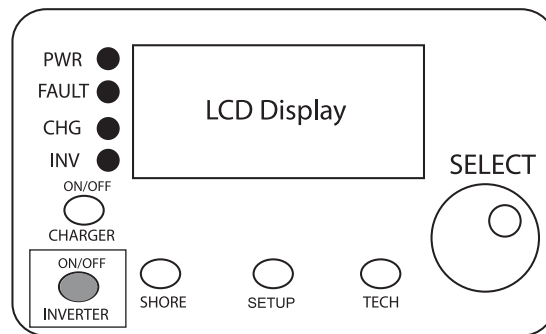


Inverter/Converter

Providing AC Power with Inverter

To turn the inverter on:

- ◆ Turn on house battery cutoff switch.
- ◆ Press the **Inverter On/Off** switch on the remote panel.

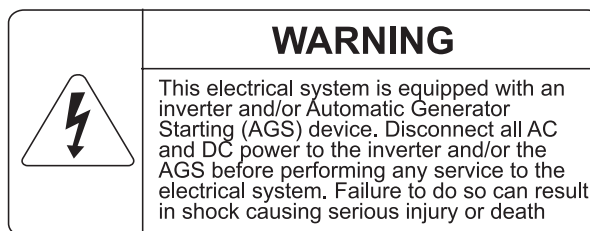


Remote Panel

The Inverter Will Power:

- ◆ Home Entertainment Components
- ◆ Microwave
- ◆ Icemaker Outlet

If the inverter does not sense AC power from the generator or shore power, it will provide AC power from the motorhome batteries to most outlets and appliances. If the generator is started or the motorhome is connected to shore power, the inverter will automatically begin charging.



Battery Charging with Inverter

The inverter will automatically begin charging when AC power is supplied from shore service or the generator. The inverter uses a three-stage charge cycle to charge the batteries. The charger may be turned off if desired.

To Turn the Charger On and Off:

- ◆ Press the switch marked **Charger On/Off** on the remote panel.

Shore Setting:

The Shore setting in the remote panel adjusts the amount of AC current the battery charger can use. If hooked to less than 50 amp service, select the proper Shore setting to help prevent combined AC loads such as the roof air conditioner and the charger from overloading limited shore power service.

To Adjust Shore Power Setting:

- ◆ Press the Shore button on inverter remote.
- ◆ Turn the knob on the inverter remote left or right to scroll through shore setting options.
- ◆ Press the knob to select. An arrow will appear next to the selected setting.

NOTE:

Settings 20 Amp and below limits battery charge capacity and may hamper ability to efficiently operate DC electrical loads. Remember to reset to higher amperage when available.

Set Shore Settings To:

Shore Setting	AC Power
50 Amp	When hooked to 50 Amp shore service.
30 Amp	When hooked to 30 Amp shore service.
20 Amp	When hooked to 20 Amp shore service.
10 Amp	Used when shore service is severely limited or experiencing shore power overload.
5 Amp	Minimum charge capacity setting. Used when shore service is severely limited or experiencing shore power overload.
Contrast	75 %

Three-stage charging cycle:

The inverter optimizes battery charge rate and time using a three-stage charge cycle. Each stage of the charge cycle utilizes voltage and current to charge the batteries quickly and efficiently without damaging the batteries by overcharging or insufficient undercharging. The charge profile occurs automatically when the battery bank type (LLA or AGM) and size (amp hours) is programmed through the remote.

♦ **Bulk Charge Cycle:** Brings the DC voltage up high, initially between 14.2 - 14.6 Volts DC. The length of time the inverter is in Bulk Charge depends the state of charge of the batteries.

♦ **Absorb Cycle:** Absorb Cycle battery voltage is the same as the Bulk Charge Cycle, between 14.2 - 14.6 Volts DC. Length of the Absorb Cycle is a timed event determined by the inverter.

♦ **Float Charge Cycle:** Charge voltage is generally around 13.3 - 13.7 Volts DC. Approximately 80% of the charging cycle has been completed by this time.



80%

Bulk Charge

Water (charger) on full until bucket (battery) is 80% full.



90%

Absorb Charge

Water (charger) slows until bucket (battery) is 90% full.



100%

Float Charge

Water (charger) slowly trickles into bucket (battery) until 100% full. Water (charger) will adjust flow to maintain level.

Hose = Inverter in Charge Mode
Bucket = Battery

Factory Default Settings

Function	Default
Search	5 Watts
Low Battery Cutoff	11 Volts DC
Battery Bank	400 AH
Battery Type	Liquid Lead Acid
Charge Rate	80 %
Contrast	75 %

Battery Temperature Sensor

A **Battery Temperature Sensor (BTS)** is affixed to one of the house battery terminals to measure battery temperature and send that information to the inverter. When battery temperature rises, the inverter will decrease charge voltage to prevent boiling the batteries. When battery temperature cools, the inverter will raise charge voltage. Voltage compensation with temperature variation is necessary to keep charge voltage at optimum values. If the BTS cord is unplugged from the inverter, the inverter will use a temperature default setting of 77° F./25° C. as a reference point.

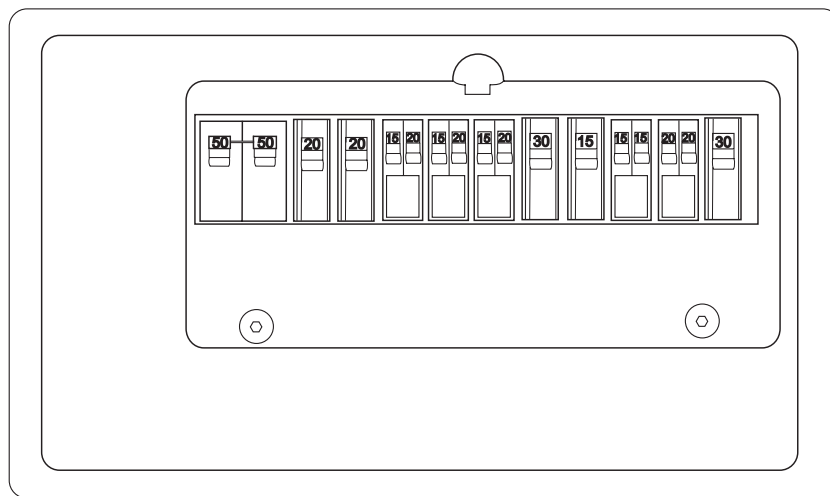
Power Assist

During periods of peak demand for AC power when connected to limited shore power, the inverter will automatically enable “Power Assist” mode using house battery power. The inverter will supply the added current necessary to meet the demand. Power assist mode will occur only when the inverter is in Float or Absorb charge modes ensuring battery charging is maintained when possible.

When demand for power is reduced and shore power can adequately supply the power, Power Assist mode will automatically disable returning the inverter to charge mode. If demand for power once again exceeds the shore power supply, Power Assist will automatically be enabled. The assist cycle will continue until house battery voltage falls within .3 Volts DC of the Low Battery Cutoff setting in the inverter remote panel.

LOAD CENTER - 120/240 VOLT AC

The 120/240 Volt AC load center receives power from the transfer switch supplied by either shore power or the generator. AC power is supplied to the 50 Amp main breaker first, then power is supplied to individual branch circuit breakers. Refer to the panel label for specific circuit assignments.



Load center located below pantry

060357d

WARNING:

The 120/240 Volt AC load center contains high voltage that can cause serious injury or death. Before beginning any work or testing procedures involving the electric panels, or any of the branch circuits, the motorhome must be unplugged from shore power, the generator off, and the inverter in the off position. Certain testing procedures may require the AC power to be on. Only qualified personnel with electrical backgrounds should attempt any testing procedures.

Power Control System

Overview:

The Power Control System (PCS) remote panel monitors AC power consumption. If AC power consumption in total exceeds the amount the power service can supply, the system automatically reduces power consumption by “shedding” the loads listed in order on the remote panel. The panel also displays AC current consumption.

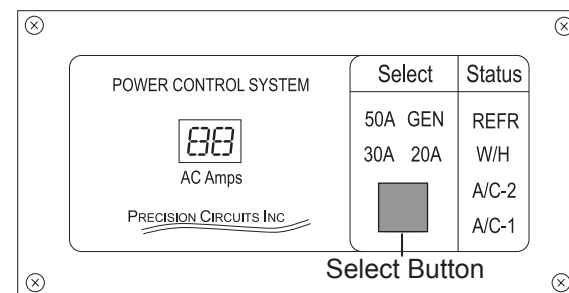
Example: When connected to 20 Amp shore power with a roof A/C operating then the water heater electric element is turned on, power consumption in total would exceed 20 amps. The system will automatically shed the refrigerator then the water heater to limit the possibility of shore power overload.

Requirements:

- ◆ Connect to shore power or start the generator.
- ◆ Turn on the battery cutoff switch.

Operation:

The PCS automatically senses whether it is connected to 30 Amp 120 Volt AC shore power or 50 Amp 240 Volt AC shore power or the generator. If connected to 20 amp shore power, the remote will need to be changed to 20 amp service by using the Select button.



Located at systems control center

060303d

The PCS controls operation of four loads to shed. Shedding a load means removing power from the load allowing extra power to operate the other loads listed in order. These shed loads are typically heavy power consuming loads that can be temporarily postponed until enough power is available to safely operate the loads without the possibility of overloading the shore power breaker.

Load shed example, if average current demand exceeds 24 Amps when hooked to a 30 Amp service, the system will automatically shed load Number 1 (refrigerator) to keep average current demand below 80% (24 Amps) of the 30 Amp shore service to avoid the possibility of overloading the shore power breaker. If shedding load number 1 is insufficient to avoid tripping the shore power breaker, the system will shed load 2 (water heater) and so on until power demand in total is within safe operating limits. Indication a load has been shed is when the load is no longer illuminated in the Status column.

NOTE:

20 amp shore service mode is not automatically detected and the operator must manually set 20 amp mode when connected to 20 amp shore power.

Loads shed in order of priority:

1. Refrigerator
2. Water Heater
3. A/C - 2 (Bedroom)
4. A/C - 1 (Living Room)

Power Share and Reduced Charging:

Depending on operating conditions, amperage of shore power and battery state of charge, the system may attempt to reduce battery charging as a way to conserve AC power during peak demand or if batteries are of sufficient charge, the system will automatically enable the inverter to help supply extra power during peak demand periods.

Circuit Breakers

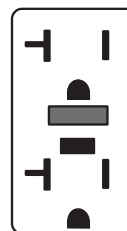
The internal configuration of the circuit breaker is designed to trip when excess current causes the breaker to heat up. The trip action of the circuit breaker can occur within milliseconds. Breakers are designed to operate at a continuous load of 80% of the breaker's rated capacity.

For example: A breaker with a 20 Amp rating will operate a continuous 16 amp load. This design leaves a small amount of working capacity within the breaker.

When an inductive load is applied, such as when an electric motor turns on, the motor starts to spin and current consumption may momentarily exceed the rated capacity of the breaker. As the electric motor comes up to operating speed, the electric motor's current consumption will decrease.

The AC current load then falls back into the breaker's rated 80% set point. This electric principle should be kept in mind when using anything other than 50 Amp shore service and using appliances with electric motors, such as air conditioners.

When using outlets, care should be considered when applying loads such as electric motors, heaters, coffee makers, toasters, hair dryers or other large current consuming loads. The current rating is usually stated on most electrical items. The current rating will either be rated in amps or watts.



060072



RM03A0003

GFCI Breaker

Current ratings stated on electrical items will change slightly with voltage fluctuations. As voltage increases, current consumption decreases. As voltage decreases, current consumption increases. This may explain why in some instances items operated at borderline voltage to current tolerances may seem fine in one location but problematic in another.

NOTE:

To calculate watts to Amps divide the watt figure by the voltage from which the item operates from. For example: The electrical item is rated at 1370 watts. Divide that by the operating voltage of 115 Volts AC which equals 11.913 Amps. Use this formula to calculate the amount of load and compare to the available power supply.

GFCI Breakers & Outlets

A Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter (GFCI) can be found in two different types of applications. One type is incorporated in a breaker used in 120 Volt AC breaker panels; the other is incorporated in an outlet. The GFCI, whether it is a breaker or an outlet, offers two types of protection. One type of protection is from over-current or shorts to guard against hazardous ground fault currents that can result in injury or death. Ground fault currents are currents that flow from the "hot" or power terminal through a person to the ground. **For example:** touching a faulty appliance while making contact with an electrical ground such as a water fixture or the earth.

The GFCI offers protection against the type of shock that can result from faulty insulation, wet wiring from inside an appliance, or any device or equipment plugged in or wired to that circuit. The ground fault portion of the outlet or breaker uses sensitive electronics inside the outlet or breaker to detect a ground fault problem. The electronics monitor the normal current of power flowing to the hot (black) wire through the load (eg. a light bulb or appliance) and coming back on the neutral (white) wire. If a small amount of current comes back on the safety ground wire, the electronics will trip the breaker or outlet, stopping the flow of electricity. The amount of current it takes to trip the device from a ground fault varies slightly from the different outlet or breaker manufacturer (approximately 4 to 6 milliamps or less).

NOTE:

One milliamp is 1/1000 of one Amp.

Electrical shocks resulting from ground faults can be felt, but such a shock is considerably less than one without ground fault protection. People with medical conditions that make them susceptible to shock can still be seriously injured. A GFCI outlet or breaker will not protect against shock from a normal current flow. **For example:** a shock from touching both metal prongs of an electrical cord or appliance while plugging it in.

WARNING:

If a breaker or outlet continually trips, do not continue to reset breaker or outlet until the problem has been identified and corrected.

NOTE:

The ground fault outlet or breaker should be tested once a month to ensure it is operating. Use the TEST button on the outlet or breaker. It should trip with an audible “click.” The breaker or outlet will not trip if AC power is not present at the device. If power is present and the device will not trip, replace it before using that circuit.

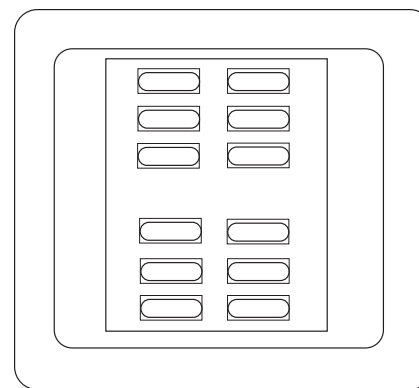
DISTRIBUTION PANEL - HOUSE 12 VOLT DC

The 12 Volt DC house distribution panel is located next to the 120/240 Volt AC load center. This panel contains fuses that protect the electrical circuits. These fuses are a standard automotive type. Refer to the fuse label for circuit assignments.

1 Closet Lt 12 Volt Outlet 15A	7 Bedroom Lts 15A
2 Water Pump 15A	8 Bathroom Lts 20A
3 Furnace 20A	9 Dinette Lts 20A
4 Water Heater 15A	10 Galley Lts 20A
5	11 L/Room Lts 15A
6 T-Stat Awning TV Boost Sat 15A	12 Vent Fans 15A

*Typical circuit assignments.
Refer to actual label on
fuse panel cover.*

2012 Vesta



*Fuse panel located
below pantry*

FUSES & CIRCUIT BREAKERS - 12 VOLT DC

Circuit protection devices are installed to protect circuit wiring in case an over-current condition occurs. An over-current condition usually falls into one of two categories: a short circuit or overload. A short circuit is when a break or fault in the circuit allows electricity to flow directly to ground. Circuit overload is when circuit amperage or the electrical load exceeds designed operating parameters.

Several factors are considered when designing a circuit to operate an electrical load. The amperage required to operate the electrical load will determine wire size and wire insulation type. The application of the electrical load can determine whether a fuse or circuit breaker is selected.

Circuit protection devices come in a variety of shapes and ratings. Most common are the blade style plug in fuse and auto reset circuit breakers. These types of circuit protection devices are readily available from auto supply stores. Circuit protection devices in a 12 Volt DC system are actually rated at 32 Volts DC due to voltage variances in a 12 Volt DC system. Replacement devices must use the same amperage rating and be of the same type as the original for proper circuit protection and electrical safety. Generally a fault exists in the circuit when an over-current condition has caused a fuse to blow or circuit breaker to trip. Until the condition that caused the fault is corrected, replacing the fuse may be a temporary fix. Continually replacing the fuse or circumventing the protection device can jeopardize safety and circuit integrity.

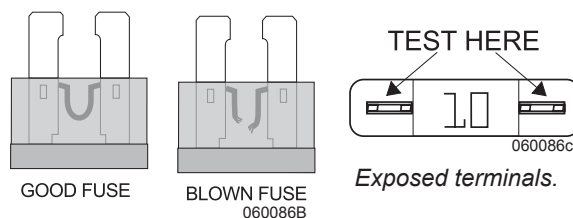
WARNING:

Replacement fuses or circuit breakers must be of the same type and rating as the original equipment. Installing protection devices other than the original type and rating will create a safety hazard that will potentially result in circuit and/or component damage and fire.

Fuses:

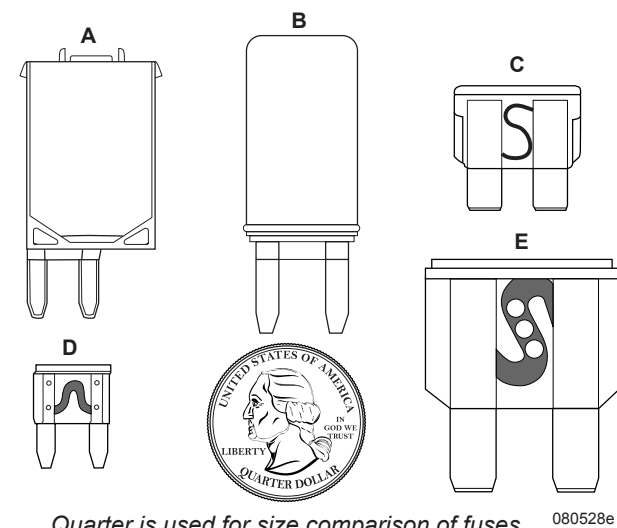
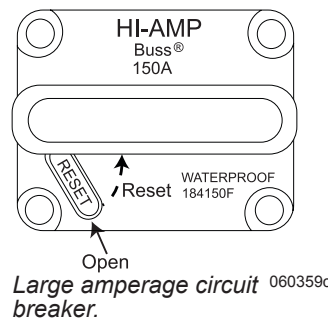
Blade fuse comes in three sizes: Mini, Standard and Maxi. Fuse color determines amperage ratings. A blown fuse indicates an over-current condition has occurred. Typically the conductor strip in the center of the fuse is broken, but not always, and is best verified by use of a 12 Volt DC test light. Located atop the blade style fuse housing are two exposed terminals.

The fuse is good if the test light illuminates at both terminals. This may require the circuit be activated for power to be present at the fuse. The fuse is bad if the test light illuminates at only one terminal.



BLADE FUSE GUIDE			
	Mini	Standard	Maxi
Black	1		
Gray	2	2	25
Violet	3	3	
Pink	4	4	
Tan	5	5	70
Brown	7 1/2	7 1/2	35
Red	10	10	50
Blue	15	15	60
Yellow	20	20	20
Clear	25	25	80
Green	30	30	30
Blue-Green	35		
Orange	40		40

Mini, Standard and Maxi fuse colors and amperage ratings



Representation of various fuses and a circuit breaker.

There are three types of Circuit Breakers:

Type 1 is an automatic reset type circuit breaker. This type of breaker may cause component damage under a short circuit condition. It will not damage the circuit, the installation or present a safety risk

Type 2 is an automatic reset type circuit breaker. Under a short circuit condition, this type of breaker will not cause component damage or damage to the circuit, the installation or present a safety risk.

Type 3 is a manual reset circuit breaker. This type of breaker will open under a short circuit condition and must be manually reset.

BATTERIES - HOUSE

House batteries are designed for use with 12 Volt DC operated lights, appliances and inverters.

Type of House Batteries:

- ◆ Qty. 2-UL 16 Liquid Lead Acid (LLA)

Deep Cycle Batteries:

Deep cycle batteries are Liquid Lead Acid (LLA) battery. Deep cycle batteries are best suited for use with 12 Volt operated lights, appliances and inverter/converters. Deep cycle batteries are designed to have a majority of their capacity used before being recharged. House batteries are located in the curbside battery compartment.

CAUTION:

Tap water contains minerals that can alter battery chemistry and ruin the battery. Use only distilled water when refilling the LLA battery.

IMPORTANT!

IMPORTANT!

This motorhome is equipped with Non-sealed Liquid Lead Acid (LLA) house batteries which require regular maintenance. Lack of maintenance will result in a shortened battery life.

NOTE:

Read your owners manual for storage, dry camping and battery maintenance.

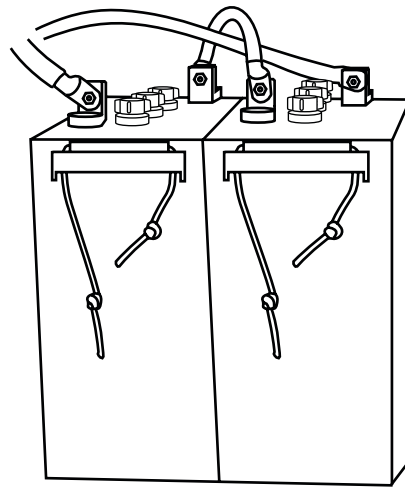
MONACO CUSTOMER SERVICE: 1-877-4-MONACO

060331

Battery Maintenance

Liquid Lead Acid (LLA) battery cells should be checked at least once a month. The level should be above the top of the plates, but not overfull. Remember to use only distilled water to refill the battery. A battery with a low electrolyte level will rapidly boil out the water once the plates have been exposed to air.

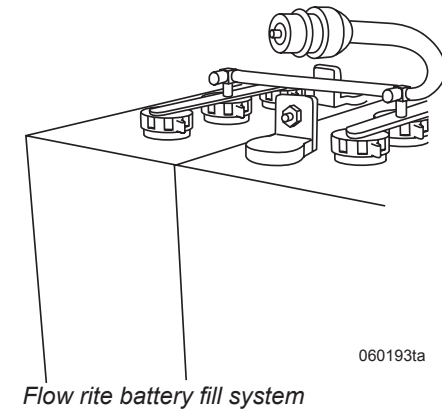
The LLA house batteries are equipped with a Flow-Rite battery fill system. This battery fill system includes the following features:



Type UL 16 batteries
connected in series/parallel

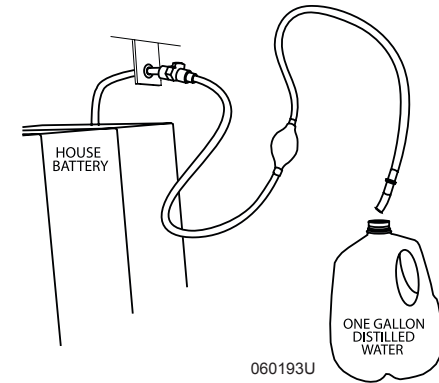
060343b

- ◆ One connection to water source will fill all batteries and cells.
- ◆ Batteries are filled with a hand pump.
- ◆ An automatic valve system fills only the cells that need water, and automatically stops water flow when water level is correct.



060193ta

Flow rite battery fill system



060193U

Use only distilled water

A water fill manifold connects all house battery cells to one quick-disconnect fitting located in the house battery bay. Insert the hose end into a bottle of distilled water. Prime the bulb by squeezing until the bulb fills with water. Attach the hand pump to the quick-disconnect, and operate the hand pump until water flow stops.

Check the water level of house batteries at least once a month by attempting to add water to the system. Use only distilled water.

NOTE:

The cap on individual cells is threaded onto the battery and can be removed to inspect water level.

Periodically check the batteries for corrosion and cracks. Replace vent plugs that are cracked or missing. Keep the top of the batteries clean. The accumulation of electrolyte and dirt may permit small amounts of current to flow between the terminals, that can drain the battery.

Check the battery connections for tightness and corrosion. Battery terminals and cables will occasionally need the corrosion removed. The batteries and trays will also need to be cleaned. This requires removing the cables and possibly the batteries from the tray(s)

WARNING:

Liquid lead acid batteries produce a highly explosive hydrogen gas while charging. Do not smoke around batteries and keep all sources of ignition or flames away from batteries. The hydrogen gas may explode resulting in fire, personal injury, property damage or death.

WARNING:

Sulfuric acid in the batteries can cause severe injury or death. Sulfuric acid can cause permanent damage to eyes, burn skin, and eat holes in clothing. Always wear splash-proof safety goggles when working around the battery. If the battery electrolyte is splashed in the eyes, or on skin, immediately flush the affected area for 15 minutes with large quantities of clean water. In case of eye contact, seek immediate medical aid. Never add acid to a battery once the battery has been placed in service. Doing so may result in hazardous splattering of electrolyte.

Battery Tools:

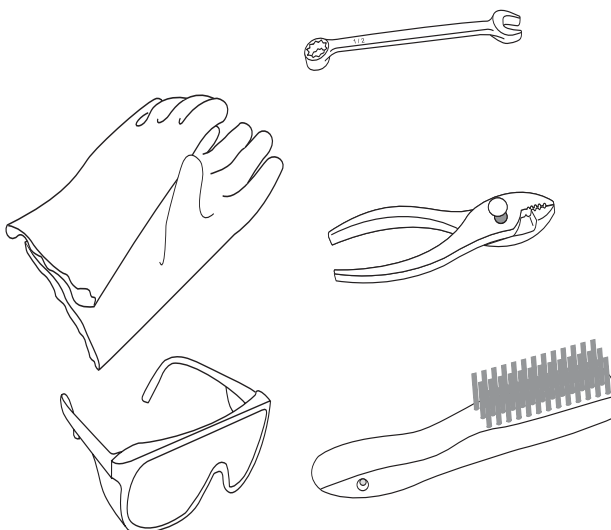
A few simple hand tools are required to work on the batteries and should be kept aside for working on batteries only.

- ◆ Wear old clothes. Clothing is easily damaged when in contact with batteries.
- ◆ Wear thick rubber gloves that are solvent and thinner proof.
- ◆ Keep a ½" box-end wrench, wire brush and pair of adjustable pliers separate from other tools.

Safety Precautions:

Working on batteries requires a few safety procedures:

- ◆ Never short battery terminals or cables with anything metallic to "test" batteries for power.
- ◆ Wear safety glasses. Even a small amount of corrosion or acid can be very painful and harmful to the eyes.



Battery Tools

070223

- ◆ When wire brushing terminals, work the brush in one direction away from you. Avoid contacting opposite polarity terminals. Avoid breathing the powder. A particle mask can be helpful.

Before performing major maintenance procedures, draw a diagram of how the batteries fit in the tray and the relative location of the positive and negative terminals. Draw a diagram of cable routing, polarity and how the cables attach to the batteries. Mark all cables positive and negative respectively. One misplaced cable can have disastrous results.

Before removing any cables, stop all charging or discharging current.

- ◆ Unhook from shore power or stop the generator.
- ◆ Turn off the inverter.
- ◆ If the motorhome has solar panels, remove the fuse near the battery connection or place a blanket over the top of the panels. Unhooking charge wires from the solar panel during daylight hours can damage the controller.
- ◆ Remove all rings and wristwatch to prevent short circuits. A severe burn can instantly occur.
- ◆ Open the battery compartment door.
- ◆ Turn off the interior house power and the main battery disconnects.

- ◆ Wear safety glasses and thick rubber gloves when working around batteries. Battery tools required: a wire brush, ½" box-end wrench, adjustable pliers and a box of baking soda. Prepare a baking soda/water solution. Keep paper towels handy.
- ◆ Rinse batteries thoroughly with water before disconnecting cables. Remove all cables large and small. Remove the batteries, if necessary. If removing the batteries, the temperature sensors for the inverter and solar panel will need to be removed. Double sided sticky tape will be needed to adhere the sensors to the battery. The sensor may also be placed between two batteries.
- ◆ Wire brush cable ends and battery posts. Dip the ends of the cables in the soda solution.
- ◆ With battery caps securely in place, carefully apply solution to the terminals. Using a paper towel, dip it into the solution and wipe the top of each battery.
- ◆ **Do not** allow solution to get into any battery cell. This will neutralize the acid and ruin the battery.
- ◆ Rinse cables and batteries thoroughly with clear water.
- ◆ Use the rest of solution to clean battery tray. Thoroughly rinse tray, battery area and sidewall of the motorhome with water.
- ◆ Install the batteries in correct order noting their relative post location. Remove old sticky tape from the temperature sensors. Clean the sensors, and area on the battery where the sensors affix. Apply sticky tape to the inverter temperature sensor. Adhere the sensor to the battery. Secure the solar panel thermistor by overlaying the thermistor with the sticky tape to the battery. Install tie-downs securing the batteries into position.
- ◆ Carefully install all positive cables. Double check before making each connection to confirm they are in the correct location.
- ◆ Install the negative cables. When hooking up the ground cable going to the frame there will be a small spark indicating a momentary current draw. This is a normal process of charging the capacitors in the inverter. If there is a heavy flash STOP. Double-check all wiring connections and locations to ensure correct polarity.
- ◆ Verify proper voltage in the system before turning on the main battery disconnects.
- ◆ Turn on the main battery disconnect switches.

WARNING:

Liquid lead acid batteries produce hydrogen gas while charging. Hydrogen gas is highly flammable. Do Not smoke around batteries. Extinguish all flames in the area. Hydrogen gas can explode resulting in fire, personal injury, property damage or death.

CAUTION:

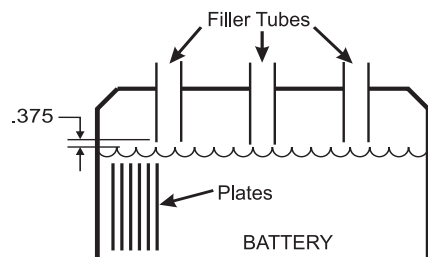
Many types of petroleum based products or battery by-products can damage the paint finish. If the chemicals come in contact with painted surfaces, immediately wash with a mild automotive detergent and clear water.

Testing the Battery

A battery can be tested and/or monitored several ways. The most efficient test of a battery is to test the electrolyte solution with a battery hydrometer. Two main styles of battery hydrometers are available; one type is a cylinder with graduation marks (preferred), the other uses a cylinder with floating balls. Hydrometers can be purchased from most auto parts stores. The hydrometer tests the battery's electrolyte solution measured in specific gravity. The electrolyte solution is a mixture of distilled water and sulfuric acid. Distilled water has a specific gravity reading of 1,000. The hydrometer is calibrated to this mark at 80° F. Pure sulfuric acid has a specific gravity of 1,840. The acid is 1.84 times heavier than water. The electrolyte solution is about 64% water to 36% acid (fully charged battery). A fully charged battery at 80° F., has a specific gravity reading of 1265 per cell.

Hydrometers with cylinder graduation are graphed and the exact state of specific gravity can be determined. Draw the electrolyte solution from a battery cell into the hydrometer. Note the reading for that cell. Complete the same test for the rest of the cells on that battery bank. Temperature affects the hydrometer readings, the higher the electrolyte temperature, the higher the specific gravity reading.

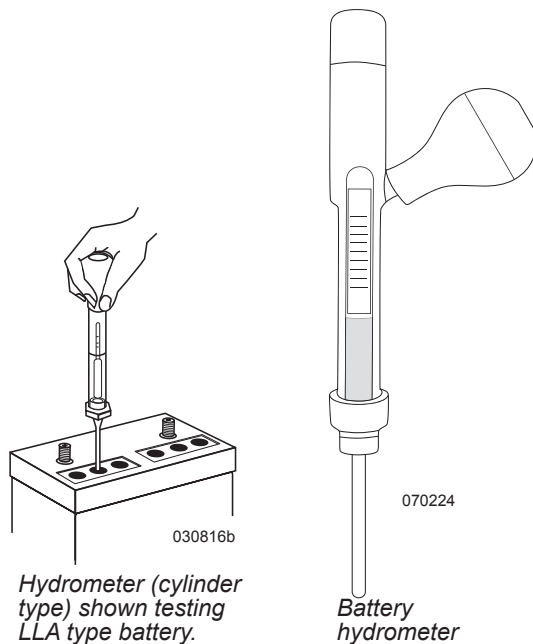
A lower ambient temperature will have a lower the specific gravity reading. Add or subtract four points for each 10° variance from the 80° F. chart. Readings between cells should not vary more than 50 points.



Battery State of Charge	Spec. Gravity	Voltage
100%	1.265	12.7
75%	1.225	12.4
50%	1.190	12.2
25%	1.155	12.0
Discharged	1.120	11.9 or Less

NOTE: The distilled water level in battery should be 3/8" below the filler tube.

020034

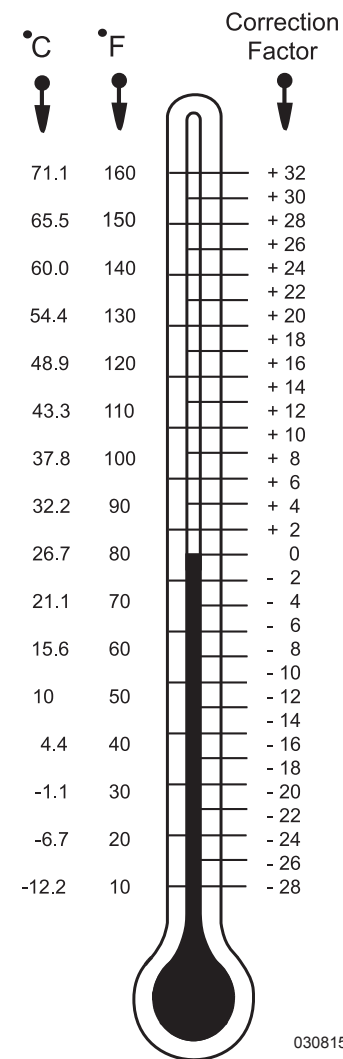


Temperature and recent battery activity (charging or discharging) affect hydrometer readings. It is best to check the battery when it has been at rest for three hours, although readings taken at other times will be approximate. If one cell in a particular battery bank is at a 50% state of charge and the other cells indicate nearly fully charged, charge that battery only to see if the low cell will rise in specific gravity but at the same time do not over-charge the healthy cells.

If the specific gravity reading of the bad cell does not rise after charging, the low cell can drain the rest of the battery bank and that battery should be replaced. An accurate digital Volt meter + - .5% will also give an indicator of the battery's state of charge.

NOTE:

See the Temperature Correction Chart. Liquid levels should be even between the cells of the battery being tested as it will affect the accuracy of the test.



030815

Temperature Correction Chart

Placing a load on the Battery:

Another test that can be performed is to place a specific load on the battery for a predetermined length of time equal to that particular battery's rating.

This machine is usually an adjustable carbon pile that can vary the load being applied to the batteries while monitoring voltage to see if they will perform to their specific rated capacities.

Charge Time & Consumption Rate

Calculating Run Times:

Calculating run time figures when operating 120 Volt AC electrical items with an inverter can be exponential due to battery characteristics. Flow characteristics of electrons vary with different battery types and chemical compositions. Deep cycle batteries are generally designed to slowly release a majority of their charge capacity. Deep cycle batteries are rated in amp hours (Ahrs) with the discharge occurring over an extended period of time before the battery is charged. Engine starting batteries are designed to quickly release large amounts of current for a short duration, without depleting battery reserves. Commercial type batteries bridge the gap of deep cycle and engine batteries. Commercial batteries release medium amounts of current over a longer period of time but they are not designed to cycle their charge capacity.

The working range of a deep cycle battery is between 50 and 100% state of charge (SOC). Deep cycle batteries should not be cycled below 50% state of charge. Discharging a deep cycle battery below 50% state of charge shortens the life of the battery.

Deep cycle batteries use an amp hour rating which is usually calculated over a 20 hour discharge interval. **For example:** A deep cycle battery with a rated capacity of 100 Ahrs. is designed to release current at the rate of 5 amps per hour. Multiply a 5 amp load over a 20 hour discharge period equals the rated 100 Ahr. capacity.

These discharge figures are calculated with the battery starting at 100% state of charge with the battery at 80° F when the discharge cycle begins. However, increasing the discharge load applied to the battery from 5 amps to 10 amps on a 100 Ahr battery does not yield ten hours of discharge time. This is due to the internal reactions which occur when a battery is discharging. Actual discharge time for a 10 amp load may be closer to eight hours of discharge time. Increasing the load applied to the battery to 20 amps will not yield five hours discharge time but may be less than three hours. It might be understood as a point of diminishing return.

Calculating applied loads to an inverter to approximate run time from the battery amp hours available is not an equal trade up when voltage is inverted and amperage is calculated. When the inverter is used to operate an AC load it uses approximately ten times the DC current needed from the battery when inverting 12 Volts DC to operate the 120 Volt AC item.

There is also a small efficiency loss of about 10% when inverting. **For example:** When using the inverter to operate an AC electrical item, which has a current draw rating of 2 amps, the inverter will use over 20 amps DC power from the batteries.

Determining Current Consumption:

First determine the amount of current used by an AC item. **For example:** The television is rated at 200 watts at 120 Volts AC. Calculate watts to amps. Divide 200 watts by the operating voltage of 120, this equals 1.6 amps. Multiply 1.6 amps AC current by a factor of ten the inverter will use, this equals 16 amps DC battery current. Add the revised 10% efficiency loss figure, this calculates to a total of 17.6 amps DC. If the battery bank capacity is rated at 500 Ahrs., actual elapsed time to the suggested 50% state of charge would net viewing time for the television at approximately 13 hours in ideal conditions.

The run time figure will vary greatly with the actual state of charge of the battery bank when the discharge process begins. Ambient temperature, combined with other working loads, such as lights and parasitic loads applied to batteries, affect run times. Calculating the exact run time is not precise due to all the variables and equations involved; however, an approximate time figure can be obtained. Proper battery maintenance and charge cycles affect battery performance. Observe the battery condition with hydrometer and voltage readings. Use only distilled water when filling batteries. To achieve the highest quality of battery performance and longevity maintain the batteries in their proper operating range.

How long will the batteries last?

- ◆ Conduct this eight-hour test to determine how long your particular battery bank will operate before dropping below 50% state of charge.
1. Before beginning the test, be sure the batteries are at 100% charge by verifying with a hydrometer or an accurate voltmeter.
 2. Turn on interior house power. Turn on three lights. Switch refrigerator operation to propane. Turn on the inverter and operate a TV for two hours only. After two hours turn the TV and the inverter off.
 3. After the eight-hour period, turn off the lights, refrigerator and interior house power. Allow the battery electrolyte to stabilize for at least one to three hours.

Test the batteries again with a hydrometer or voltmeter. Are the batteries above or below 50% State of Charge? This test will give an idea of how long your particular battery bank will actually last.

LIGHTS

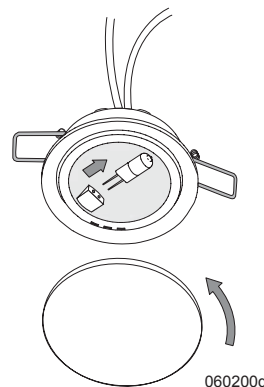
Light fixtures in the motorhome vary. These examples reflect a general overview of some of the more common fixture types. Actual styles and types may differ.

Interior Halogen

Changing the Bulb:

Removal:

- ◆ Grasp light fixture and pull down slightly then tilt fixture to one side. This will allow one spring clip to come out.



CAUTION:

Push spring clip inward with a finger as clip is being eased out. If this is not done spring clip can snap back on fingers.

- ◆ Tilt fixture to other side and ease the other spring clip out.
- ◆ Unscrew the light lens counterclockwise and remove.
- ◆ Carefully grasp bulb and pull from socket. Replace with the same type of bulb.

The bulb replacement is **12V 10W CE**.

INFORMATION:

Replacement bulb number is accurate at time of printing. Confirm replacement bulb number before ordering or obtaining a replacement.

- ◆ Use a clean cloth or piece of tissue to grasp new bulb. **Do Not** touch bulb directly as this can cause a “hot spot” and result in immediate bulb failure.
- ◆ Align contacts of bulb with terminals in fixture base. Insert bulb until contacts are firmly seated.

Reinstall:

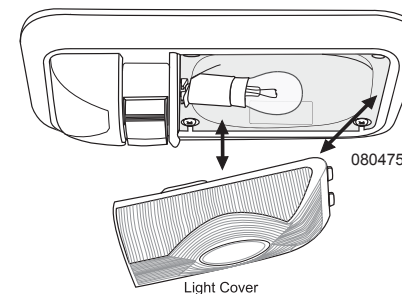
- ◆ Align tabs on light lens with slots in fixture base. Rotate lens clockwise until light lens locks into place.
- ◆ Fold up both spring clips and insert light fixture into opening. Once in opening the spring clips will expand and lock light fixture into place.

CAUTION:

Do not touch halogen lighting while on. They can cause a burn. Do not touch replacement bulbs. Oil in the hands can cause a “hot-spot” to occur. If the bulb is touched, allow it to cool and clean the bulb with alcohol.

Incandescent Light

Incandescent lights in exterior compartments and interior of the motorhome, come in different styles or variations. The bulbs in the 12 Volt incandescent light fixtures are replaceable.



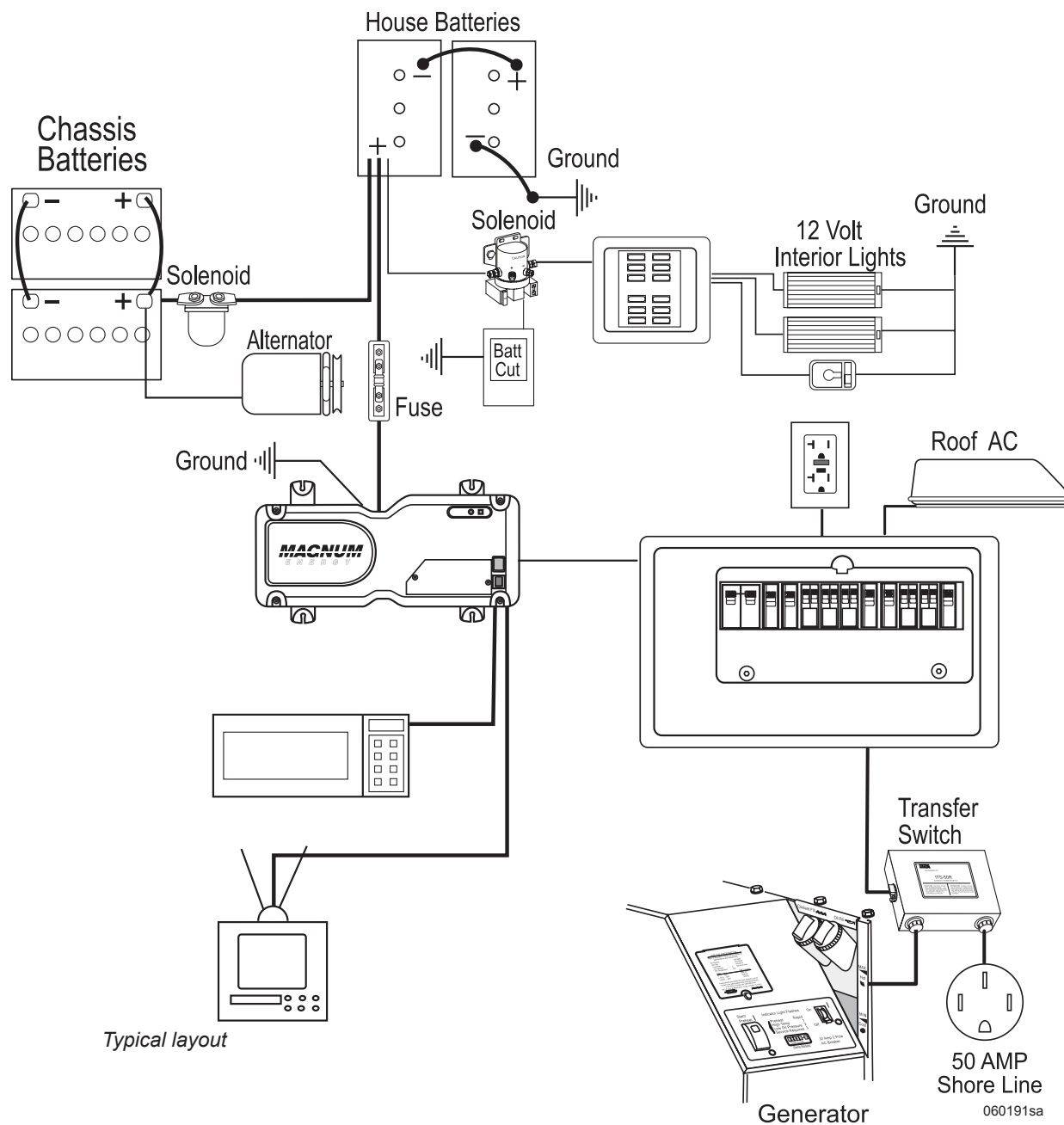
To Replace a Bulb:

- ◆ Carefully squeeze the lens cover then gently pull the cover out. The cover has tabs that lock the cover in place
- ◆ Using a clean cloth or piece of tissue carefully grasp the bulb and rotate to the unlock position.
- ◆ Remove bulb from the socket.
- ◆ The bulb replacement is 1141 12V 21CP.

INFORMATION:

Replacement bulb number is accurate at time of printing. Confirm replacement bulb number before ordering or obtaining a replacement.

- ◆ Using a clean cloth or piece of tissue grasp the new bulb and align the prongs on the bulb with the slot on light socket.
- ◆ Push bulb in and rotate to lock position.
- ◆ Gently squeeze lens cover and insert tabs on cover into fixture.

TYPICAL ELECTRICAL LAYOUT

NOTES

[illegible]

Chassis Electrical

Section 9



CHASSIS ELECTRICAL - INTRODUCTION	170	DASH	177
BATTERY DISCONNECT	170	Instrument Panel	177
Chassis	170	Lcd Display	178
BATTERY - CHASSIS	170	Indicator Lights	178
FUSES & CIRCUITS	170	LCD Controller	179
BATTERY MAINTAINER	173	SWITCHES	179
Relays	173	AIR CONDITIONER & HEATER CONTROLS	181
ALTERNATOR	174	Blend Air System	181
Alternator Testing Procedure	174	Maintenance	182
STEERING WHEEL & COLUMN	175	Operating Tips & Hints	182
Left Control	175	System Components	183
Cruise Control	175	Troubleshooting	184
Right Control	176	DIAGNOSTIC DATA PORT	184
Wiper Function	176	ENGINE "NO START" FLOW CHART	185
Tilt & Telescope	176		
Turn Signal Lever	176		
Hazard Flashers	177		

CHASSIS ELECTRICAL - INTRODUCTION

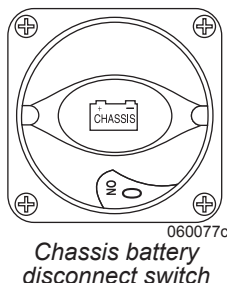
This section contains guidelines, procedures and information that will assist in understanding the chassis electrical system and the operation of various components. Refer to the OEM manuals included in the Owner's Information File box for their respective, in-depth, individual component operating instructions.

BATTERY DISCONNECT Chassis

The chassis battery switch controls DC power to the roadside electrical bay. Most chassis and engine functions are interrupted when the battery disconnect is turned off. Some electronic components of the engine and transmission require a constant power source and the circuits will remain active with the disconnect switch off.

Turn the chassis battery disconnect switch off when the motorhome is going to be stored or when performing electrical maintenance. If possible during storage, leave the motorhome plugged into an AC source with the chassis battery disconnect switch on to help prevent the possibility of dead batteries.

If an AC source is not available and the motorhome is going to be stored more than 48 hours, it is recommended to turn the chassis battery disconnect switch off.



WARNING:

When welding is involved for motorhome repair or modification, only qualified, experienced technicians should weld on the chassis. Improper welding procedures and materials may weaken the assembly or result in damage that is not obvious and may not cause an immediate problem or failure. Unauthorized modifications or repairs to the chassis could result in a forfeiture of warranty coverage.

DANGER:

Due to the sensitive nature of the electronics on the chassis, the following precautions are required to protect electrical components in the motorhome chassis:

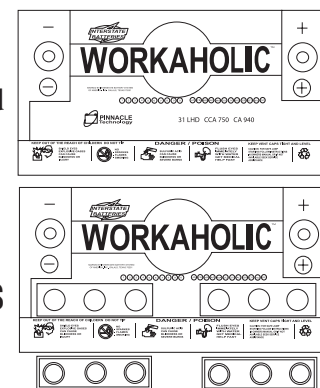
1. Disconnect the (+) positive and (-) negative battery connection.
2. Cover electronic control components and wiring to protect from hot sparks.
3. Disconnect the terminal plugs from the engine Electronic Control Unit, located on the firewall.
4. Disconnect all the plugs from the Transmission Control Module located in the roadside front electrical bay.
5. Disconnect wiring from the alternator
6. Do Not connect welding cables to electronic control components.
7. Attach the welding ground cable no more than two feet from the part to be welded.

BATTERY - CHASSIS

The chassis battery is designed to produce high amperage necessary to start the engine. Maintain the chassis battery through regular electrolyte level inspections and hydrometer readings. High electrolyte consumption or inconsistent hydrometer cell readings may indicate a charging system problem. Perform a charging system and current draw check if the batteries are exhibiting abnormal hydrometer readings.

NOTE:

Replacement batteries should have the same cold cranking amp (CCA) rating.



Battery with cover removed. Cut plastic to remove cover.

FUSES & CIRCUITS

The roadside electrical bay (also called the front run box) contains fuses, self-resetting and manual reset circuit breakers, solenoids and relays for many chassis and house related functions. The front distribution panel controls chassis and house functions. Chassis fuse box 1 and 2 control chassis functions only.

The fuses are standard plug-in type (ATM). When a fuse “BLOWS,” the wire in middle of the plastic case will be broken. A bad or blown fuse must be replaced with a fuse of the same rating and type.

Using a fuse of a different rating will defeat the circuit protection provided by the fuse, which could result in damage to the motorhome electrical system. A fuse that has been replaced and continues to blow may indicate a fault exists or an electronic component has failed. It is recommended that the motorhome be taken to a qualified RV technician before any future use to diagnose and repair the problem. A fuse label is located on the reverse side of the covers.

P/N 03216289

FUSE NO. DESCRIPTION	MAX FUSE SIZE
C401(F) CHASSIS	
4-1 STEP MOTOR	25
5-2 STEP SWITCH	7.5
6-3 AIR LEVEL REAR	5
3-4 AIR LEVEL CTRL	3
2-5 AIR LEVEL FRT	5
1-6 AIR LEV COMPRESSOR	15
C402(D)	
4-7 NAVIGATION	15
5-8 STEP COVER	CB-15
6-9 SUNVISOR	5
3-10 CB RADIO PREP	5
2-11 KEYLESS	15
1-12 ALADDIN MAIN PWR	15
C403(D) IGN#1	
4-13 DASH A/C	20
5-14 SPARE	5
6-15 SPARE	7.5
3-16 MIRROR HEAT	15
2-17 MIRROR MOTORS	15
1-18 SPARE	20
C415(F) RELAY FUSE	
1-59 SPARE	CB-15
2-60 SPARE	CB-15
3-61 SPARE	15
6-62 PARK FLASH	15
5-63 FOG LIGHT	15
4-64 SPARE	15
65 MARKER LIGHTS	10

FUSE NO. DESCRIPTION	MAX FUSE SIZE
C404(F) IGN#2	
4-19 STEP	7.5
5-20 LEVELING	15
6-21 SPARE	3
3-22 SPARE	15
2-23 SPARE	15
1-24 ROOF HARN IGN	15
C405(D) ACC#1	
2-25 REAR VISION	5
1-26 RADIO SWITCH ACC	10
4-27 SPARE	10
7-28 SPARE	15
8-29 KEYLESS	15
9-30 SPARE	CB-15
6-31 SPARE	15
3-32 FOG LAMPS	15
C412(F) NON SWITCHED HOUSE 12V	
4-66 RADIO MEMORY	10
5-67 REFER	10
6-68 SPARE	15
3-69 LP/CO DETECTOR	3
2-70 BAY HEAT	20
1-71 HOUSE DISC PWR	3

CIRCUIT BREAKERS
INTERIOR FUSE PANEL 80

FUSE NO. DESCRIPTION	MAX FUSE SIZE
C406(F) SWITCHED HOUSE 12V	
4-33 DRV POWER SEAT	CB-15
5-34 PASS POWER SEAT	CB-15
6-35 STORAGE LIGHTS	15
3-36 SPARE	7.5
2-37 SPARE	CB-15
1-38 SPARE	CB-15
C407(F)	
2-39 SPARE	20
1-40 SPARE	15
4-41 SPARE	5
7-42 SPARE	15
8-43 SPARE	3
9-44 SPARE	15
6-45 PORCH LT	15
3-46 TANK MONITOR	15
C408(F)	
4-47 SPARE	3
5-48 SPARE	15
6-49 SPARE	15
3-50 SPARE	15
2-51 SPARE	15
1-52 SPARE	15
C409(D)	
4-53 MAP LIGHT	7.5
5-54 SPARE	15
6-55 SPARE	5
3-56 BATT. BOOST/TV BOOST	15
2-57 SPARE	15
1-58 SPARE	15

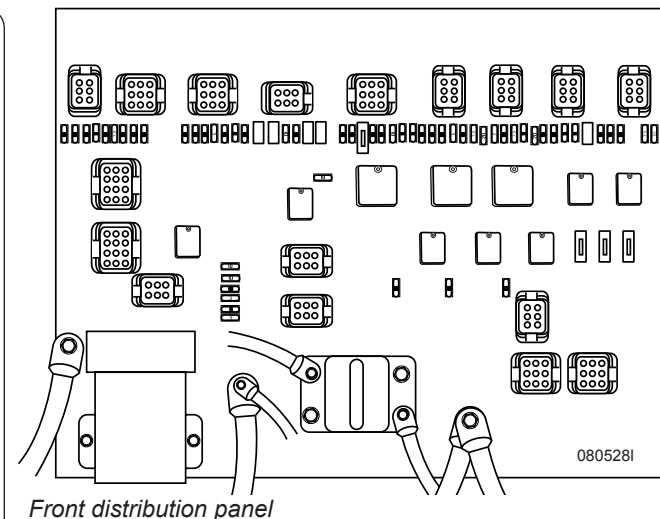
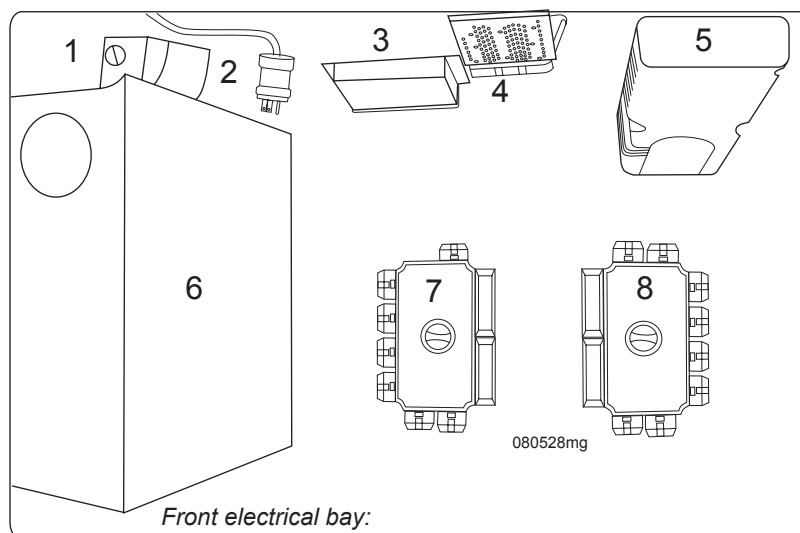
THIS FUSE PANEL COVERS STANDARDS AND OPTIONS THAT ARE ASSOCIATED WITH THIS FUSE PANEL. CHECK YOUR BUILD ORDER TO SEE HOW YOUR COACH IS EQUIPPED.

100216m

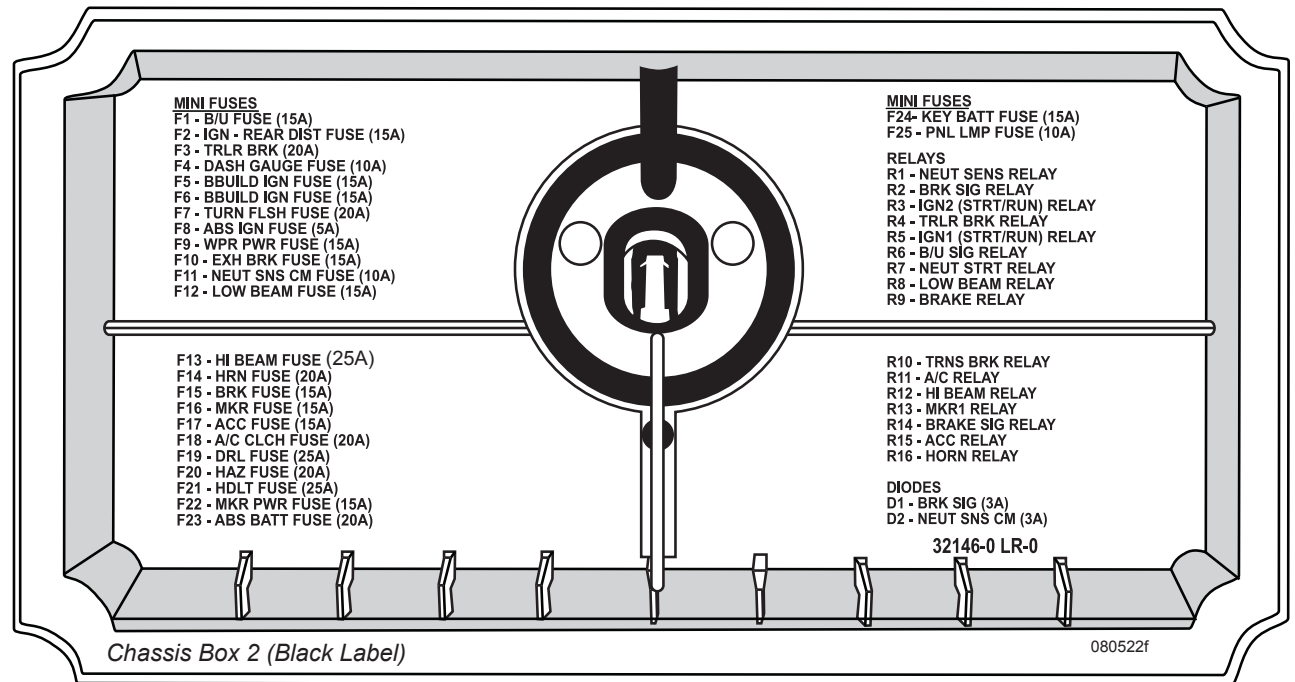
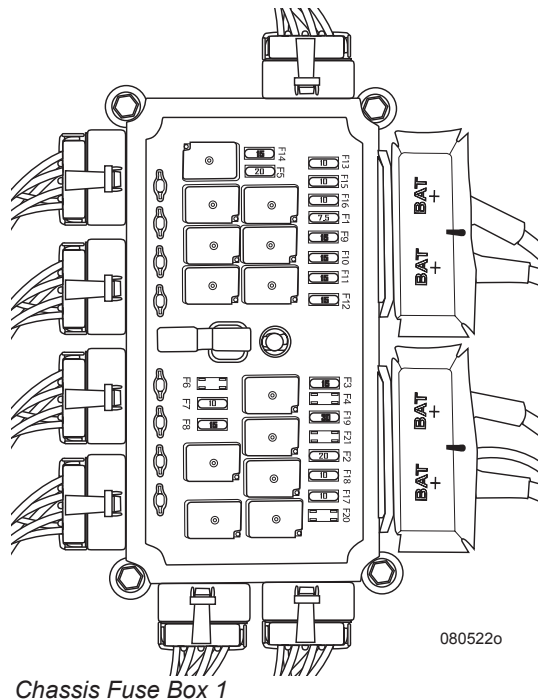
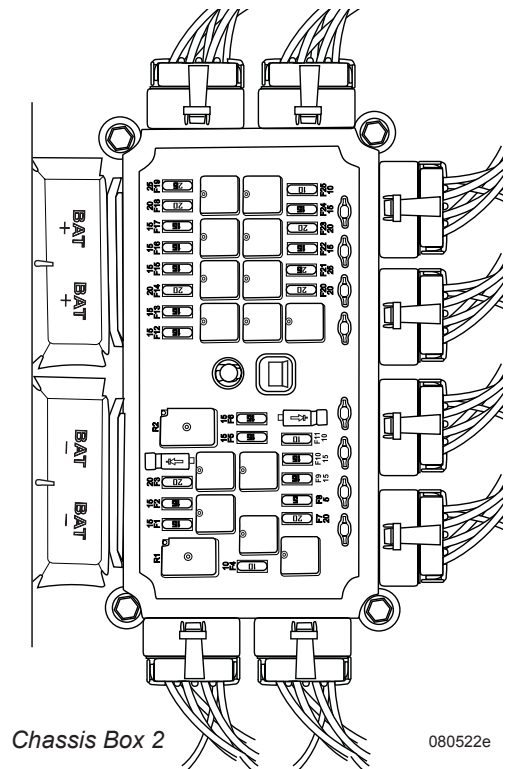
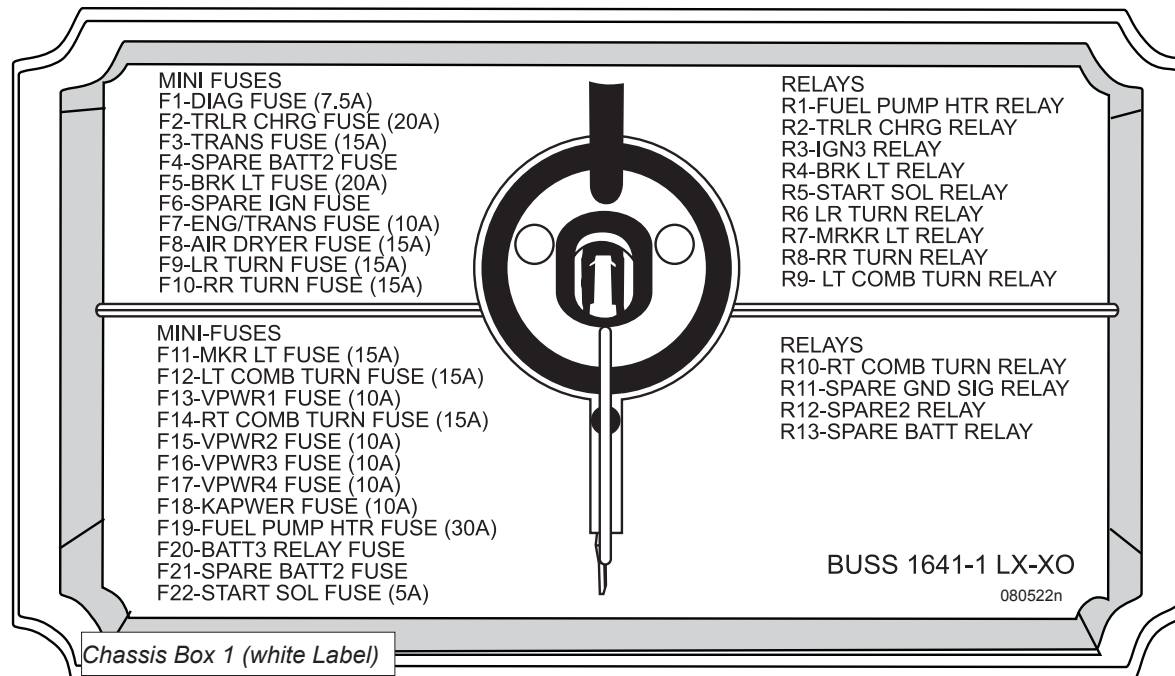
Front distribution panel circuit assignments

NOTE:

Components and location of components will change with options or changes to the motorhome.



1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Outlet	Block Heater Cord	ABS Module	Transmission TCM	Inverter	Front Distrubution Panel	Chassis Fuse Box 1	Chassis Fuse Box 2



BATTERY MAINTAINER

The Battery Maintainer (Bi-Directional Isolator Relay Delay) constantly senses voltage of the house and chassis batteries.

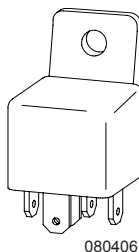
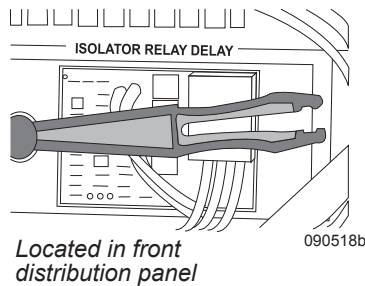
With engine running, both the house and chassis batteries are charged from the engine alternator. When the motorhome is plugged into shore power or operating from the generator, both the house and chassis batteries are charged from the inverter. If neither battery is being charged, the batteries are fully isolated.

The battery maintainer also senses heavy loads on either battery to prevent the wrong battery from being inadvertently discharged.

Relays

The motorhome uses various relays to operate electrical equipment, such as lights and motors. If a relay needs to be replaced, carefully record the location of each wire and all markings or labels.

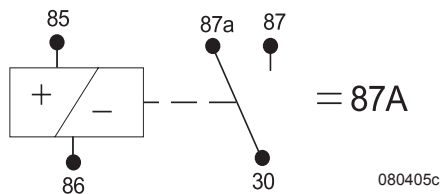
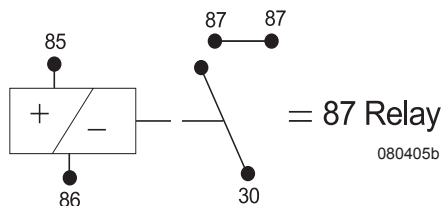
Relays can look the same in appearance, but differ in function. Located on the side of the relay is a schematic identifying the relay as a Number 87 or 87A. The two relay types differ in function and if mixed, will create problems.



Ensure the replacement relay is of the same type and current rating to assure proper operation.

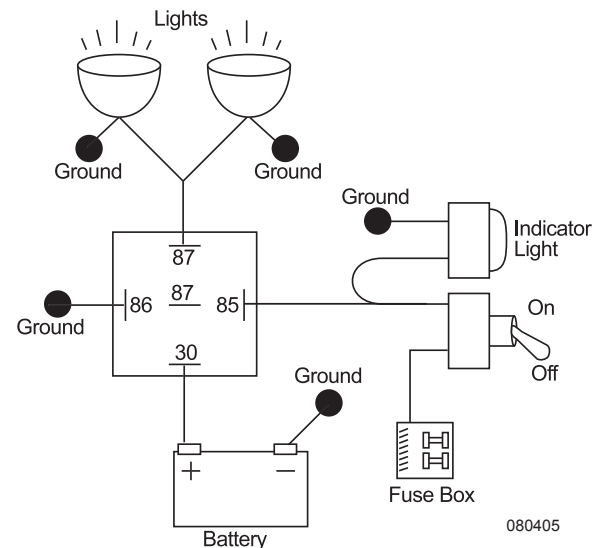
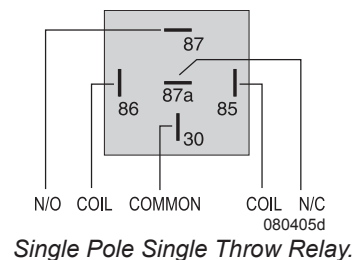
Relay Post Identification:

1. The 30 post is generally the supply from a fuse or circuit. Some applications use the 30 post for ground. The 30 post can be used different ways.
2. The 85 post is one side of the coil, tripped different ways.
3. The 86 post is the opposite side of the coil, tripped different ways.
4. The 87 posts on a Number 87 relay are not common to the 30 post until the relay coil is tripped.
5. The 87A posts on a Number 87A relay, are common to the 30 post at rest (Normally Closed). When the coil is tripped, the 87a post becomes inactive and the 30 post becomes common with the 87 post.



A Single Pole Single Throw relay (SPST) is an electro-magnetic switch consisting of a coil (terminals 85 & 86), one common terminal (30), one normally closed terminal (87a), and one normally open terminal (87).

When the coil of the relay is at rest (not energized) the common terminal (30) and the normally closed terminal (87a) have continuity. When the coil is energized, the common terminal (30) and the normally open terminal (87) have continuity.

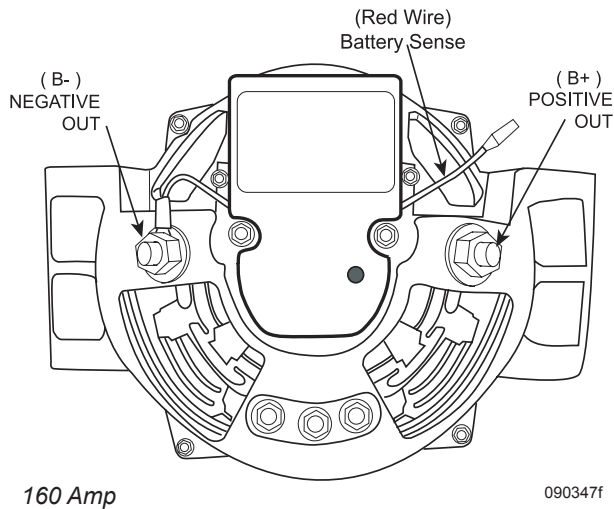


NOTE:

When there is power applied to the coil, the coil sets up a magnetic field in the windings. When the power is removed, the field collapses. A momentary high voltage discharge will occur. This is how an ignition coil works.

ALTERNATOR

The function of the alternator is an electrical system voltage maintainer, not a battery charger. When the engine is operating, the alternator maintains electrical system voltage relative to a load, such as headlights and windshield wipers. When a heavy load is placed on the alternator, such as trying to charge dead house batteries, the operating temperature of the alternator will increase. Excess operating temperature of the alternator for extended periods of operation can lead to premature failure of the alternator.



The alternator replaces amp hours the chassis battery used to start the engine. The amount of charge the alternator sends to the chassis battery is dependent on the amount of time the engine is operated. Repeatedly starting the engine for short periods may not be enough operating time to adequately replace the amp hours the chassis battery uses to start the engine.

Monitor the voltmeter when traveling. Normal readings are between 13 to 14.5 Volts DC. Voltage indications higher or lower indicate a potential problem with the charging system. If alternator output drops below an acceptable level, an Alt Fail warning will illuminate.

NOTE:

The alternator is not designed to charge the house batteries from a complete discharge to a full state of charge. The alternator will maintain battery charge during travel, supplying the DC current necessary to operate running lights or other DC loads.

If the house batteries are in a low state of charge, it is recommended to charge the house batteries with the converter/inverter or an auxiliary battery charger before driving the motorhome.

CAUTION:

Long-term use of the inverter to operate the microwave while in transit will damage the alternator. Use the generator to operate the microwave while in transit.

Alternator Testing Procedure

Alternator Testing:

- ◆ Check all wiring for burnt or loose electrical connections. Repair as needed.

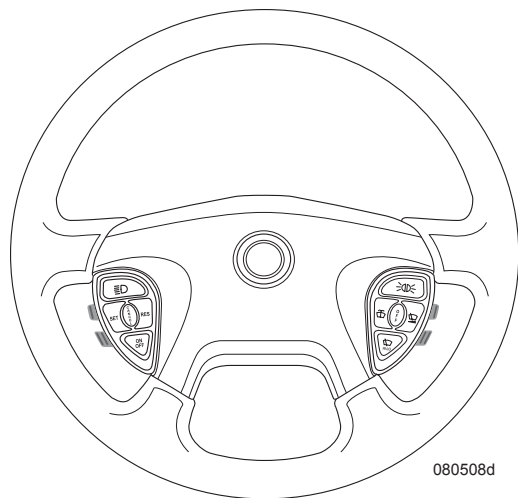
- ◆ Check all grounds and electrical connections to confirm they are clean and tight.
 - Alternator ground to chassis frame.
 - Motor block ground to chassis frame.
 - Chassis battery ground to chassis frame.
 - Alternator positive output to isolator relay terminal.
- ◆ Inspect the alternator for damage.
- ◆ Check belt, pulley and fan for wear. Replace as needed.
- ◆ **Do not** disconnect the battery or battery wire from the alternator with the engine running as this can damage the alternator or regulator.
- ◆ The pulley for the alternator should be torqued to 80 ft. lbs.
- ◆ Chassis battery voltage with the engine off should range from 12.2 to 12.7 Volts DC.
- ◆ Chassis battery voltage with the engine running should range 13.0 to 14.5 Volts DC.

CAUTION:

The alternator is not a battery charger. The alternator is designed to maintain proper electrical system voltage. A battery with a low state of charge, or a dead battery, may overheat and damage the alternator.

STEERING WHEEL & COLUMN

The steering wheel features cruise control, headlight and wiper controls as well as paddle switches for basic operation of the dash radio.



NOTE:

See *Section 5 Dash Radio* for paddle switch operation.

Horn: Press center of steering wheel to sound the horn.

Left Control

≡D Headlamp Flash: With the headlamps off, pressing the switch will turn the headlamps on. With the headlamps on, pressing the switch will turn the headlamps off but marker lights remain illuminated.

If equipped with Daytime Running Lights (Transport Canada requirement), the headlamps will illuminate full brightness when the switch is pressed. With the headlamps on (headlamps and marker lights illuminated), pressing the switch will dim headlamps to 80% brightness of low beam.

Cruise Control

Cruise On/Off: Turns cruise control power On or Off. Dash Icon will illuminate indicating cruise control power is enabled.

WARNING:

Cruise control is not designed to replace driver attentiveness. While cruise control can be used as an aid in driving, it is not a substitute for safe driving practices and driver alertness and awareness.

Cruise Set/Res: Cruise Set sets and maintains road speed.

To Set Cruise Control Speed:

1. Accelerate to desired speed.
2. Turn cruise control power On.
3. Press the Set switch. This will set cruise control and maintain road speed automatically.

Road speed may vary by one or two miles an hour (depending on terrain) when cruise control is enabled. Cruise speed can be increased or decreased one or two mph by momentarily pressing Res to increase or Set to decrease road speed. Pressing and holding Res will gradually increase road speed. When the desired speed has been obtained, release the switch. This speed will be the new set cruise speed. Pressing and holding Set will slowly decrease road speed. Release the Set switch when the desired road speed has been obtained. Cruise Res returns vehicle speed to previously set cruise speed after a brake application or cruise cancel has been pressed.

To Cancel Cruise Control:

- ◆ Step on the brake.
- ◆ Press the cruise cancel button.
- ◆ Turn cruise control power off.

To return to the previously set cruise speed, momentarily press Res. Cruise speed in memory is deleted when cruise control power is turned off. Follow steps 1 through 3 above to reengage cruise control.

WARNING:

For safety purposes Do Not engage cruise control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved. Do Not shift the transmission into “N” (Neutral) with the cruise control engaged. Engine speed may dramatically increase until cruise control is cancelled or turned off.

NOTE:

The transmission shift schedule is automatically adjusted when Cruise power is enabled to prevent unnecessary downshifts. Turn off Cruise power in congested traffic and mountainous terrain.

NOTE:

The transmission will not shift into gear if the engine RPM is at or above 900. The display will flash “6” indicating the engine RPM is excessive. Select “N” and lower the engine RPM. The brake also deactivates high idle.

To Use High Idle Feature:

- ◆ Turn Cruise switch on.
- ◆ Press and hold Res. Engine speed will rise until released.
- ◆ Press and hold Set until engine speed returns to idle.

Right Control

 **Marker Flash:** Pressing Marker Flash causes the taillights and all marker lights to momentarily illuminate with the headlights off. Pressing Marker Flash with the headlights on will cause all marker lights and taillights to go off.

Wiper Function

Turning on any wiper function will turn on the headlamps. To turn the headlights off; turn off the ignition, or activate then deactivate the dashboard headlamp switch.

Off: Cancels all wiper operations. Wiper function is also cancelled when the ignition is turned off.

Hi-Lo: When the button is pressed, wipers activate on low speed. If the button is pressed again, the high wiper speed setting is activated. Subsequently pressing the Hi-Lo button will alternate wiper operation between low and high speed mode.

Wiper Wash: Activates the wash pump relay while the button is pressed. If no wiper function is selected, the low wiper will activate for a period of approximately three wiper cycles, after the switch is released. If any wiper functions are selected, the wipers will continue to run in the selected mode after the wash button is released.

Wiper Variable: Pressing the Wiper Variable button activates the wipers on low speed for one wipe. If the button is pressed again within approximately 30 seconds, the low speed wiper function activates and repeats at an interval determined by the time between the last two operations of the button. Additional button operations will shorten the cycle. Activating other wiper modes cancels the variable wiper mode.

Example: In light rain or misting conditions press the button once to initially clear the windshield. When the windshield requires a second clearing, press the button again. This sets the timed interval between subsequent wipes. To extend the wipe interval, press the intermittent button twice or switch the wipers off and use the same method to set the desired interval.

Tilt & Telescope

Tilt and telescope settings are set by a lever on the steering column.

To Tilt:

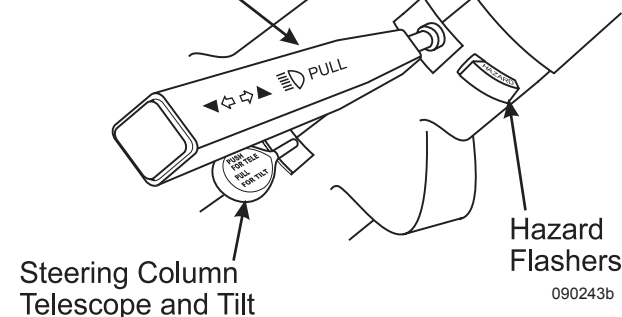
- ◆ Pull the lever up and tilt the steering wheel to the desired level.
- ◆ Release the lever to lock the steering wheel in the new position.

To Telescope:

- ◆ Push and hold the lever down.
- ◆ Move the steering wheel to the desired location.
- ◆ Release the lever to lock the steering wheel in the new position.

Push Forward For Right Turn,
Pull Back For Left Turn

For Bright or Dim
Headlights Pull Up and
Release



Turn Signal Lever

A turn signal lever is located on the steering column. The ignition must be on for the signals to operate.

To Activate:

- ◆ Push the lever forward to activate right turn indicator.
- ◆ Pull the lever back to activate left turn indicator.

NOTE:

A turn signal minder is activated with turn signal operation. Applying the brake cancels the turn signal minder.

Turn Signal Indicator on Mirror: For safety, a turn signal indicator is mounted on side mirror.

Headlight High/Low Beam:

- ◆ Pull the turn signal lever up to select high/low beam circuits when the headlights are on.

Hazard Flashers

A hazard flasher button is located on the steering column.

To Activate:

- ◆ To turn on the hazard flashers, pull out on the flasher button.
- ◆ To turn off the flashers, push the button in.

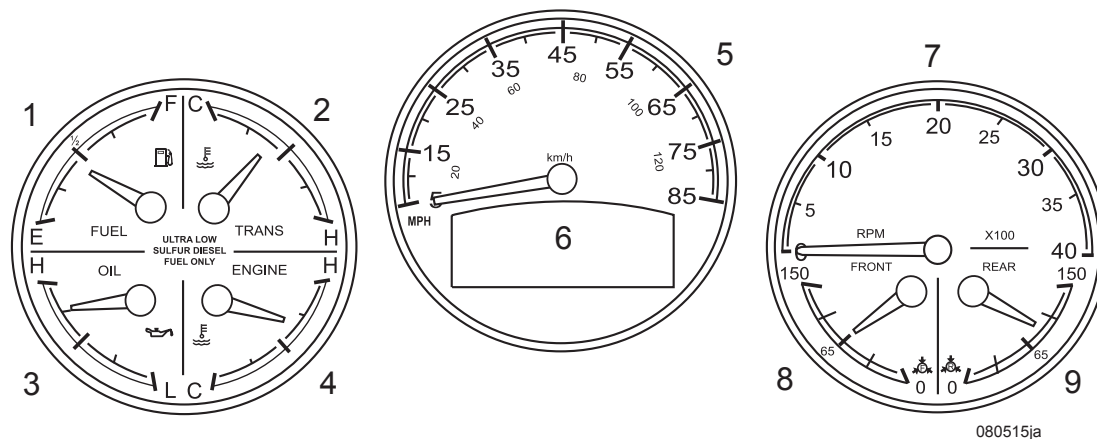
**DASH
Instrument Panel****NOTE:**

Some items depicted may not be used.

- 1. Fuel:** Indicates approximate fuel remaining with ignition switch in the on position.

NOTE:

Fuel mileage varies with driving style and road conditions. Average more than one tank of fuel when calculating miles per gallon. The diesel generator uses fuel from main tank and will affect fuel mileage calculations. The diesel generator will not operate below ¼ tank to ensure sufficient fuel to run the engine.



- 2. Trans Temp:** Shows approximate temperature of the transmission fluid. Do not let the transmission oil temperature exceed OEM specifications. If excess temperature is indicated, stop the motorhome and shift to neutral. Accelerate the engine between 1200 and 1500 RPM to allow transmission temperature to return to normal.

- 3. Oil Pressure:** Indicates oil pressure not the amount of oil in the engine. Refer to the OEM engine manual for specific pressure recommendations.

WARNING:

If oil pressure drops and the Check Engine icon (Warning Triangle) illuminates, immediately shut off the engine and check oil level.

NOTE:

Oil pressure will be higher due to increased viscosity (thickness) of the oil when the engine is cold.

- 4. Coolant Temp:** Indicates an approximate normal operating range. Monitor this gauge frequently when ascending grades, towing or in high ambient temperatures. If the needle indicates an out of range condition, take immediate action to avoid engine damage. Refer to the OEM engine manual for specific temperature recommendations.

- 5. Speedometer:** Indicates road speed. The gauge indicates MPH and KPH.

- 6. Odometer:** Displays total mileage.

- 7. Tachometer:** Displays engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM).

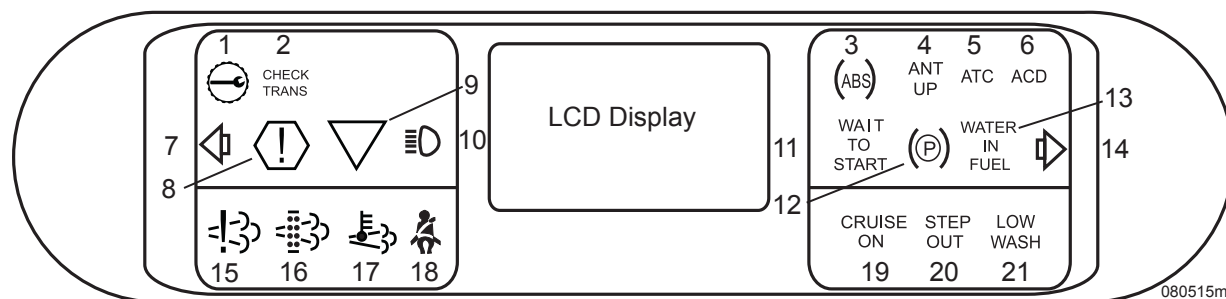
8./9. Air Pressure Gauge: Uses two needles to indicate air system pressures. One needle indicates air pressure of the front air tank. The other needle indicates air pressure of the rear air tank. The normal air system operating pressures are 110 to 135 psi. These air pressures are preset at the factory. If a problem occurs with either air system not maintaining normal operating pressure, it is an indication of a malfunction in the air system. Use caution and stop the motorhome in a safe area. Contact a qualified technician immediately.

Lcd Display

The LCD displays chassis data and fault codes. A ten button controller is located on the dash. Press the up and down arrows to scroll through menus, and press the enter button to select items.

The LCD will show the following warnings:

- ◆ Eng Comm Failure
- ◆ ABS Comm Failure
- ◆ Trans Comm Failure
- ◆ Low Oil Pressure
- ◆ High Trans Temp
- ◆ High Coolant Temp
- ◆ Low/High Battery
- ◆ Low Air Pressure – Front
- ◆ Low Air Pressure – Rear
- ◆ Low Fuel Level
- ◆ Engine Not Running
- ◆ Low Coolant Level
- ◆ Alt Fail



- ◆ Headlight On
- ◆ Turn Signal
 - For “Turn Signal” to display, the motorhome must be driven at least one mile with turn signal activated before warning appears.

How to Adjust Screen Contrast:

1. Press Diag button on LCD Controller.
2. Arrow down to 4 - Ins. Diag. Press enter.
3. Arrow down to 5 - Contrast. Press enter.
4. Use arrow buttons to select value desired. 40 is the default value.
5. Press Main button on LCD Controller to exit.

Indicator Lights

1. **Transmission Prognostics:** Indicates transmission service is due: See *Transmission Section 10* for further information.
2. **Check Trans:** Alerts of problems related to the transmission. See *Transmission in Section 10* for further information.
3. **ABS:** Indicates a fault in the Anti-lock Brake (ABS) system. Normal service braking is not affected.

4. Ant Up: N/A

5. ATC: Indicates the Automatic Traction Control (ATC) switch is activated or automatic traction control has enabled due to an ATC event.

6. ACD: N/A

7. Left Turn: Left turn indicator: Audible turn signal minder cancels when the brake is applied.

8. Stop Engine (Hexagon): A severe out of range condition exists within the engine protection circuits. Shut off the engine to avoid serious engine damage. Illuminates when coolant temperature is excessive, low oil pressure or the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) is clogged. Refer to OEM engine manual for further information.

9. Check Engine (Warning Triangle): Out of range condition exists within the engine protection circuits. Check water temperature, oil pressure or Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) indicators. A diagnostic trouble code is also logged. Refer to the OEM engine manual for further information.

- 10. Headlight Beam:** Turns on when high beams are active.
- 11. Wait To Start:** Monitors the air intake heater at engine start up. Wait for the lamp to cycle off before cranking the engine.
- 12. Park Brake:** Parking/emergency brake is applied.
- 13. Water in Fuel:** Water is detected in the secondary fuel filter.
- 14. Right Turn:** Right turn indicator: Audible turn signal minder cancels when the brake is applied.
- 15. DPF Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL):** Indicates an out of range condition with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) sensor. See *Diesel Particulate Filter Section 10* for more information.
- 16. DPF Indicator Lamp:** Illuminates when pressure inside the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) reaches a predetermined level. See *Diesel Particulate Filter Section 10* for more information.
- 17. DPF HEST:** The HEST (High Exhaust System Temperature) light turns on when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) temperature exceeds 750° F. No fault exists as long as there are no other active warning lights. See *Diesel Particulate Filter Section 10* for more information.
- 18. Seatbelt Warning:** Illuminates for 8 seconds accompanied by an alarm at each ignition cycle as reminder to fasten seatbelts.
- 19. Cruise On:** Indicates cruise control power is enabled.

- 20. Step Out:** Indicates the entry step is partially or fully extended.
- 21. Low Wash:** Indicates a low level of washer fluid in the reservoir.

NOTE:

Some items may not be applicable indicated by N/A.

LCD Controller

Main – Press at any time to return to the main screen. The main screen displays outside temperature, chassis battery voltage and odometer.

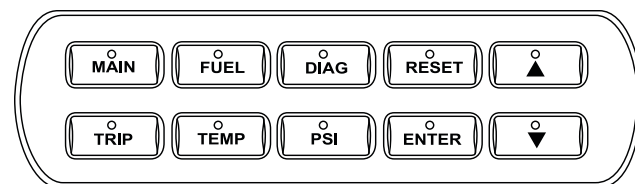
Trip – Press to view Trip menu. Use the up or down arrow to highlight a trip, and press the Enter button to view trip information. Trip information includes average speed, distance traveled, trip time and fuel used.

Fuel – Press to display average miles per gallon, instantaneous miles per gallon, and fuel used. Hold the reset button for five seconds to clear.

Temp – Press to view outside, basement, transmission and engine coolant temperature.

Diag – Press to view engine, transmission, ABS, and LCD diagnostic menu. Use the up and down arrow to highlight an option from the menu. Press the Enter button to view diagnostic information and options.

PSI – Press to view oil pressure, turbo boost pressure and front and rear air tank PSI.



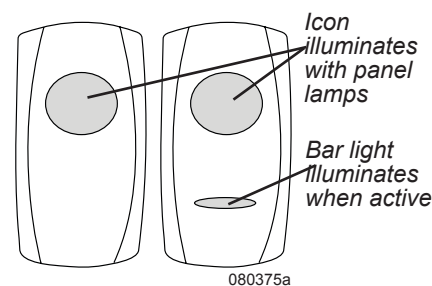
LCD Controller

080515f

Reset – Press and hold for five seconds to clear selected trip information (trips 1 through 4 can be individually selected for reset).

SWITCHES

Dash switches come either with or without a bar light. The bar light indicates the item/function is active. Icon lighting for both switch types illuminate with panel lamps. Dash switches can be illuminated and dimmed if desired, by turning the headlight switch counterclockwise. Rotating clockwise dims and turns off the switch light.



Typical switch configuration

- Driver's Console**Exh Brake:**

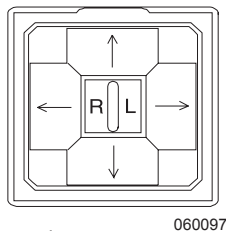
Turns the exhaust brake on or off.

To use:

Turn switch on then release the throttle. The exhaust brake will activate. See Section 10 **"Exhaust Brake"**.

Batt Boost: A switch that connects the house batteries and chassis batteries to assist in starting the engine in the event the motorhome chassis battery has been drained and cannot start the engine.

Mirror Adjust: Used to adjust the top rear view mirror. Place the select switch to the desired side (left or right). Use the outside control to adjust the mirror.



Once mirrors are adjusted, place the select switch to the center position to prevent accidental movement.

Mirror Heat: Turns on the heaters in outside rear view mirrors. The mirror heaters should be used when defogging or deicing is needed. Mirror heat should be turned off unless continuous fogging conditions occur.

~ Dash & Center Console

Headlight Switch: Pull one click to operate the marker lights and taillights. Pull two clicks to operate the headlights, marker lights and taillights. Rotate the headlight switch to change switch backlight intensity. Rotate the headlight switch fully counterclockwise to turn on the map light. The battery cutoff switch must be on for the map light to operate.



NOTE:

A warning bell will sound if the headlights are on and the ignition is turned off.

Parking Brake: The parking brake is activated by pulling outward on the knob. The parking brake is released when the knob is pushed inward. Prior to driving, allow the air system to fully pressurize as indicated by the purge cycle of the air dryer.

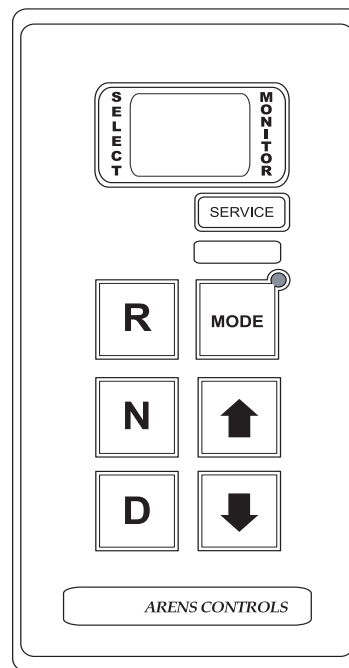


WARNING:

It is possible for the parking brake to accidentally release if the air system is charged. It is advised to fabricate a device to place under the parking brake handle to prevent children or pets from releasing the brake when parked. A wooden clothespin, clasped to the shaft, is suitable.

Transmission Shift Selector:

Selects between neutral, forward and reverse. Mode selects economy mode. See *Transmission in Section 10* for more information.



ATC: The ATC system improves traction on slippery or unstable surfaces by preventing excessive wheel slip. (See *Section 10 ABS/ATC* for detailed information.)

Request Regen: Three position switch (center off) used to initiate a parked regeneration cycle of the DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter) or cancel a parked regeneration cycle until the next ignition cycle. See *Diesel Particulate Filter in Section 10* for more information.

Front Shade: Operates the windshield blackout shade.

CAUTION:

Do not operate the motorhome unless the power shade is fully raised.

Inhibit Regen: Disables a stationary regeneration cycle of the diesel particulate filter currently in progress. Used when the motorhome needs to be relocated before a parked regeneration cycle is complete. See *Diesel Particulate Filter in Section 10* for more information.

Fog Lights: Operates the fog lights with the ignition key on and the headlights set to low beam. The fog lights will go off when the headlights are switched to high beam.

Gen On/Off: The generator automatically initiates a preheat cycle when the switch is pressed to Start. The preheat cycle is indicated by the light on the switch flashing rapidly. Depending on ambient temperature, the preheat cycle may last up to fifteen seconds.

Radio: This is a power switch for the radio. The Radio On/Off switch and Battery Cutoff switch must be on for the dash radio to operate.

Dimmer/Rheostat:

Controls gauge backlighting when the headlight switch is on.



080416

- Passenger Console

Map Light: Turns on passenger map light. House battery cutoff switch must be on.

Front Shade: Operates the power shade.

CAUTION:

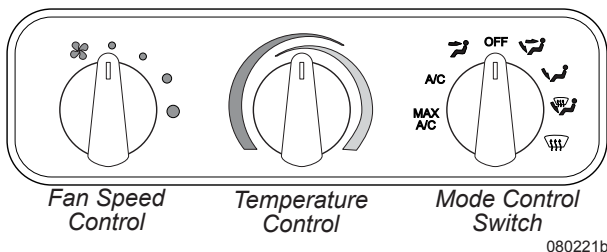
Do not operate the motorhome unless the power shade is fully raised.

AIR CONDITIONER & HEATER CONTROLS
Blend Air System

The system is designed to provide heating, cooling and defrost for the pilot and co-pilot area. The system is not capable of heating or cooling the entire motorhome.

Fan Speed Switch: Controls speed of the blower motor.

Temperature Control Switch: The red zone regulates the amount of warm air in any heating mode. The blue zone regulates the amount of cool air. The blue zone is also used to regulate temperature with A/C and Max A/C functions.



080221b

Mode Control Switch: Directs air flow to points indicated.

NOTE:

The air conditioning compressor is activated when using Max A/C, A/C, Mix and Defrost.

LUBE

Activate the A/C system monthly to keep internal components of the compressor lubricated.

Max A/C – Recirculates interior air. Use this setting for maximum cooling. Rotate temperature control to the blue zone then select desired fan speed. In Max A/C mode, the temperature control setting will have minimal effect. Air is discharged through the dash louvers and foot louvers.

**MAX
A/C**

NOTE:

At the beginning of the day, initially activate the air conditioning system with engine speed at idle. This will avoid sudden high speed activation resulting in possible damage to the compressor from lack of adequate lubrication.

A/C – Uses outside air. Use this setting for cooling. Adjust fan speed and temperature to the desired comfort level. Air is discharged through the dash louvers and foot louvers.

A/C

Vent – Uses outside air. Adjust fan speed and temperature for desired comfort level. Air is discharged through the dash louvers. The A/C compressor will not activate in this mode.



Off – Use this setting to turn the system off. This will shut off the blower and prevent outside air from entering the motorhome.

OFF

Bi-Level – Uses outside air. Adjust fan speed and temperature to the desired comfort level. Air is discharged through the dash louvers and the foot louvers. The A/C compressor will not activate in this mode.



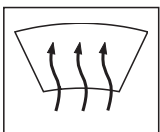
Floor – Uses outside air. Use this setting for maximum heating. Adjust temperature and fan speed to the desired comfort level. The A/C compressor will not activate in this mode. The system may discharge a small amount of air through the dash louvers.



Mix – Uses outside air. Use this setting for floor heat and defrost. Adjust fan speed and temperature to the desired comfort level. The A/C compressor will engage in this mode to help dehumidify the air.



Defrost – Uses outside air. Use this setting for maximum defrost. Adjust fan speed and temperature to the desired comfort level. The A/C compressor will engage in this mode to help dehumidify the air.



TIP:

Air will heat faster with a slower fan speed until normal operating temperature ranges are reached.

WARNING:

In extreme weather, it may be necessary to manually remove moisture from the interior side of the windshield to maintain clarity of vision. Do Not operate the motorhome if vision is obstructed by moisture or ice on the windshield.

Maintenance

A seasonal inspection should be performed by a qualified service technician. Some items to check include:

- ◆ Inspect the inlet to the evaporator coil for lint, dirt or other foreign materials which may have been drawn into the unit. Any obstruction of the evaporator coil will impair cooling efficiency and reduce air flow.
- ◆ Clean the condenser coil of bugs, leaves, or other debris.
- ◆ Inspect compressor drive belt for wear and proper tension.

Operating Tips & Hints

Air intake and discharge temperatures are greatly affected by ambient temperatures and relative humidity. A large amount of cooling capacity is used to dehumidify as well as cool the air. After three to five minutes of A/C operations, discharged air temperature should be approximately 20° F. cooler than the fresh or recirculated air entering the A/C system.

Winter Use:

- ◆ De-ice the windshield using the defrost mode.
- ◆ Air will heat up faster with a slower fan speed until normal operating temperature ranges are reached.

Summer Use:

- ◆ Close all windows and vents to hot, humid outside air.
- ◆ Max A/C and high fan speed provides quick cool down.
- ◆ Use a lower fan speed to produce cooler air.
- ◆ Temperature control switch must be set to the blue zone for cool air.

Heat and Defrost Operation:

- ◆ Set the mode control switch to the desired position.
- ◆ Set the temperature control switch to the red zone.

Heater: The heater warms the air in the dash area. Much like the refrigeration side of the system, a liquid will be used in the process. This liquid is the engine coolant. The coolant is passed from the radiator to an electronic water valve. When open, the water valve will allow the coolant to flow through the heater core. The heater core is much like a miniature radiator. Air is drawn into the system by a blower motor through the outside recirculation door opening. Air is blown through the A/C evaporator core and then through the heater core. When the temperature control is in the warm position coolant flows through the heater core. When the temperature is in the cool position coolant flow bypasses the heater core. In either position, the airflow is felt at the discharge vents.

Electric Water Valve: The water valve controls the water flow to the heater core.

Functional Test:

- ◆ Start and operate the engine until the water reaches normal operating temperature.
- ◆ Set the HVAC temperature control to the full hot position.
- ◆ The discharge air outlets should have hot air.
- ◆ Rotate the temperature control to full cold position.

- ◆ Allow 10 minutes for the temperature to stabilize.
- ◆ The discharge air outlets should have cold air.

System Components

Compressor - The compressor is belt driven from the engine through the compressor and electronic clutch pulley. The compressor will pump refrigerant from a low-pressure gas into a high-pressure, high-temperature gas. This is the start of the refrigeration process.

Condenser - The condenser is made of coils and fins which provide rapid transfer of heat from the refrigerant as external air passes over the coils. The high-pressure gas is changed to a high-pressure liquid.

Condenser Fan - A steady flow of cooling air is maintained across the condenser during system operations.

Receiver-Drier - Refrigerant leaves the condenser, enters the receiver-drier and is stored until needed. The drier filters out moisture in the system. It only takes one drop of moisture to cause a malfunction in the cooling unit.

Expansion Valve - The expansion valve suppresses refrigerant into the evaporator according to cooling requirements. The pressure is reduced in the restrictive effort of the expansion valve. A part of the valve is the capillary tube assembly. The capillary tube is the sensing bulb at the outlet of the evaporator.

Evaporator - A tube core and fins are used in the evaporator similar to the condenser. Air is blown through the fins to allow the evaporator to cool and reduce pressure.

Blower and Motor - The evaporator has a fan called the blower. The blower will draw air from the cab area and force the air over the evaporator coils and fins. This forced air will ensure continuous vaporizing of the refrigerant.

Relays and Switches - Both electronic and vacuum switches are used in the control and operations of the system.

Troubleshooting

No Cooling:

- ◆ Check that the blower is operating
- ◆ The mode switch is set to Max A/C or A/C position. The temperature control is set to the blue zone.
- ◆ System fuses are not blown.
- ◆ Condenser fan is operating.
- ◆ Check power supply to the unit and grounding of system.
- ◆ Check wiring.
- ◆ Drive belt is loose or broken.
- ◆ Compressor clutch is inoperative, does not engage.
- ◆ Expansion valve is faulty or frozen.
- ◆ Thermostat control is faulty.
- ◆ Mode control switch is faulty.
- ◆ Compressor is faulty.
- ◆ Loss of refrigerant.

NOTE

An ultraviolet or UV blue light cube is used for leak detection when dye is introduced to the A/C System.

Reduced Cooling:

- ◆ Coolant valve not operating correctly.
- ◆ Air passages obstructed or restricted.
- ◆ Loose or worn drive belt.
- ◆ Check fan and mode switch.
- ◆ Temperature control is faulty.
- ◆ Expansion valve is faulty.
- ◆ Compressor is faulty.
- ◆ Low refrigerant charge.

No Heating:

- ◆ Verify the proper engine coolant level.
- ◆ Verify the engine is at operating temperature.
- ◆ Verify engine coolant is reaching water valve attached to unit.
- ◆ Verify operation of water valve to permit engine coolant to pass through valve to heater core.
- ◆ Check unit fuses.
- ◆ Check power supply to water valve and grounding.
- ◆ Check wiring.
- ◆ Engine thermostat faulty.

Blower Does Not Operate or Runs Slow:

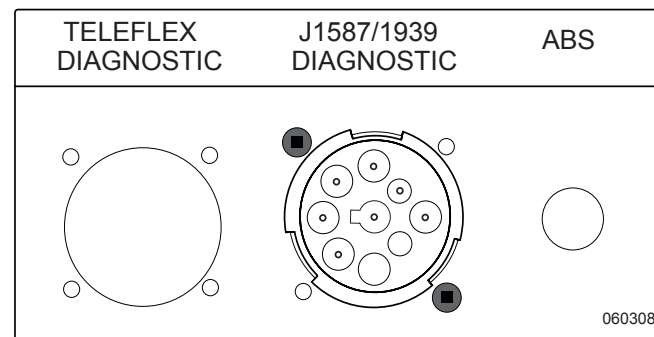
- ◆ Check fuses.
- ◆ Check for loose or corroded connection.
- ◆ Check wiring.
- ◆ Check fan and mode switch.
- ◆ Blower motor is seized.
- ◆ Blower wheel is out of alignment.

DIAGNOSTIC DATA PORT

ABS/ATC, engine and transmission systems communicate electronically over SAE J1939. J1587 is used to retrieve diagnostic codes from a particular system. The data port located left of the steering column below the dash has both J1939/J1587.

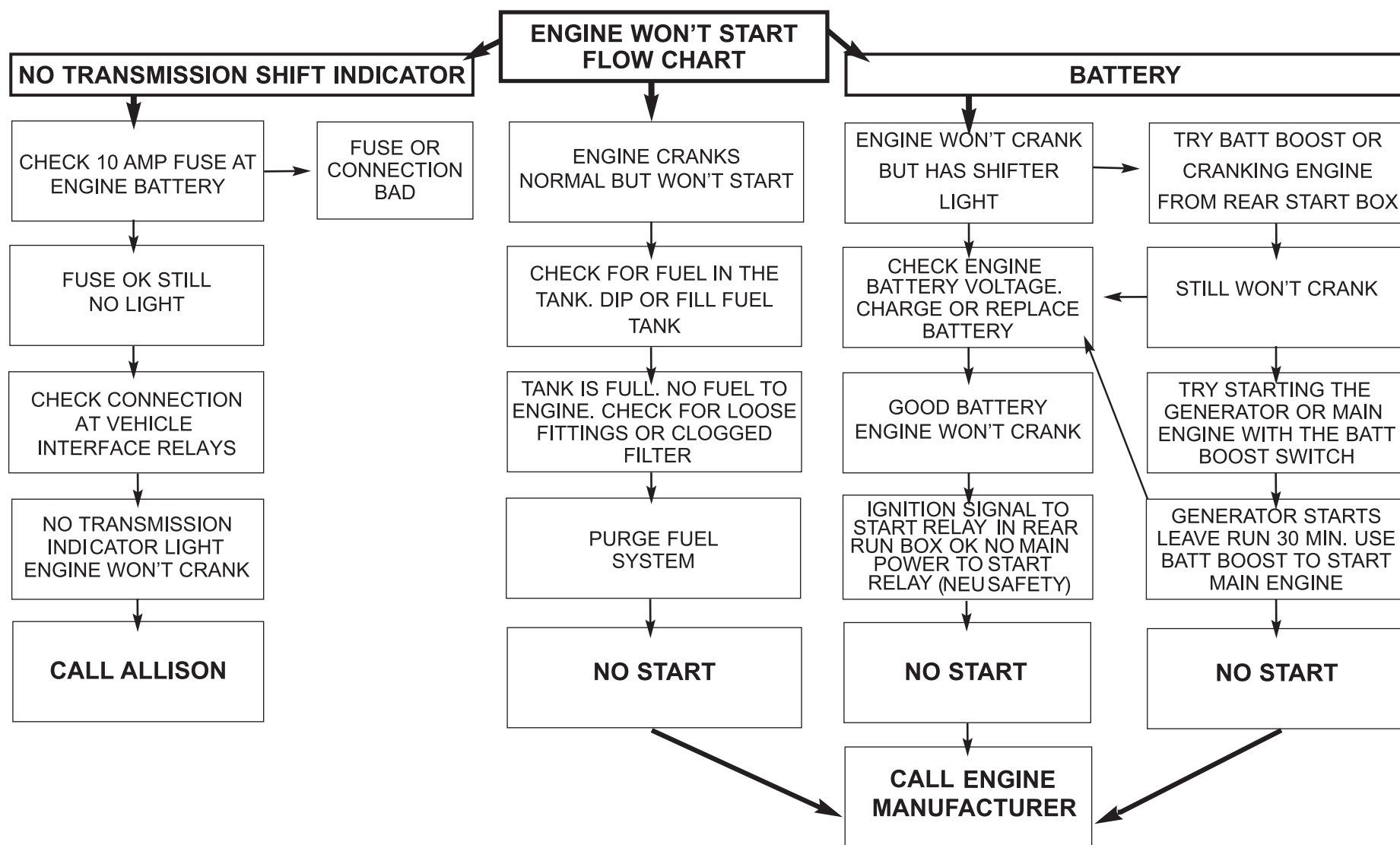
Engine Diagnostics:

Engine diagnostics will notify the operator of deviations from programmed limits of the engine by illumination of the Check Engine (Warning Triangle) and/or Stop Engine (Hexagon) light(s) on dash. If either indicator illuminates, a diagnostic code will be logged and stored in system memory. These codes are accessed by a service technician using special equipment.



Located under dash left of steering column.

ENGINE "NO START" FLOW CHART



NOTES

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue or grey ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

Chassis

Section 10



CHASSIS - INTRODUCTION	188	DRIVE AXLE & DRIVE SHAFT	203	FUEL SYSTEM.....	217
AIR SUPPLY SYSTEM.....	188	Drive Axle	203	Fuel Requirements.....	217
Air Governor	189	Drive Shaft.....	204	Fuel Tank.....	217
Air Storage Tanks	189	SHOCK ABSORBER.....	205	Fuel Sender	218
Accessory Air Fitting	190	LEVELING - AIR	205	Fuel Lines & Hoses	218
Air System Charging (External).....	190	Automatic Air Leveling.....	206	Fuel Filters	218
Air Fittings.....	190	Manual Air Leveling	206	HYDRAULIC SYSTEM	219
Air System Test.....	191	Travel Mode	207	Hydraulic Reservoir.....	219
AIR DRYER.....	192	Service	207	Power Steering Hydraulic Filter	220
Desiccant Cartridge.....	193	ENGINE - GENERAL INFORMATION	207	AIR FILTER	220
Desiccant-Type Air Dryer	193	STARTING PROCEDURE	207	DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER	221
Air Dryer Cycle.....	194	Normal Starting.....	207	LUBRICATION MAINTENANCE	223
AIR SPRING INSPECTIONS	194	Cold Weather	208	LUBRICATION CHARTS.....	226
HEIGHT CONTROL VALVES.....	194	ENGINE OIL.....	209	SPECIFICATIONS	228
BRAKE SYSTEMS	195	ENGINE SHUTDOWN	209	Tank Capacities	228
Air Brakes	195	Extended Engine Shutdown	210	Engine Specifications	228
Park & Emergency Brake System	195	COOLANT SYSTEM.....	210	Chassis Fluid Capacities	228
Automatic Slack Adjuster	195	Radiator/Charge Air Cooler	212	Belts & Filters.....	228
Brake Systems - Backup	196	TRANSMISSION	213	Serpentine Belt Routing	228
ABS/ATC SYSTEM (ANTI-LOCK BRAKES)	196	Shift Selector	213	Generator Specifications	229
ABS Diagnostic	197	Trans Service Icon	214	Weight Ratings.....	229
FRONT AXLE	199	Check Trans Icon	214	Battery Specifications.....	229
Wheel Bearings	199	Transmission Fluid	215	MAINTENANCE RECORDS	230
Alignment	200	EXHAUST BRAKE	216		
Lubrication Maintenance Safety	201				
Steering Column	201				
Drag Link	202				
Center Link	202				
Steering Spindles	202				
Control Arm Bushings	202				
Drum Brake Lubrication.....	202				
Steering Gear	203				

CHASSIS - INTRODUCTION

This section contains information and instruction regarding various components of the motorhome chassis. These guidelines and procedures help to understand the various systems and how these systems operate. OEM manuals for the engine and transmission are located in the Owner's Information File.

WARNING:

When welding is involved for motorhome repair or modification, only qualified, experienced technicians should weld on the chassis. Improper welding procedures and materials may weaken the assembly or result in damage that is not obvious and may not cause an immediate problem or failure. Unauthorized modifications or repairs to the chassis could result in a forfeiture of warranty coverage.

DANGER:

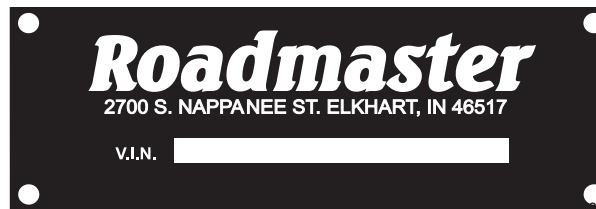
Due to the sensitive nature of the electronics on the chassis, the following precautions are required to protect electrical components in the motorhome chassis.

1. Disconnect the (+) positive and (-) negative battery connection.
2. Cover electronic control components and wiring to protect from hot sparks.
3. Disconnect the terminal plugs from the engine Electronic Control Unit, located on the firewall.

4. Disconnect all the plugs from the Transmission Control Module located in the roadside front electrical bay.
5. Disconnect wiring from the alternator
6. Do Not connect welding cables to electronic control components.
7. Attach the welding ground cable no more than two feet from the part to be welded.

The Roadmaster chassis design provides exceptional balance, handling and braking characteristics. The Roadmaster chassis is an engine and frame unit featuring an all steel frame design, providing greater structural integrity and uniform stress distribution. Incorporated in the Roadmaster chassis is the air suspension system using four air bags and shock absorbers. This design provides the smoothest ride, best handling and trouble free service while delivering excellent drive ability. The Roadmaster chassis design offers unsurpassed ease of maintenance and service.

The tow system is rated 7,000 lbs. towing and 700 lbs. tongue weight.



The Roadmaster's exclusive chassis with air suspension consists of front and rear axles, with trailing links. A panhard bar on each axle controls side motion. Each axle mounts to the trailing links that are connected to the chassis. The design of the chassis offers increased compartment storage space. The suspension control arms attach to the frame through bushings, which require no lubrication. The suspension automatically maintains ride height throughout the load range.

AIR SUPPLY SYSTEM

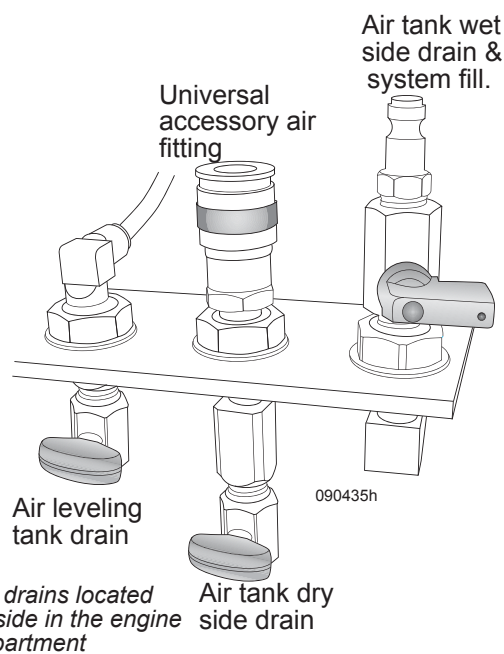
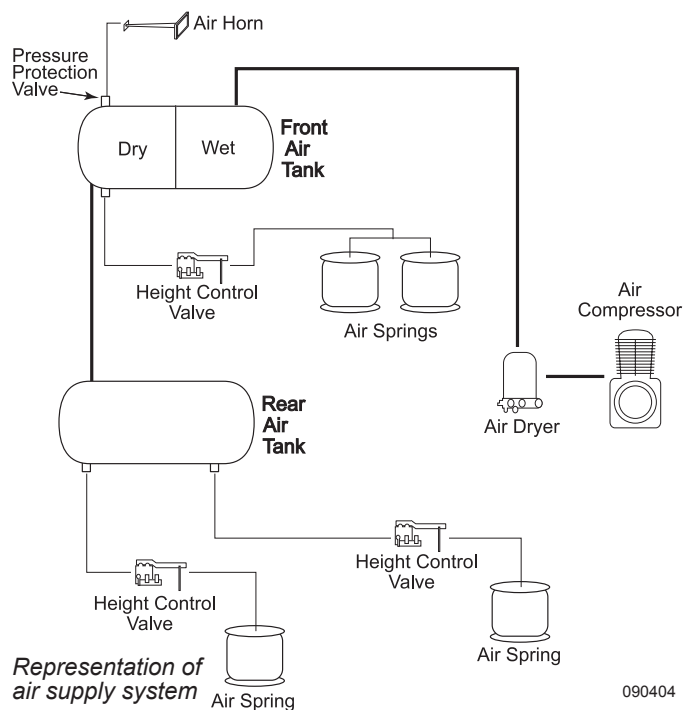
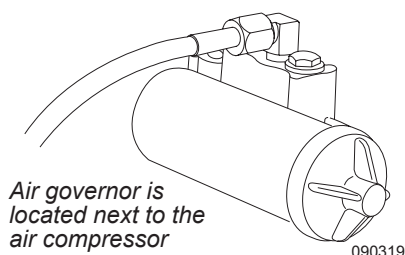
The air compressing system on the motorhome is comprised of several items: air compressor, air governor, air dryer, a front air tank and a rear air tank. The compressed air system operates several items, some of which include brakes, suspension, air gauges and an auxiliary air supply. The air system is charged by a gear driven air compressor mounted on the engine. As engine speed increases, compressed air output increases. When air is compressed, heat is generated. Heat dissipates as air is discharged from the compressor. Moisture condenses in the compressed air as it cools. The moisture laden air then enters an air dryer where the air is filtered. The filtered air charges the front air tank. The front air tank is divided in two halves: a wet side and a dry side. The compressed air enters the wet side before entering the dry side. A discharge line from the dry side of the front air tank charges the rear air tank. Discharge lines use inline check valves to prevent back flow of compressed air.

The pneumatically operated items are divided into two categories: brakes and accessory air. Brakes have full use of supplied air pressure. Accessory air items, such as the auxiliary air fitting, receive air through pressure protection valves (PPV). The PPV will not allow compressed air flow until about 60 psi. In the event of an air system problem, the pressure protection valve will leave a reserve air charge for braking. Pressure protection valves are installed for safety.

Air Governor

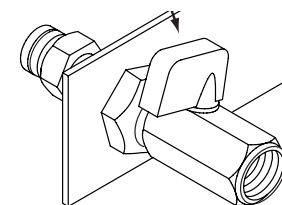
The air governor regulates the air compressor to cut-in and cut-out, keeping the air system in the specified operating range of 110 to 135 psi, then sends an air “purge” signal to the Air Dryer.

Cut-in pressure of about 110 psi is factory preset from the governor manufacturer and is not adjustable. Cut-out pressure is calibrated to approximately 135 psi. When cut-out pressure is reached, the governor will send an air purge signal to the air dryer. This opens the purge port of the air dryer, expelling moisture. The purge action of the air dryer is identified by the short release of air (chuff).



Air Storage Tanks

Two air storage tanks are located on the chassis. Manually drain the air tanks once a month, or more, depending on operating conditions and humidity levels.



Rear tank drain: located next to rear hitch

To Drain the Tanks:

- ♦ Slowly open the drain valves. Moisture will be expelled under pressure. After all moisture and air is purged from the tanks, the valves should remain open an additional five minutes to allow any moisture remaining a chance to drain.
- ♦ Close valves and start engine. Check valves for leaks.

WARNING:

Wear safety glasses to prevent eye injury from expelled moisture. Open drain valves slowly as moisture will be expelled under high pressure.

NOTE:

Both air tanks have a pressure relief valve which is set to release at approximately 150 psi.

Accessory Air Fitting

Provided for convenience is a remote air supply fitting located roadside in the engine compartment just above the steering gear. This female fitting will accept type C automotive connectors. The accessory air fitting can be used to inflate tires, air mattresses or other pneumatic items.

This fitting is not designed to charge the air system on the motorhome. The air supply for the auxiliary air fitting is charged from the front air tank through a pressure protection valve.

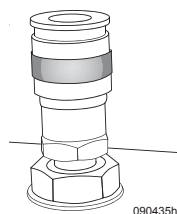
To use this feature:

- ◆ Slide the locking collar back. Using a firm grip, fully insert the air fitting into the auxiliary air supply. Release the locking collar to retain the air fitting after the fitting is properly inserted.

To remove fitting:

- ◆ Firmly grip the air hose near the fitting to prevent recoil.
- ◆ Slide the locking collar back to release fitting. Place dust cap over fitting to keep the fitting clean.

Accessory air fitting



Located roadside in the engine compartment

NOTE:

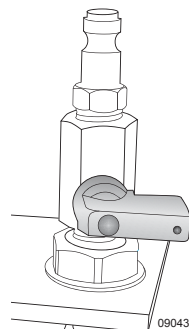
Due to air pressure restrictions in the pressure protection valve and tire stem valve, the maximum amount of tire pressure achieved when the system is used to fill a tire is approximately 115 psi with the air system on the motorhome charged to 130 psi. Maximum outlet air pressure is achieved when the air system completes the fill cycle indicated by the purge cycle of the air dryer.

Air System Charging (External)

The air system on the motorhome can be charged from an external air supply source. Located in the roadside engine compartment is a type C automotive male fitting. Caution should be used when charging the air system from this fitting. The air supplied from an external source may contain moisture. Compressed air introduced into the air system from this fitting is not filtered by the air dryer. The auxiliary air charge fitting will charge the front and rear air tanks. A shut-off valve is installed to prevent air from escaping.

CAUTION:
Regulate the external charge air supply to no more than 120 psi. Damage to the air system or pneumatically operated items may occur.

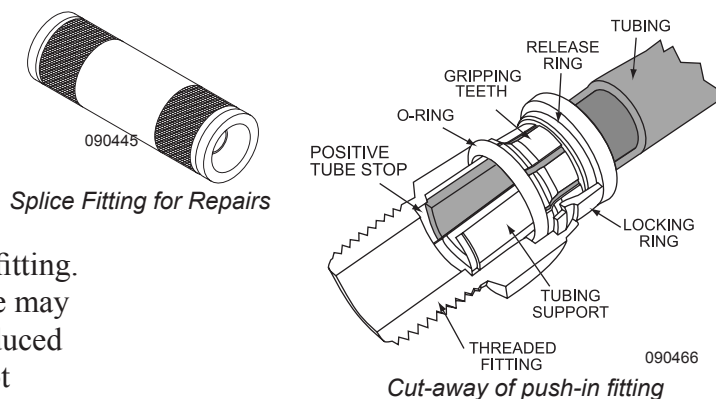
Charge air fitting and front tank drain



Located roadside in the engine compartment

Air Fittings

Push-in fittings are used to connect air hoses between pneumatically operated items. Fittings, sizes and types vary for different applications. Threaded fittings adapt the push-in fittings to connect pneumatically operated items. Parts include the release ring, locking ring, solid brass body and special rubber compound O-ring. Damaged hoses can be repaired by splicing.

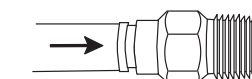


To Disconnect Hose:

- ◆ Push hose into fitting.
- ◆ Push release ring down against locking ring portion of the fitting body.
- ◆ While holding the release ring down, pull hose away from fitting.

DISCONNECT

Push hose and ring in.



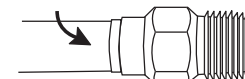
Hold release ring in place.



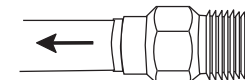
Pull hose away from fitting.

CONNECT

Twist hose into fitting.

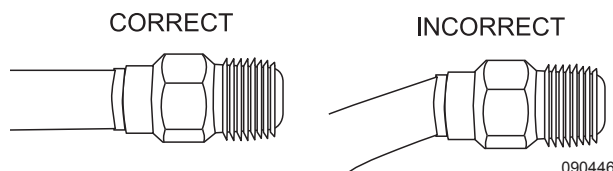


Pull hose to secure.



To Connect Hose:

- ◆ Push hose into fitting through the release ring and the O-ring. Use a slight twisting motion to seat firmly against the internal tube stop.
- ◆ Pull hose away from fitting to expand and set inner seal. Ensure hose is properly retained and aligned with fitting to prevent leaks.

**NOTE:**

When putting hose back into fitting, cut hose at 90° for an even seal in the fitting. The cavity of the positive tubing stop provides support to prevent leakage.

WARNING:

Do not remove air hoses from fittings while system is pressurized. Serious injury may occur.

WARNING:

Do not allow anyone under the motorhome without first properly blocking frame (jackstands) from coming down in case of rapid deflation of air system.

Air System Test

Air system integrity is tested at the factory. The air system is equipped with several safety features. Periodically test these safety features for function as well as checking the air system for possible leaks.

NOTE:

These tests can also be found in the Department of Motor Vehicle (DMV) air brake certification requirement. Some tests will require precautions for safety purposes.

Inflation Rate Test:

This will test how long it takes the air system to achieve a specific pressure in a timed event when starting at a lower pressure. This test will verify the minimum acceptable volume of compressed air created by the air system.

- ◆ Start engine. Increase engine speed to 1000 rpm.
- ◆ Beginning time for the test will commence when air system pressure obtains 85 psi.
- ◆ End time when system pressure obtains 100 psi.

Elapsed time must not exceed 45 seconds.

Air Governor Cutout Test:

The air governor controls action of the air system pump. This will test the air governor cutout pressure setting, which indicates system pressure has achieved maximum set psi.

- ◆ Start engine.
- ◆ Run engine until a chuff (air release) is heard from the air dryer.

Maximum cutout pressure must not exceed 155 psi. Air system pressure will stabilize between 135 to 145 psi.

Unapplied Pressure Loss Test:

This test will verify maximum acceptable air system pressure loss rate without use of any pneumatically operated devices. This test requires a flat, level surface as the park brake will be released with the engine off.

Chock wheels to prevent vehicle movement.

- ◆ Start engine.
- ◆ Run engine until a chuff (air release) is heard from the air dryer.
- ◆ Shut engine off.
- ◆ Release the park brake.

Note system pressure after air system stabilizes from release of park brake. Air system pressure must not lose more than 2 psi per minute.

Applied Pressure Loss Test:

This test will verify the rate of maximum acceptable air system pressure loss with only the service brakes applied. Do not use other pneumatically operated devices during this test. This test requires a flat, level surface as the park brake will be released with the engine off. Chock wheels to prevent vehicle movement.

- ◆ Start engine.
- ◆ Run engine until a chuff (air release) is heard from the air dryer.
- ◆ Shut engine off.
- ◆ Release the park brake.
- ◆ Apply and hold service brake pedal.

Note system pressure after air system pressure stabilizes. Air system pressure must not lose more than 3 psi per minute.

Low Air Warning Test:

This test will verify low air warning buzzer/lamp activation. A Low Air warning buzzer or lamp will sound/illuminate should air system pressure fall to 60 or 65 psi.

- ◆ Start engine.
- ◆ Run engine until low air warning indicators are inactive.

- ◆ Shut engine off then turn key to ignition on.
- ◆ Fan (apply/release in quick succession) service brake pedal.

Low air warning indicator will sound no lower than 60 psi.

Park Brake Apply Test:

The park brake will automatically apply if low air warning indicator(s) are ignored and system pressure falls well below safe operating levels. A flat, level surface is required as the park brake will be released with the engine off. Chock wheels to prevent vehicle movement.

- ◆ Start engine.
- ◆ Run engine until low air warning indicators are inactive.
- ◆ Shut engine off.
- ◆ Release park brake.
- ◆ Fan (apply/release in quick succession) service brake pedal.

The park brake will automatically apply between 20 to 40 psi.

Park Brake Hold Test:

This test will verify engagement of the park brake. A flat, level surface is required. While the test is performed with the park brake applied, use precautions in case of vehicle movement. This test only verifies the park brake is engaged. It is not intended to verify the maximum amount of braking force created by the park brake.

- ◆ Start engine.
- ◆ Place transmission into gear. **Do not** release park brake.
- ◆ Apply light throttle, not to exceed 1,000 RPM.

Test confirms that the park brake is engaged and holding.

Air Governor Cut-In Test:

The air governor controls action of the air system pump. This will confirm the air governor cut-in pressure setting.

- ◆ Start engine.
- ◆ Run engine until a chuff (air release) is heard from the air dryer.
- ◆ Fan (apply/release in quick succession) service brake pedal until system pressure is between 100 and 110 psi.

Air governor cut-in pressure is approximately 110 psi.

Brake Grab Test:

This test will verify brake friction torque between the front wheels. This test requires a rapid and full pressure application of service brake pedal. Use proper precautions to prevent movement of cargo or other items that are not secured. This is a single vehicle test. Select deserted and level road surface (preferably a large and empty parking lot). Road crown, depending on severity, may affect test results.

- ◆ Start engine.
- ◆ Run engine until a chuff (air release) is heard from the air dryer.
- ◆ Release park brake.
- ◆ Accelerate to approximately 5 mph.
- ◆ Rapidly and firmly apply service brake pedal to bring vehicle to an abrupt stop.

The steering wheel will not pull to the left or right if front wheel braking torque is symmetrical.

AIR DRYER

The air dryer, located between the frame rails next to the transmission, removes moisture from the compressed air system to prevent freezing of brakes or other pneumatically operated items. The three functions of the air dryer are cooling, filtering and drying the system air. This prevents valve and seal damage or wash away of lubricants as well as freeze damage to the system components.

Air Dryer Cycle:

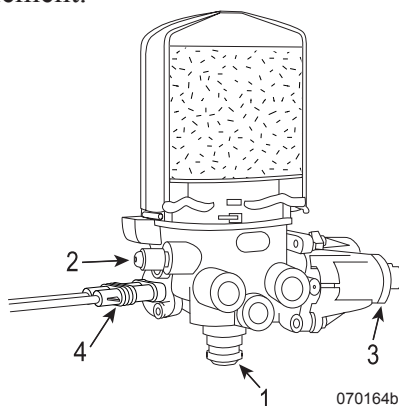
The governor turns the compressor on when the supply tank pressure drops below cut-in pressure. Compressed air then passes into the air dryer at the inlet port. Moisture-laden air and contaminants pass through the desiccant. Moisture is retained by the desiccant and collects in the base of the dryer. When the compressor reaches cut-out pressure the purge valve opens and the dryer purges and expels water collected in the dryer base. The regeneration valve opens sending a small charge of dry system air from the front air tank back through the dryer. The backflow dries the desiccant, preparing it for the next cycle.

Air Dryer Components:

- 1. Purge Valve:** A valve located on the bottom of the air dryer base that remains open during a compressor unload cycle to allow collected moisture, condensation and contamination to expel from the air dryer during the purge cycle.
- 2. Pressure Relief Valve:** Protects the air dryer from over-pressurization.

3. Regeneration Valve: Controls regeneration of the desiccant by allowing air from the supply and secondary tanks to bypass the outlet check valve.

4. Heater Power Connection: Provides 12 Volt DC power to the heating element.



In extreme cold, verify that the air dryer heater is in good working order. The 100-watt heater in the air dryer is controlled by ignition power. The heater turns on below 45° F and off when the air dryer temperature is above 86° F.

WARNING:

Remove all pressure from the air system before disconnecting any component, including the desiccant cartridge. Pressurized air can cause serious personal injury.

Desiccant Cartridge

Warm, humid air from the compressor condenses into either water or water vapor. A desiccant-type air dryer protects the air brake system by drying moisture-laden air before it passes through the air reservoirs and into the brake system. The replacement kit contains one cartridge and one O-ring.



To Replace the Cartridge:

- ◆ Loosen and remove the old cartridge. Use a strap wrench, if necessary.
- ◆ Remove and discard the O-ring from the dryer base.
- ◆ Inspect and clean the seal seat. Repair any minor damage.

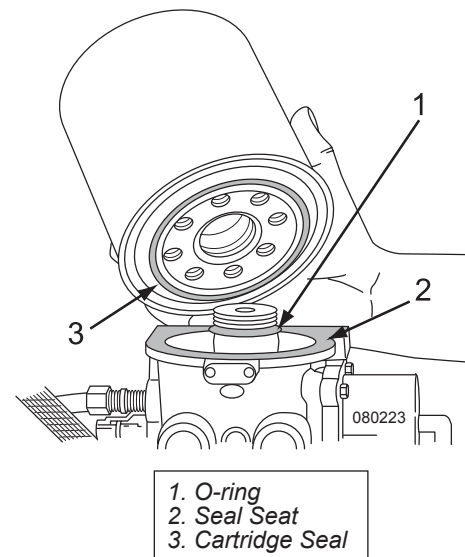
NOTE:

If the seats are damaged that a tight seal cannot be maintained, replace the air dryer.

- ◆ Install a new O-ring.
- ◆ Lubricate the O-ring on the stem with a thin layer of grease.
- ◆ Lubricate the cartridge seal with a thin layer of grease.
- ◆ Thread the replacement cartridge onto the base until the seal touches the base. Tighten the cartridge One additional turn. Do not overtighten.

NOTE:

If an excess amount of water is present when performing the monthly air tank drain service, the filter for the air dryer may need to be changed.



REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Components	When to replace?	Why?
Desiccant Cartridge	• Every two to three years. • When compressor is replaced. • Water in supply tank.	• Preventive maintenance. • Contaminated cartridge. • Saturated or contaminated cartridge, high duty cycle (wrong application of air dryer).

Desiccant-Type Air Dryer

- ◆ Warm, humid air from the compressor condenses into either water or water vapor before entering the air dryer.
- ◆ A desiccant-type air dryer protects the motorhome air brake system by drying moisture-laden air before it passes through the air reservoirs and into the brake system.
- ◆ Water collects in the base of the dryer when warm air condenses the water before it enters the dryer, or inside of the dryer before the water reaches the desiccant.

- ◆ The desiccant material then removes additional water vapor, further drying the air.
- ◆ During regeneration phase, the regeneration valve and pressure-controlled check valve remove water from the desiccant bed with a backflow of dried, expanded system air.

Air Dryer Cycle

The governor turns the compressor on when the supply tank pressure drops below cut-in pressure. Compressed air passes into the air dryer at the inlet port:

- ◆ Moisture-laden air and contaminants pass through the desiccant.
- ◆ Moisture is retained by the desiccant. Moisture also collects in the base of the dryer.
- ◆ The governor turns the compressor off when the system reaches cutout pressure (approximately 130 psi).
- ◆ The dryer purges and expels water collected in the dryer base.
- ◆ When the regeneration valve opens, the dry system air flows back through the dryer. A small charge of air from the front air tank backflows through the filter. The backflow dries the desiccant, preparing it for the next cycle.

AIR SPRING INSPECTIONS

Items listed below should be checked when the motorhome is in for periodic maintenance.

WARNING:

Do not attempt to service the air suspension on a motorhome with the air spring inflated.

- ◆ Inspect the Outer Diameter (OD) of the air springs. Check for irregular wear or heat cracking.
- ◆ Inspect air lines to ensure contact does not exist between air line and OD of the air springs. Air lines can rub a hole in an air spring very quickly.
- ◆ Ensure there is sufficient clearance around the complete circumference of the air spring while at maximum diameter.
- ◆ Inspect the OD of piston for buildup of foreign materials. On a reversible sleeve style air spring, the piston is the bottom component of the air spring.
- ◆ The correct ride height should be maintained. All motorhomes with air springs have a specified ride height established by the manufacturer. This height should be maintained within $\frac{1}{4}$ inch. This dimension can be checked with the motorhome loaded or empty.
- ◆ The leveling valves (or height control valves) assist in ensuring the total air spring system works as required. Clean, inspect and replace if necessary.
- ◆ Make sure to check shock absorbers for leaking hydraulic oil and worn or broken end connectors. If a broken shock is found, replace it immediately. The shock absorber will normally limit the rebound of an air spring and keep it from over extending.
- ◆ Check the tightness of all mounting hardware (nuts and bolts). If loose, tighten. **Do not** over-tighten.

Cleaning:

The approved cleaning method is to use soap and water, methyl alcohol, ethyl alcohol or isopropyl alcohol. Unapproved cleaning methods include all organic solvents, open flames, abrasive and direct pressurized steam cleaning.

HEIGHT CONTROL VALVES

Height Control Valves (HCV) inflate or deflate the air springs to maintain proper suspension height throughout the load range. Two height control valves located each side of the drive axle control rear suspension height and left or right tilt of the motorhome. A third valve controls front suspension height. The three valves mount to the chassis frame of the motorhome, above the axles, with a linkage rod connecting the valves to the axles.

Actuating components inside of the valves are dampened to reduce valve reaction to momentary suspension bounce and rebound. When a constant suspension change occurs, such as a load change or weight transfer through a sustained corner, the valve reacts by adding or purging air from the air springs as needed.

The air springs are mounted to plates located between the trailing arms and the chassis frame rails. Ride height is the specified distance between the mounting plates. Ride height other than specified will compromise ride quality and handling, and affect shock absorber travel, drive shaft angle, as well as various other running gear components.

BRAKE SYSTEMS

Air Brakes

The air brake system on the motorhome differs from a conventional automotive hydraulic braking system and should be treated differently. Proper maintenance and lubrication are the keys to keeping the air brake system in working order.

The air system supplies air to the foot brake, or treadle valve. Pushing down on the treadle valve supplies an air charge signal to a sealed brake chamber that consists of a spring and air bladder. The air charge signal pushes on the bladder and extends a threaded rod connected to the automatic slack adjuster. The slack adjuster rotates the S-cam expanding the shoes against the drum. Air disc brakes follow much the same principle, with the exception of the threaded rod directly activating calipers.

Consideration needs to be given to stopping distances and air system pressures. The motorhome requires longer stopping distances. Each brake application uses air from the air system, and engine speed is directly proportional to how fast that air system is replenished. Prepare for downhill grades. It may be necessary to select a lower gear and/or use the exhaust brake. Use individual short brake applications down long hills, rather than “riding” the brakes, to extend the life of the brake lining. Avoid overheating the brakes. Hot brakes have less stopping power. When maneuvering the motorhome around small areas, or backing into spaces, several individual brake applications might be made. Watch the air gauge. When preparing to back into a space swing the motorhome so it is aligned with the parking slot before backing up.

The air braking system on the motorhome is equipped with a low air pressure warning system safety feature. Should a low air condition arise while the vehicle is in operation, a warning will sound and a dash panel warning will appear at approximately 60 to 65 psi (pounds per square inch) to alert the operator.

Park & Emergency Brake System

The Park and Emergency Brake System (Spring Brakes) applies to the rear drive axle only. When the park brake is applied, air is released from the rear brake chambers, allowing the large spring in each rear brake chamber to manually push the brake pads against the rotor. The air system must be charged above 35 psi to allow the park brake to release. Pushing down on the park brake handle charges the rear brake chambers with air pressure, overriding the emergency brake springs and releasing the brakes. In the event of air loss while the vehicle is under operation, the park brake will automatically apply (this occurs at approximately 30 psi), acting as an automatic emergency brake system.

When preparing to depart, allow the air system to achieve full air pressure as indicated by the air gauge needles. Listen for the air dryer to purge, indicating function. Look and listen for abnormalities. Abnormal air pressure readings from the air gauge alerts the operator to have the air system checked to avoid an untimely failure.

Should a failure occur in the air system, preventing the air pressure from building, it may become necessary to “cage” the spring brakes (“cage” procedure in Section 2 Towing Procedures - Disabling Parking Brake).

This is an emergency procedure only. Caging the rear air brake chambers manually overrides the spring brakes and allows the vehicle to move. This procedure does not affect normal service braking.

NOTE:

When the park brake is released, the Park illumination lamp will remain lit until air system pressure is above 65 psi.

WARNING:

When parked with the air tank not depleted, there is a possibility of an accidental release of the parking brake. Traveling with small children and/or pets may require a small block to be fabricated to prevent accidental release. The block should be placed under the emergency brake knob. A wooden clothes pin clamped at the base of the shaft will work.

Automatic Slack Adjuster

The braking system is equipped with automatic slack adjusters. As brake lining wears, the slack adjusters will automatically ratchet on the return stroke as needed. This ratchet action will keep the brake lining at proper adjustment. Automatic slack adjusters and the connecting S-cam shaft require periodic lubrication and inspection.

NOTE:

Replacement parts should be of the same original equipment size and type. Mixing brake components may result in unequal braking action. Brake maintenance is not covered by the manufacturer.

WARNING:

Brake lining may contain asbestos material and should only be serviced by qualified service technicians who are trained in the appropriate precautionary procedures. If any loss of braking effectiveness or abnormal braking indications are noticed, the brakes and slack adjusters should be inspected by a qualified brake technician.

WARNING:

Do not manually adjust the slack adjusters. If any loss of braking effectiveness or abnormal braking indications are noticed, the brakes and slack adjusters should be inspected by a qualified brake technician. Automatic slack adjusters are not designed to be manually adjusted.

Brake Systems - Backup

The motorhome air braking system is equipped with backup safety systems and warning alarms in the event of air system failure. For example: should the air compressor fail to charge the air system and low air gauge readings go undetected, a low air pressure buzzer will sound and a low air pressure dash light will flash. These warning indicators occur at approximately 65 psi to alert the operator of an impending situation. If the motorhome is allowed continued operation, the pneumatic emergency spring brake relay valve installed in the air system senses the low air pressure condition and will release the air charge from the spring brake air chambers on the rear drive axle. In this case, the park brakes will automatically apply at approximately 30 psi. This safety backup system acts as an automatic emergency brake system.

Another backup safety is the air system separation of the front and rear brakes, implemented by using two air tanks. One tank is located in the front and the other is located in the rear. This separation allows the front air tank to operate the front brakes; the rear tank operates the rear drive axle brakes. This tank division gives reassurance in case one tank experiences a failure of an accessory air item allowing the compressed air to escape.

Accessory air items are other pneumatically operated items such as the air horn, vacuum generator, etc. The accessory air items operate only when air tank pressures exceed 65 psi. This is done with pressure protection valves. Should an accessory air item fail, the pressure protection valve (PPV) reserves the remaining air pressure of 65 psi for braking. This will leave the motorhome with one air tank fully charged for safety backup.

The rear air tank also has a safety backup - the safety inversion valve. The inversion valve senses the absence of rear air tank pressure. In this case the inversion valve will allow the operator to make a modulated spring brake application in conjunction with the emergency spring brake relay valve. The inversion valve allows the front air tank pressure to recharge the rear brake chambers after the modulated spring brake application is made. This backup system implements use of all the brakes, allowing the operator to bring the motorhome to a safe stop. In case of all compressed air charge escaping from the front air tank, the operator will still have full use of the rear brakes.

ABS/ATC SYSTEM (ANTI-LOCK BRAKES)

The motorhome is equipped with an anti-lock braking system (ABS) and automatic traction control system (ATC). The ABS system monitors wheel rotation speeds by using a 100-tooth magnetic tone ring mounted to the hub. Revolving with the wheel, the magnetic tone ring is polarized giving positive and negative pulsations. A stationary sensor is mounted adjacent to the tone ring to monitor magnetic pulses. The pulses are monitored by the ABS electronic control unit (ECU).

The ECU monitors all wheel sensors at the rate of 100 times per second. The ECU controls Pressure Modulator Valves. Pressure Modulator Valves have two electric-over-air solenoids, a hold solenoid and a release solenoid. The modulator valves are open under normal braking, allowing a straight through air signal from the treadle valve to the brake chamber. Should a wheel lose traction under a braking application, the ECU will energize the hold solenoid of the Pressure Modulator Valve to interrupt the air signal from the treadle valve to the brake chamber. The release solenoid vents the existing air signal at the brake chamber to the atmosphere, allowing the skidding tire to regain traction. Skidding tires have less tractive efficiency. It is possible, under certain conditions, to have the wheel(s) skid with a normal functioning ABS system.

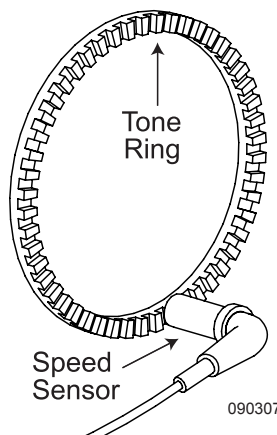
The ABS itself does not apply additional braking power. The purpose of the ABS is to limit wheel lock and decrease stopping distance. Cautious driving practices and maintaining adequate safe distance when following vehicles is the key to safe vehicle operation.

WARNING:

The ABS/ATC system is designed to increase tire to road surface traction but cannot overcome naturally occurring laws of physics. The ABS/ATC system, combined with safe driving practices, will reduce the possibility of wheel skid and loss of lateral stability.

ABS Component Function:

- ◆ Speed sensors and tone rings on each wheel monitor wheel rotation.
- ◆ Each speed sensor communicates wheel rotation pulses to the Electronic Control Unit.
- ◆ The ECU receives the speed sensor signal pulses to calculate speed and acceleration rates of each wheel.
- ◆ Based on the speed sensor input, the ECU detects impending wheel lock and operates the ABS Modulator Valves required for proper control. The Modulator Valves are operated in the Air, Release or Hold modes to regulate air pressure to the brake chambers.
- ◆ Braking force is applied at a level which minimizes the stopping distance while maintaining as much lateral stability as possible.

**ABS Warning Light:**

The ABS will perform a dash indicator lamp check and self-diagnostic test each time the ignition is switched to the on position.

- ◆ When the ignition is turned on, the ABS indicator illuminates momentarily (3 seconds) verifying the self-diagnostic test. If the ABS indicator light remains on, or illuminates while the motorhome is being operated, this indicates a fault in the anti-lock brake system. This fault will not affect normal service braking. The motorhome will need to go to a service center to repair the problem.

INFORMATION:

If a fault code occurs, call a Bendix service locator at 1-800-247-2725 and take the motorhome to the nearest repair facility.

ABS Diagnostic

If the ABS light on the dash illuminates, it indicates that a fault has occurred with the Anti-Lock Brake System only. Normal braking is not affected but the motorhome will need to go to a service center. The service center can retrieve ABS diagnostic fault codes.

Retrieving Codes Using ECU:

System configuration codes and fault codes are displayed through the dash ABS warning light as a series of blinked sequences. The fault codes can be accessed by grounding Terminal 18 in the X1 connector of the ABS control module. The control module is located on the ceiling of the roadside electrical bay. On the back of the ECU locate the black X1 connector, pin 18.

NOTE:

This process will require two people.

Ground pin 18 by inserting a wire at the rear of the connector. Pin 18 is located in the bottom right corner (labeled ABS Warning).

NOTE:

System configuration codes are sequences of six blinked digits while fault codes are sequences of two blinked digits. Refer to an authorized Bendix service center for a list of blink code sequences. If grounding out is not done correctly for a specific readout, stop then start the procedure again.

NOTE:

All blink codes are displayed by the ABS warning light only.

The system is capable of performing several diagnostic mode functions. After ignition on, a two second delay must be observed prior to grounding.

Active code retrieval: ground 1 time.

Inactive code retrieval: ground 2 times.

Clearing active codes: ground 3 times.

System configuration check: ground 4 times.

Dynamometer test mode: ground 5 times.

Reconfigure ECU: ground 7 times.

NOTE:

Reconfigure Mode is entered by grounding prior to "ignition on." Once ignition is on, stop grounding, then ground 7 times.

ATC System:

The ATC system improves traction on slippery or unstable road surfaces by limiting excessive drive wheel slip. This is accomplished two ways, limiting engine torque to the drive wheel or engaging a brake to the spinning drive wheel. During normal operation engine torque is unaffected. The ATC system works in conjunction with the ABS Electronic Control Unit. The ECU monitors tone ring speed of the drive wheel in relation to the other wheels. If a speed differential occurs in the drive wheel, the ECU enters Automatic Traction Control mode.

During an ATC event, the ECU will automatically react to optimize traction and safety if the motorhome encounters a slippery road surface. Engine torque is normally reduced to limit drive wheel slip.

NOTE:

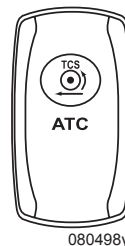
The ATC system is always active.

ATC reacts to drive wheel slip by:

- ◆ Reducing engine torque to the drive wheel if road speed is above 25 mph.
- ◆ Reducing engine torque and activating drive axle brake controls if road speed is below 25 mph. If the brake control activates, it remains active regardless of road speed.

ATC Switch:

Activating the ATC switch reduces ECU control over engine torque. Momentarily pressing the ATC switch allows the ECU to increase the amount of engine torque applied to the drive wheel in an ATC event. The amount of engine torque applied to the drive wheel will vary with the amount of drive wheel slip versus road speed. In an ATC event, the ECU remains active regardless of road speed or switch position. The light flashes slowly when the ATC switch is activated.

**ATC Indicator Light:**

During normal operation, the ATC indicator light on the dash will illuminate steady when the ignition key is turned on. If an ATC event occurs, the indicator light will flash quickly. The indicator light will flash slowly if the ATC switch is activated.

CAUTION:

Normally the switch should remain inactive. During an ATC event (drive wheel slip) the ECU will automatically optimize drive wheel traction in most situations. Activating the switch during periods of wheel slip can increase torque to the spinning drive wheel. Drive train damage can occur if the spinning drive wheel should suddenly regain traction.

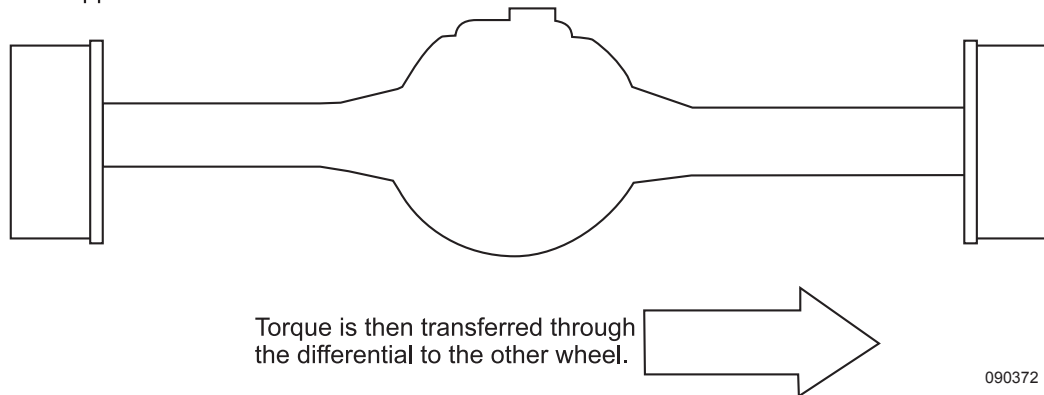
CAUTION:

If the motorhome is stuck it is advised to call a professional towing company to limit the possibility of body and drive train damage.

How Automatic Traction Control (ATC) Works

If this wheel is spinning due to a slippery surface or because the wheel is off the ground, the ABS system with ATC applies the brake to this wheel.

This wheel then delivers torque to the ground.



090372

FRONT AXLE

While driving the motorhome, be aware of any changes in the feel of steering and have the system checked when noting apparent differences. It is normal to hear some hydraulic noise from the steering, especially when the steering is at maximum, or while turning the wheel when the motorhome is parked. Investigate any unusual or loud noises that occur. Begin by checking the level of the hydraulic fluid. Traveling at slow speeds over rough surfaces may cause a “clunking” noise to emanate from the steering column, but if noise is heard on smooth surfaces while sharply turning back and forth, the noise should be inspected and repaired as necessary.

Shimmy and looseness should be checked and corrected as soon as possible. If looseness is felt in the steering, the steering linkages can be observed while someone turns the steering wheel left and right. Watch the linkages for evident play or uneven interaction between components to help pinpoint a problem. Have the steering system checked for damage after a severe impact, such as striking large potholes or curbs, and front-end collisions. Observe the alignment of the steering wheel; a change in the alignment may indicate damage to the steering components or suspension.

Maintenance for the system entails adequate lubrication. Use only a hand operated grease gun on the fittings. Grease fittings for the steering system are found on the both ends of the drag link (the bar connecting the steering gear to the axle), and on the intermediate steering shaft located between the steering wheel and steering gear.

Correct front end alignment promotes longer tire wear and ease of handling while minimizing effort on the steering system and the axle components. Use NLGI #2 Lithium soap base lubricant for all steering linkage and brake components.

Wheel Bearings

The front wheel bearings utilize an oil bath (wet hub) system. The hubs are filled with SAE 90w. Maintenance consists of oil level checks before each trip and every 1,000 miles. Change the oil yearly or every 30,000 miles.

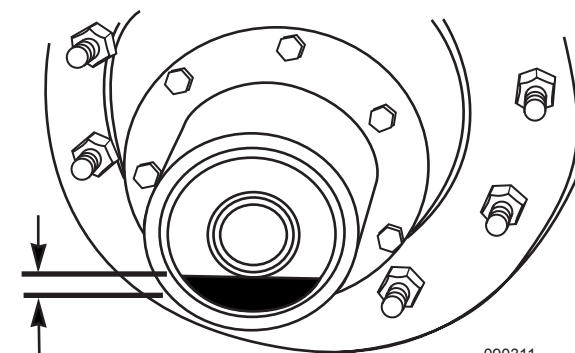
Inspect the wheel bearings for wear any time that the hubs are removed from the front axle.

INSPECT:

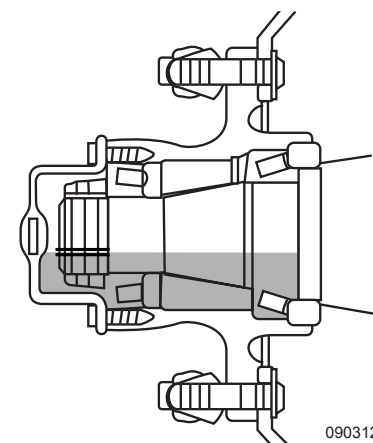
The oil level before each trip or every 1,000 miles.

Front Axle Lubrication Level:

Inspect the level of lubricant when the vehicle has been at rest for ½ hour to ensure accurate lubricant indications. The level should be maintained within .25 inch (¼”) of the center fill plug on the hub, as shown. The hub has both a fill plug (rubber plug in the center of the hub), as well as a drain plug mounted to the side of the hub. To add lubricant, pry the center fill plug from the hub and add lubricant. When finished, push the plug firmly into place, ensuring that it is evenly seated.



BELOW 0.25" - ADD OIL



Shading Indicates Correct Amount of Oil

Lubricant Replacement:

Position hub so the drain plug is at the bottom. Remove the plug using an Allen wrench. Allow lubricant to drain. Replace drain plug. Remove fill plug. Fill hub with SAE 90w. Install fill plug. Road test then recheck level. Adjust level as necessary.

Alignment

Camber:

Camber, as shown, is vertical tilt of wheel as viewed from the front of the motorhome. This is machined into the axle when manufactured and is not adjustable.

“Positive” camber is an outward tilt of the wheel at the top.

“Negative” camber is an inward tilt of the wheel at the top.

Toe Setting: The toe setting represents different distances between the front and rear of the tires (measured at the vertical center line of the tires).

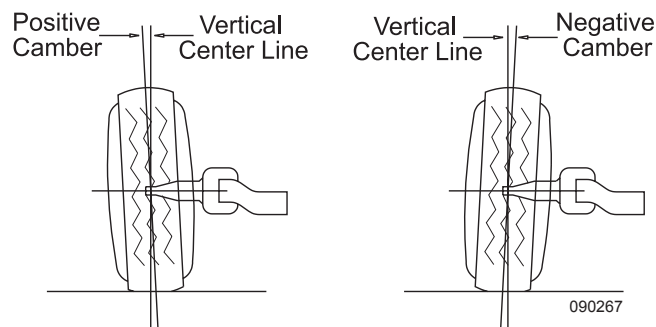
Toe-in: Occurs when the tire front distance is less than the tire rear distance.

Toe-out: Occurs when the tire front distance is greater than the tire rear distance.

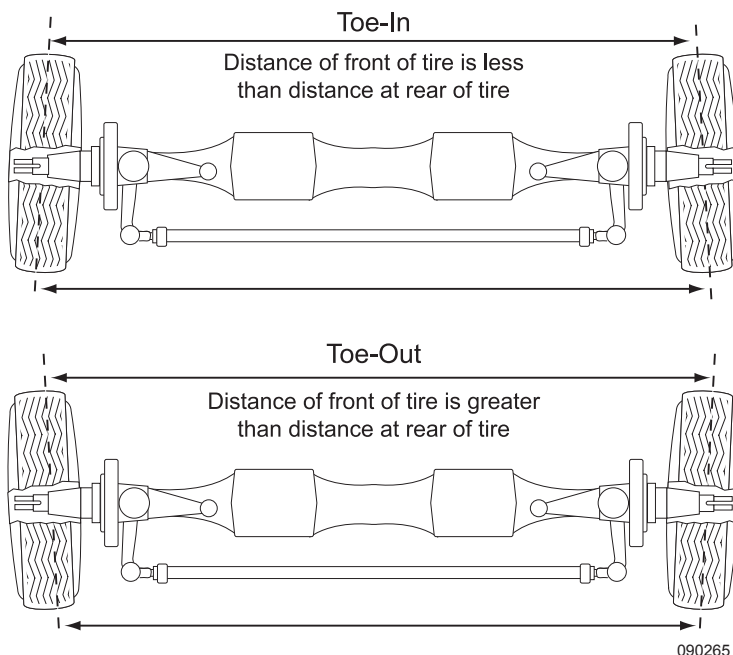
	Left	Right
Camber	$1/8^\circ \pm 7/16^\circ$	$-1/8^\circ \pm 7/16^\circ$
Caster*	$4^\circ \pm 1^\circ$	$4^\circ \pm 1^\circ$
Total Toe	$1/16'' (0.08^\circ)$	

NOTE:

The motorhome must be at ride height for proper alignment.



FRONT OF MOTORHOME
(Top View of Axle)



Wheels are generally set with initial toe-in. As the motorhome operates tires tend toward a toe-out condition. By starting with an initial toe-in setting, a desirable “near zero toe-in” can be achieved when the motorhome is in motion.

Incorrect toe settings, where toed-in or toed-out, can have a significant affect on tire wear. The toe setting is adjusted by lengthening or shortening the cross tube.

Caster Adjustments:

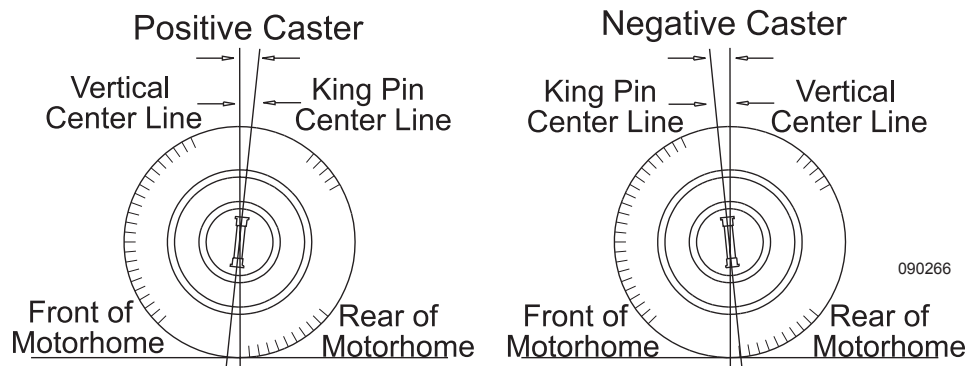
Caster is the fore and aft tilt (toward the front or rear of the motorhome) of the steering kingpin as viewed from the side of the motorhome.

“Positive” caster is the tilt of the top end of the kingpin toward the rear of the motorhome.

“Negative” caster is the tilt of the top end of the kingpin toward the front of the motorhome.

Setting the caster angle more positive than specified may result in excess steering effort and/or shimmy.

Decreasing the angle may result in the motorhome wandering or poor steering return to center. The caster angle is determined by the installed position of the steer axle.



Lubrication Maintenance Safety

The front axle components require periodic lubrication maintenance. Chock wheels for safety prior to accessing components underneath the motorhome.

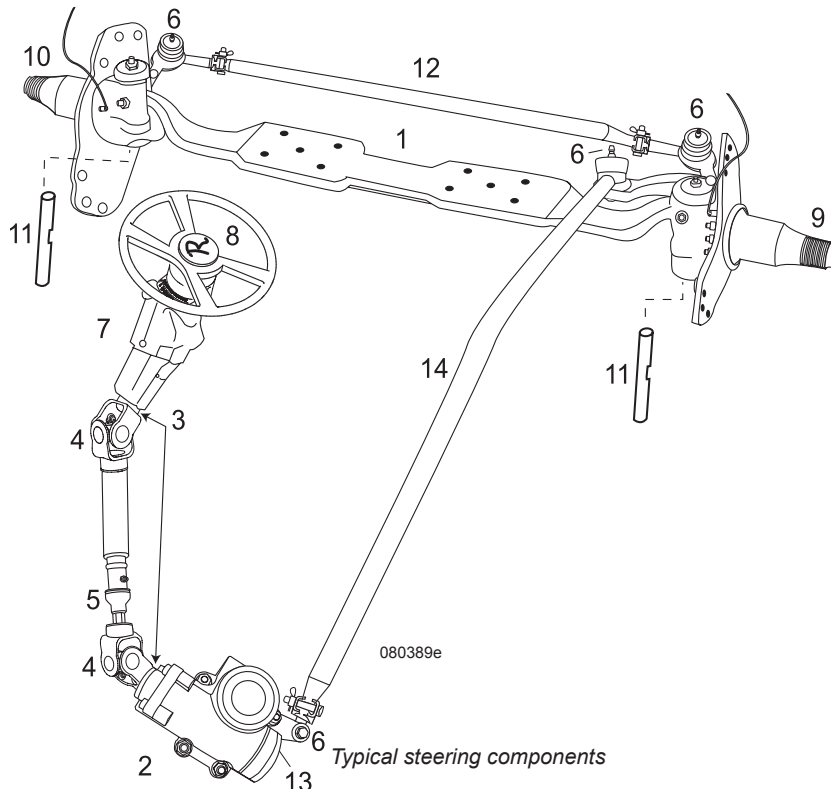
WARNING:

DO NOT allow anyone under the motorhome without first properly blocking frame (jackstands) from coming down in case of rapid deflation of air system.

NOTE:

Suspension and steering components are lubricated at the factory using a NLGI 2 Lithium soap based grease.

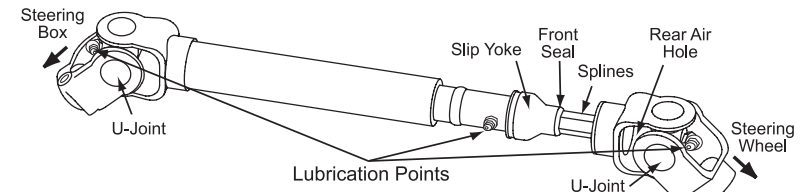
Steering Components



1. Axle Beam
2. Steering Gear
3. Intermediate Steering Shaft
4. Universal Joints
5. Slip Yoke
6. Tie Rod End
7. Steering Column
8. Steering Wheel
9. Left Spindle Assembly
10. Right Spindle Assembly
11. Kingpin
12. Centerlink
13. Pitman Arm
14. Drag Link

Steering Column

The intermediate steering shaft connects the steering wheel to the steering gear. Service the intermediate steering shaft universal joints and slip yoke every 30,000 miles or annually. Check the torque on the clamp bolt at least every five years or 50,000 miles. Remove the steering column cover to access the upper universal joint and slip yoke lubrication points. The lower universal joint is accessed from underneath in the generator compartment behind the front electrical box.



Intermediate Steering Shaft: Torque clamp bolt to 48 ft. lbs. for 3/8" and 75 ft. lbs. for 7/16".

Greasing the Intermediate Steering Shaft Universal Joints:

- ♦ Check the shaft for looseness. Repair if loose or worn.
- ♦ Apply the specified grease at the grease fitting on the universal joint. Apply until the new grease purges from all the seals.
- ♦ If the new grease does not purge from the seals, disassemble and clean the joint or replace the universal joint. **Do not** lose the needle bearings.

Greasing the Intermediate Steering Shaft Slip Yoke and Splines:

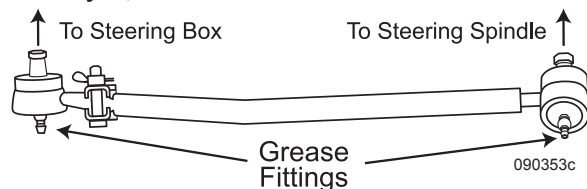
- ♦ Check the shaft for looseness. Repair if loose or worn.
- ♦ With finger, cover the rear air hole so grease flows to the front seal. Apply the specified grease at the grease fitting on the slip yoke. Apply until new grease purges and forces finger away from the air hole in the end of the slip yoke. Greasing interval is yearly or every 30,000 miles.

LUBE:

Depending upon application, universal joints may have two grease fittings each. It is necessary to apply grease to each fitting to properly lube the universal joint.

Drag Link

The drag link connects the steering gear pitman arm to the steer axle. The movable joint (ball joint) uses sealed boots to prevent water intrusion. Do not rupture the boot when applying grease. Grease interval is six months or every 5,000 miles.

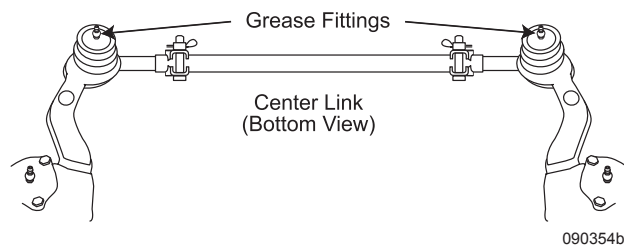


NOTE:

It will be necessary to start the motorhome and turn the steering wheel to access fitting(s).

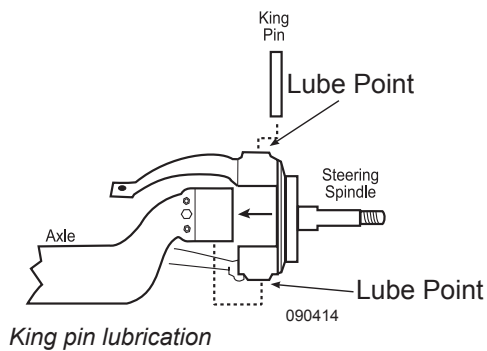
Center Link

The center link is located on the backside of the steer axle. The center link attaches the two wheels together causing the right front to track with the left front. Greasing interval is every six months or 5,000 miles.



Steering Spindles

The steering spindles attach to the front axle and pivot on the kingpin. The wheel end assembly and brake system attach to the spindle. There are upper and lower lubrication points for the kingpin.



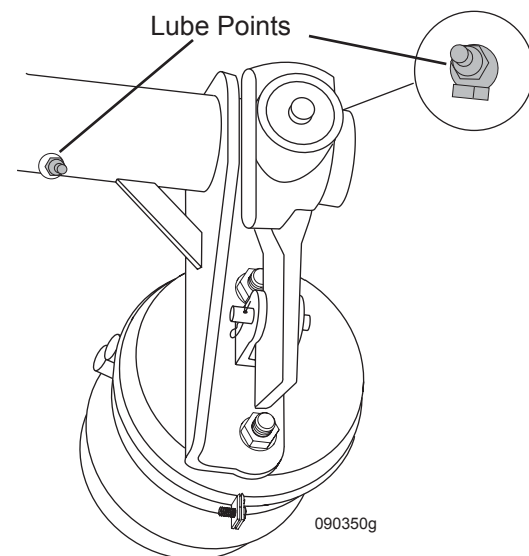
The drag link attaches to the roadside spindle. After initially lubricating the roadside and curbside kingpins, rotate the steering assembly lock to lock (full left to right) then move assembly back to center. This purges any remaining air pockets. Continue lubricating the kingpins until new grease purges with no air pockets. Greasing interval is every six months or 5,000 miles.

Control Arm Bushings

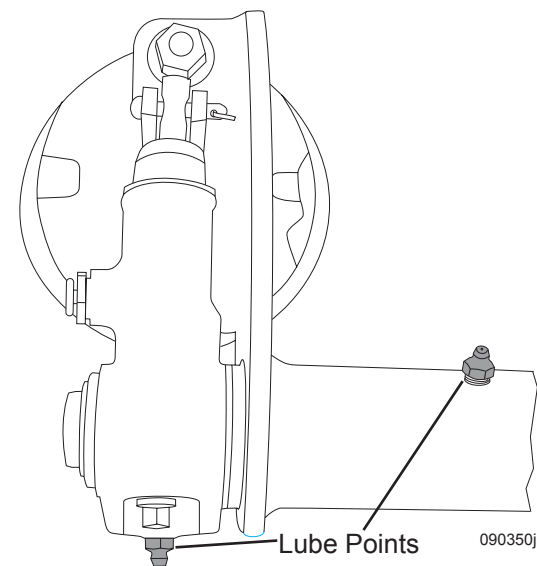
Control arms align the axles perpendicular with the frame. The panhard bar controls side to side motion of the axles in the frame. Control arm bushings and panhard bar bushings do not require lubrication.

Drum Brake Lubrication

Drum brakes are equipped with slack adjusters. Both the slack adjuster and brake cam need to be lubed periodically to ensure proper brake operation. Lubricate every 10,000 miles or three months, whichever occurs first. Use NLGI #2. Lithium soap base chassis lubricant. Lubricate at points shown and lubricate until new grease appears at exit points. Avoid contaminating brake linings with lubricant.



Rear brakes lube points. Lubricate until new grease appears at exit points.

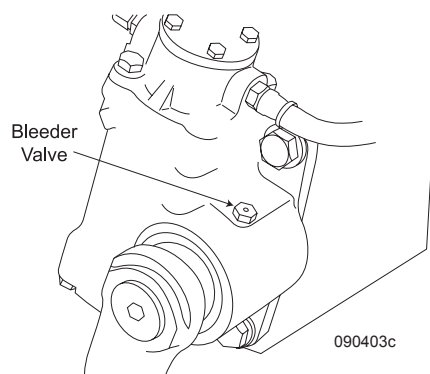


Front brakes lube points. Lubricate until new grease appears at exit points.

Steering Gear

The steering gear has been designed to provide long service life and simple service repair. The rack and sector shaft does not require center point adjustment. The clearance between the cylinder bore and the piston is closely controlled and a piston ring was added to better use the hydraulic oil supplied. With reasonable care and limited maintenance the steering gear will provide many miles of reliable performance. The bleeder valve is used on initial installation and replacement.

Power steering is provided by using hydraulic pressure to assist rotating the output shaft of the steering gear. Located at the end of the input shaft of the steering gear is a poppet valve and worm drive. The poppet valve directs the hydraulic fluid pressure to a type of spool. The worm drive threads in the center of the spool. When in the center position, pressurized hydraulic fluid bypasses the spool. When a turn is made, the poppet valve shifts to one direction or the other, directing the hydraulic pressure to one side of the spool depending on turning direction. The hydraulic fluid is then cooled before returning to the reservoir.



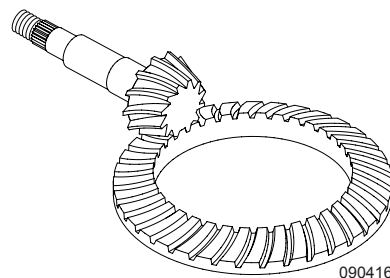
NOTE:
Inspect for signs of leakage when performing fluid level checks.

Changing the hydraulic filter in the engine compartment at regular intervals will help ensure trouble-free operation.

DRIVE AXLE & DRIVE SHAFT

Drive Axle

The chassis drive axle is a single reduction axle. The differential gears consist of a hypoid pinion and ring gear set and bevel differential gears. The differential carrier can be removed from the axle housing as a unit in order to perform repairs.



Ring and Pinion Gears

All power from the engine to the rear tires is transferred through the rear axle. For this reason, it is important that maintenance be performed on the axle as required to avoid premature wear of the gears and bearings in the axle.

Drive Axle Lubricant:

The rear axle is filled with non-synthetic gear oil meeting MIL-L-2105D specifications. Change interval is every 250,000 miles or 36 months, whichever occurs first.

During lubricant change, fine metal particles will be observed clinging to the magnetic fill and drain plugs of the axle. These are normal wear particles from the axle components, but will cause faster than normal wear of the axle components if allowed to circulate through the lubricant. It is recommended that the magnetic plugs be tested, if not replaced, at each lubricant change. These plugs should have sufficient magnetic strength to pick up a 1.5 pound weight of low carbon steel. **Do not** replace a magnetic plug with a non-magnetic "pipe plug" as they will not keep the lubricant clear of metal particles or seal properly.

The level of lubricant in the rear axle should be checked every 30,000 miles or 6 months, whichever occurs first. This will ensure adequate lubricant in the axle for proper operation. Regular inspection of the drive axle lube levels is an essential maintenance procedure.

WARNING:

Do not allow anyone under the motorhome without first properly blocking frame (jackstands) from coming down in case of rapid deflation of air system.

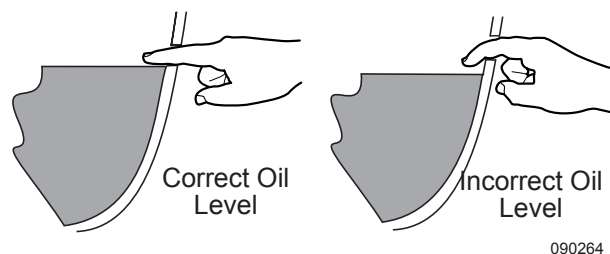
Proper Drive Axle Lubricant Level:

- ◆ With the motorhome parked on a level surface and rear axle warm, place a large container under axle.
- ◆ Clean the area around the fill plug, located approximately halfway up the axle housing bowl.



Fill Plug

- ◆ Remove the fill plug and observe the lubricant level.
- ◆ The lubricant should be level with bottom of the hole.
- ◆ Important: The lube level close enough to the hole to be seen or touched is not sufficient. The lube must be level with the hole.
- ◆ Correct the level as necessary.
- ◆ Re-install the fill plug and tighten to 35 to 50 ft. lbs.

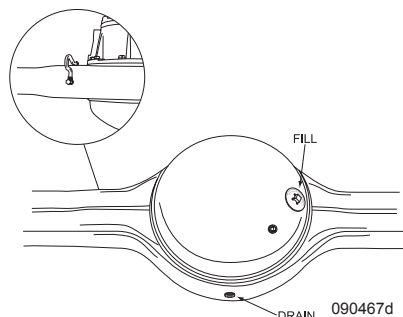


To Drain and Replace Lubricant:

1. Place a large container under the axle.
2. Remove drain plug and allow axle to completely drain.
3. Properly dispose of oil.
4. Clean the drain plug and test (replace the drain plug if needed).
5. Install and tighten drain plug to 35 to 50 ft. lbs.
6. Clean the area around the fill plug from the axle-housing bowl.
7. Fill the axle with approved lubricant until the level is even with the bottom of the fill plug hole.

WARNING:

When checking or changing the lubricant, always ensure that the axle is not hot. Oil temperature 90° F or hotter can cause severe burns.



NOTE:

When checking the lube level also check the housing breathers on top of axle housing. Clean the breathers if dirty or replace them if damaged.

Drive Shaft

The drive shaft transfers the power produced by the engine to the drive axle. A worn or out of balance drive shaft causes chassis vibration that generally increases in intensity with road speed.

Lubrication Maintenance:

The drive shaft requires periodic lubrication maintenance. Lubricate the slip joint and universal joints every 15,000 miles or 6 months, whichever occurs first. Use NLGI #2 chassis lubricant.

NOTE:

It will be necessary to move the motorhome forward or backward to access all fittings on the drive shaft.

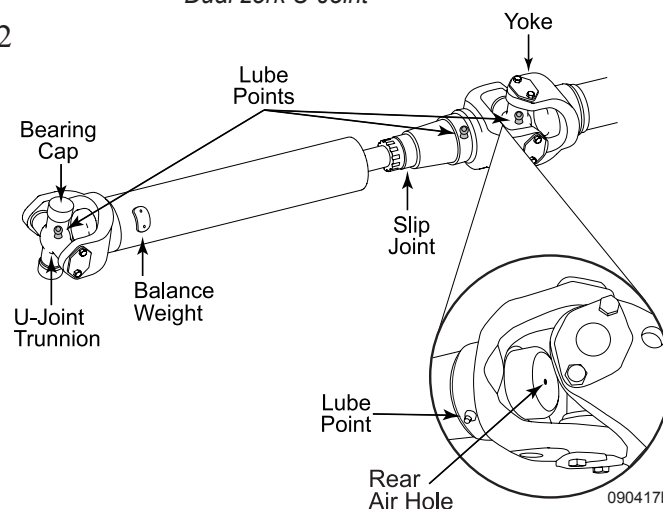
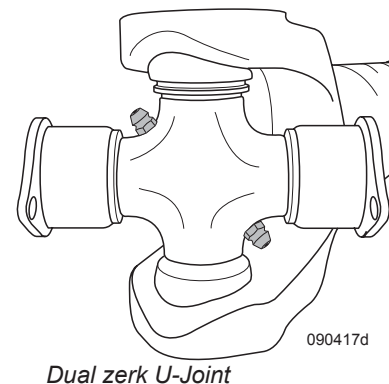
Greasing the Drive Shaft Universal Joints:

- ◆ Check the drive shaft for looseness. Repair if loose or worn.

- ◆ Apply the specified grease at the grease fitting on the universal joint. Apply until new grease purges from all the seals.
- ◆ If new grease does not purge at the seals, loosen the bearing cap bolts and re-grease until all four caps purge. If new grease still does not purge, disassemble and clean or replace the universal joint.

NOTE:

The universal joints may have two grease fittings each. It is necessary to apply grease to each fitting to properly lube the universal joint.

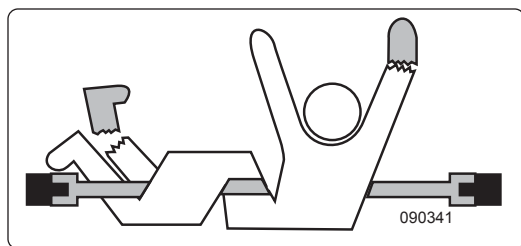


Greasing the Drive Shaft Slip Yoke and Splines:

- ◆ Check the drive shaft for looseness. Repair if loose or worn.
- ◆ With finger, cover the rear air hole so grease flows to the front seal. Apply the specified grease at the grease fitting on the slip yoke. Apply until new grease purges and forces finger away from the air hole in the end of the slip yoke.

WARNING:

Rotating shafts can be dangerous. Rotating shafts can snag clothes, skin, hair, hands, etc. causing serious injury or death. Do not work on or near a shaft with or without a guard when the engine is running.



SHOCK ABSORBER

The shock absorber is a hydraulic device used to dampen suspension/ body movement. Road surface irregularities are compensated by the shock absorber. The Roadmaster chassis incorporates the shock in the design of the exclusive air glide suspension system. This shock absorber is a telescopic, mono tube unit filled with nitrogen gas and hydraulic oil. The result of the mixture is uninterrupted damping for the smallest of wheel deflection.

By design, a self lubricating seal is used which will allow approximately 10% of the total oil capacity to pass onto the piston rod. The gradual process of oil loss does not affect the performance of the shock absorber during the service life. This process will be evident after a long period of service by an oil film on the body of the shock absorber. The appearance of a coating or film on the body or rod is completely normal, it is an indication the shock is functioning normally.

Road holding, handling, balance and braking characteristics all can be contributed to the shock absorber. The operating conditions for which the shock absorber must endure will determine the life span. However, since the only moving part is the piston rod, there are no springs, hinges or pins to wear out, get weak or deteriorate.



LEVELING - AIR

The air leveling control panel is located above the entry door. The system operates in automatic level mode or can be set to manual level mode. The engine must be running when leveling in automatic or manual modes.

INFORMATION:

Refer to the OEM leveling system manual for detailed information.

NOTE:

Prior to leveling, extend slideout room(s) with the motorhome supported by the air suspension.

NOTE:

The automatic leveling system will perform best if there is no movement in the motorhome during the leveling process.

CAUTION:

Several inches of unobstructed downward travel is required when using the leveling system. Look underneath the motorhome for any obstacles that could damage the undercarriage or mud flap(s) prior to leveling.

WARNING:

Do Not engage the leveling system if anyone is near or underneath the motorhome. Serious injury or death can occur.

Automatic Air Leveling

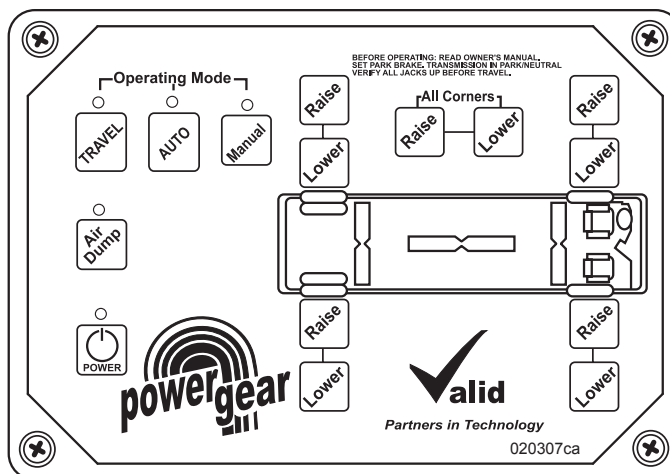
Leveling Procedure:

- ◆ Start the engine.
- ◆ Set the park brake.
- ◆ Place the transmission in neutral.
- ◆ Point front wheels straight ahead to avoid possible body damage.
- ◆ Press the Power button on the leveling control panel to turn the system on. The Power indicator light will illuminate.
- ◆ Press the Auto button to begin the automatic leveling process.

The system will initially check degree of angle along the longitudinal axis of the chassis to ensure sufficient suspension travel for leveling. The indicator light above Auto will blink and the motorhome will begin the leveling process. Red lights in the motorhome icon indicate that position of the motorhome is low. The system will attempt to level by lowering the highest points to achieve level with the low point. If unsuccessful, the system will raise all corners then attempt to level again. When all lights in the motorhome icon turn solid green, the motorhome is level. When the leveling process is complete, leave the control panel on and shut the engine off.

After leveling:

- ◆ Control panel power remains on. The system will go into “Sleep” mode after 15 seconds.
- ◆ After 20 seconds, the system will go into “Low Power” mode indicated by the occasional flashing of the Auto and Power lights.



Located above entry door

- ◆ The system will “awaken” periodically to check if leveling adjustments are required.
- ◆ If adjustments are required, the system will automatically level the motorhome then return to Low Power mode.

NOTE:

Turning off the control panel after leveling will disable the system and not allow automatic leveling adjustments.

System Air Compressor:

The air system on the motorhome supplies air pressure during the initial leveling procedure. A small air compressor and reservoir tank is mounted to the firewall to supply the leveling system with air pressure should the system need to make any future leveling adjustments. This compressor requires no maintenance but the reservoir will need to be occasionally drained of moisture.

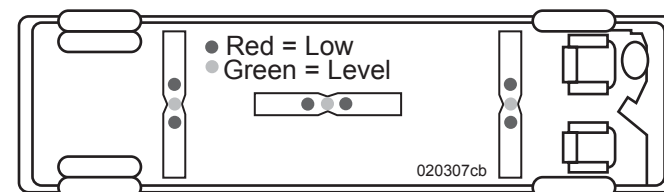
Manual Air Leveling

Manual leveling mode allows the operator to control the leveling process.

Leveling Procedure:

- ◆ Start the engine.
- ◆ Set the park brake.
- ◆ Place the transmission in neutral.
- ◆ Point front wheels straight ahead to avoid possible body damage.
- ◆ Press the Power button on the leveling control panel to turn the system on. The Power indicator light will illuminate.
- ◆ Press the Manual button.

Using the red (indicates low) and green (indicates level) indicators in the motorhome icon, press Raise or Lower respective to each corner that requires adjustment. The motorhome is level when all indicators are green. To simultaneously control all four corners, use the All Corners Raise or Lower buttons. Turn the control panel off and shut off the engine.



Travel Mode

The air suspension will need to be inflated to 'Ride Height' prior to travel. The Travel button returns control of the air suspension to the height control valves. Initiate Travel mode prior to moving the motorhome. It may take several seconds for the motorhome to achieve full ride height once in Travel mode.

WARNING:

The time required to achieve ride height varies. Make sure the motorhome is at ride height prior to moving the motorhome. If the motorhome is not at ride height, severe damage can occur to the drive train and body work.

To Initiate Travel Mode:

- ◆ Start the engine and press the Travel button.

If the engine is started and park brake released, the leveling system will automatically switch to Travel mode. It will still require a period of time for the motorhome to achieve normal ride height. Enter Travel mode prior to moving the motorhome.

Service

The air leveling system includes an auxiliary compressor and air tank. Manually drain the air tank once a month or more depending on operating conditions and humidity levels. The drain is located in the roadside engine compartment. Open the drain valve until all air is released from the tank.

CAUTION:

Always wear safety glasses when draining the tank as air will be expelled under pressure.

ENGINE - GENERAL INFORMATION

The diesel engine operates differently from a conventional gasoline engine. Gasoline engines control engine speed using a butterfly throttle plate controlling air/fuel mixture inlet flow. As the throttle plate opens, vacuum created by the piston velocity draws the metered fuel/air charge into the combustion chamber, then ignites from a controlled electric ignition source. Closing the throttle plate limits the fuel/air supply, slowing engine speed and increasing intake manifold vacuum.

The diesel engine in the motorhome controls engine speed by varying fuel supply only. No throttle plates are used. An exhaust driven turbine system (turbocharger) compresses the fresh air supply into the engine. The fuel is injected under pressure into the combustion chamber. Ignition of fuel/air charge occurs from heat generated by rapid high compression.

Diesel engine RPM (revolutions per minute) operating speeds are generally much lower than that of the gasoline engine. Peak torque and horsepower output values occur at much lower engine speeds. Idle speeds between the two engine types are similar, however maximum engine speeds are quite different. The gasoline engine generally is not regulated to a maximum engine speed. Maximum engine speed on a diesel engine is controlled by an engine speed governor set by the engine manufacturer.

WARNING:

Do not operate a diesel engine where there are or can be combustible vapors. Vapors can be drawn through the air intake system and cause engine acceleration and over-speeding, resulting in fire, explosion and extensive property damage. Numerous safety devices are available, such as air intake shutoff devices, to minimize risk of an engine over-speeding where an engine (due to its application) might operate in a combustible environment, such as fuel spills or gas leaks.

INFORMATION:

The equipment owner and operator is responsible for safe operation of engine. Consult the engine OEM manual or authorized repair location for more information.

STARTING PROCEDURE

Normal Starting

CAUTION:

To avoid starter motor damage, do not crank the engine for more than 15 seconds at one time. If the engine fails to start, wait two minutes before attempting to start the engine again.

WARNING:

Do not attempt to start the engine by "jumping" relays or any means other than using the ignition start switch. Do not attempt to start the engine unless all persons are clear of the engine before starting.

The engine is equipped with an intake manifold grid heater. The grid heater helps engine starting in cold weather. Intake manifold air temperature is monitored by the Electronic Control Module on the engine. If intake manifold temperature is below specified level, the manifold grid heater will activate. Grid heater activation is indicated by the Wait to Start indicator lamp.



100229

To Start the Engine:

With the throttle in idle position, turn ignition to On. Allow the Wait to Start lamp to extinguish. Turn key to the start position. When the engine starts the grid heater will again energize for a time period determined by the Electronic Control Module. Allow the engine to idle with no load for three to five minutes. The engine coolant temperature should be up to normal operating range (190° F/88 ° C) before operating the engine under full throttle.

NOTE:

Do not idle the engine for long periods of time. Long periods of idling can adversely affect the diesel particulate filter.

Cold Weather

In sub-freezing or extreme cold, engine oil becomes thick and battery output is reduced. Thick oil, combined with less amperage available from the battery, increases difficulty in starting the engine.

Depending on ambient temperature it may be necessary to pre-heat the engine. Located in the coolant passage in the engine is a heating unit that operates from 120 Volt AC. If it is necessary to pre-heat the engine due to ambient temperature, it is recommended to activate the block heater the night before, allowing several hours for the block heater to warm the engine.

It is possible to operate diesel engines in extremely cold environments when the engine is properly equipped with the correct lubricants, fuels and coolant. Cold weather operation can be defined in two categories: Winter and Arctic.

WINTER (32° to -25° F) (0° to -32° C):

Use a 50% antifreeze to 50% water coolant mixture, use multi-viscosity oil meeting manufacturers specifications and fuel to have maximum cloud pour points 10° F (6° C) lower than the ambient temperature in which the motorhome operates.

ARCTIC (-25° to -65° F) (-32° to -52° C):

Use a 60% antifreeze to 40% water coolant mixture. Use oil meeting manufacturer specifications and fuel to have maximum cloud pour points 10° F (6° C) lower than the ambient temperature in which the motorhome operates.

INFORMATION:

Refer to the engine OEM manual for information on proper fuels, lubricants and coolants for cold weather operation.

NOTE:

The engine is filled with 15-40w multi-viscosity oil from the factory. Generally this will start the engine in temperature down to 15° F. If the engine has normalized to a temperature below 15° F it will be necessary to pre-heat the engine before starting.

CAUTION:

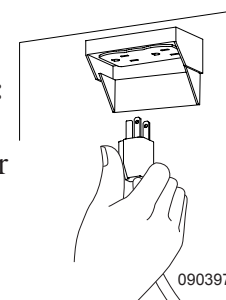
Cranking the engine in cold temperature may cause the starter to rapidly engage and disengage. Stop attempting to crank the engine if this occurs. Starter damage may result. Pre-heat the engine.

Block Heat:

The block heater is rated between 850 and 1500 watts. For efficiency, hook to shore power or plug the block heater cord to a separate power cord rated for 15 Amps and a GFCI protected outlet rated at 20 Amps. The engine may require several hours of pre-heating before starting. It is recommended to start preheating the engine the night before departure.

To Use the Block Heater:

- ◆ Hook to shore power and plug the block heater cord into the block heater receptacle.



090397

Located in the front roadside electrical compartment

Tips:

- ◆ When operating below 32° F, the block heater preheat can enhance engine starting by easing cranking and helping to prevent engine misfire and white smoke during starting.
- ◆ Always follow the recommended oil, fuel, and coolant specifications as outlined in the OEM engine manual. Proper oil viscosity and coolant concentration eases engine starting and helps to avoid engine damage.
- ◆ Allow the engine to idle until it sufficiently warms for operation. Utilize the fast idle feature to quicken the process. Wait to operate the motorhome for at least three minutes or until the coolant temperature begins to rise.
- ◆ Check the air inlet and air filter daily, or as necessary, when driving in snow conditions.
- ◆ The demand on batteries increase during winter; check and service the batteries frequently to help ensure trouble-free starts.
- ◆ Start out slowly with the motorhome to allow the transmission and axle lubricants time to circulate and warm before putting them under full load.

WARNING:

Do not use ether cold starting additives to start the engine, damage could occur.

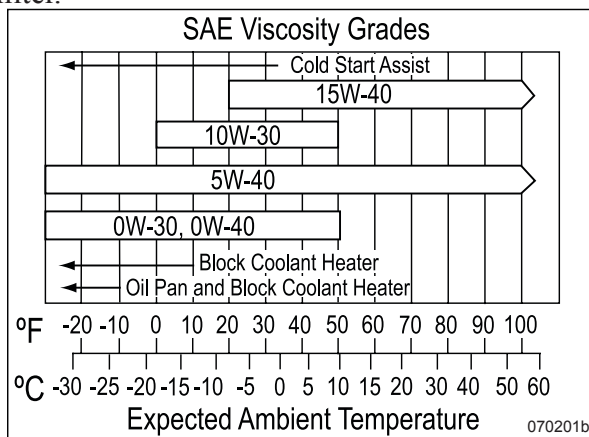
ENGINE OIL**Engine Oil Requirements:**

Engine oil types and recommended change intervals are determined by the engine manufacturer.

This information is listed in the OEM engine operation & maintenance manual located in the owners information file. Oil recommendations for the engine are due to emission requirements. Low emission engines have higher combustion chamber temperatures, use ultra-low sulfur fuel and are equipped with a diesel particulate filter.

A high-grade 15W-40 multi-viscosity heavy duty lubricating oil meeting American Petroleum Institute (API) specification CJ-4 is recommended. Lower viscosity oils designed for use in winter operations will aid in starting. Refer to the chart for oil viscosity recommendations based on ambient operating temperatures. A critical factor in maintaining engine durability and efficient emission system operation is through use of high quality, multi-grade lubricating oil and strict adherence to the maintenance service intervals as specified by the engine manufacturer.

A straight weight or mono-grade lubricating oil is not recommended. Lubricating oil meeting API CI-4 may be used but with shortened drain intervals. Use of API CI-4 also increases soot loading of the diesel particulate filter.



Lubricating oil recommendations and specifications.

The use of an oil analysis program to extend oil drain intervals is not recommended.

Synthetic oils such as API category II or III specifications may be used in extreme cold temperatures as long as they are approved by the engine manufacturer. Synthetic oils, or oil with adequate low temperature properties used for Arctic operations where the engine cannot be kept warm when shut down, will aid in starting. The use of synthetic oils should not be used to extend drain intervals. Extended oil change intervals can decrease engine life and possibly affect the engine warranty and emission systems.

Oil additives should not be used unless the oil supplier or oil manufacturer are consulted and provide positive evidence or data establishing satisfactory performance in accordance with the engine manufacturer.

NOTE:

The Engine is filled with SAE 15w-40 API CJ-4 multi-viscosity oil from the factory.

INFORMATION:

Refer to the OEM engine Operation and Maintenance manual for information regarding recommended oil change intervals.

ENGINE SHUTDOWN

Allow the engine to idle three to five minutes after a full load operation. This allows adequate cool down of pistons, cylinders, bearings and turbocharger components. Under normal driving conditions, exiting the highway is generally lighter engine operation and the need for the three to five minutes is not necessary.

Extended Engine Shutdown

When the motorhome is sitting for 30 days or more, verify all the fluid levels are correct. Follow the normal starting procedures. If the oil pressure gauge does not register within 15 seconds, shut off the engine immediately to avoid damage. Consult the engine OEM manual for guidelines on troubleshooting low oil pressure, or contact a qualified service technician. Allow the engine to idle for five minutes before operating under a load.

COOLANT SYSTEM

The coolant system is filled with a fully formulated extended life coolant. Coolant that is fully formulated contains balanced amounts of antifreeze, Supplemental Coolant Additive (SCA), buffering compounds, and clean, quality water.

Antifreeze that is not fully formulated must be mixed with clean, quality water (distilled water preferred) in a 50/50 ratio (40 to 60% working range). This ratio will provide protection from -34° F. to 228° F. Antifreeze must be of low silicate content and must meet ASTM D6210. The 50/50 ratio of antifreeze and clean quality water plus SCA must be premixed prior to being put in the cooling system. Placing antifreeze and then water in the cooling system is not recommended. Refer to the OEM Engine Manual for more information.

WARNING:

Do not continue engine operation if engine temperature rises above 220° F. At approximately 228° F, the Check Engine (Warning Triangle) light on the dash will illuminate and the engine protection software will log an engine diagnostic trouble code. Turn the engine off as soon as possible as continued operation will result in severe engine damage. Correct the cause of the overheat condition before resuming operation.

CAUTION:

An over-concentration of antifreeze will reduce freeze protection. Use of high silicate antifreeze can damage the cooling system and engine. SCA is required in the cooling system to inhibit cylinder liner pitting as a result of cavitation erosion.

Good-Quality Water:

Good quality water is important for cooling system performance. Excessive levels of calcium and magnesium contribute to scaling problems. Excessive levels of chlorides and sulfates cause cooling system corrosion.

Testing the Coolant:

A refractometer must be used to accurately measure the freezing point of the coolant. Do not use a floating ball hydrometer. Using floating ball hydrometers can give an incorrect reading.

Coolant System Sealing Additives:

Do not use sealing additives in the cooling system. The use of sealing additives will:

- ♦ Build up in coolant low-flow areas.
- ♦ Plug the radiator and oil cooler.
- ♦ Possibly damage the water pump seal.

Cooling System Soluble Oils:

Do not use soluble oils in the cooling system. The use of soluble oils will:

- ♦ Corrode brass and copper.
- ♦ Damage heat transfer surfaces.
- ♦ Damage seals and hoses.

Check the coolant level before each trip, refueling, and when checking the oil level. Coolant freeze point is checked at every oil change interval or as specified by the engine manufacturer. Coolant drain and flush intervals are specified by the engine manufacturer. Refer to the OEM engine manual for more information on service maintenance intervals.

Coolant Types:

- ♦ Use (preferred) fully formulated extended life coolant that meets ASTM D-6210/D-6211.
- ♦ Use a low-silicate antifreeze that meets ASTM 6210 standard.

INFORMATION:

For detailed information on engine coolants for refer to OEM engine manual for coolant requirements.

Engine Coolant Reservoir:

The engine coolant reservoir is connected to the radiator by a hose. Coolant heats and expands as the motorhome is driven. Coolant displaced by expansion overflows from the radiator into the reservoir. Coolant contracts as it cools and is drawn back in the radiator by a vacuum. Thus, the radiator is filled to capacity with coolant at all times to increase cooling efficiency.

The coolant level should be at, or slightly above, the appropriate mark on the reservoir tank when the system is cold.

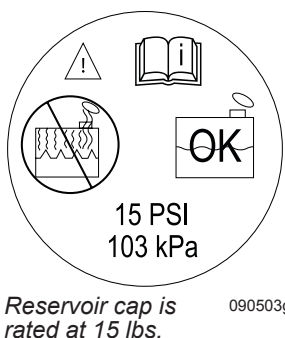
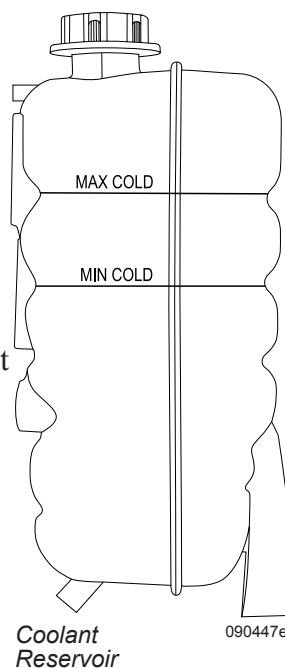
The reservoir is marked MIN (cold check)/MAX (cold check). Maintain coolant between the appropriate reservoir indicators.

CAUTION:

Do Not remove the reservoir cap while the engine is running or if the engine is hot. Cap removal can result in severe burns and damage to the engine cooling system.

NOTE:

Be sure to replace cap after adding fluid.



Coolant Levels:

- ♦ Check coolant level before each trip, when refueling, and when checking the oil level.
- ♦ A low coolant indicator lamp will illuminate on the instrument panel if coolant level drops below acceptable levels in the reservoir. Stop the motorhome and inspect the coolant level before continued operation.

- ♦ Coolant level (cold check) should remain between the MIN and MAX indicators on the reservoir when the cooling system is properly filled.

Supplemental Coolant Additive (SCA):

SCA is required to protect the cylinder liner/sleeve from cavitation erosion. Cavitation erosion is caused by minute air pockets that collect on the cylinder liner. The air pockets will pop (implode) during engine operation. Over time this can erode a hole through the cylinder liner. Supplemental coolant additives inhibit formation of the air pockets. The SCA content of the coolant is checked with Litmus paper. Test kits are available from the engine manufacturer as well as aftermarket. Litmus paper is time and light sensitive. Check the SCA content at each oil change following the directions in the test kit. Refer to the OEM engine manual for further information.

NOTE:

SCA test kits are time and light sensitive. Store test kit in a dry and dark location. Discard if out of date. Pink colored antifreeze may not be compatible with certain test kits.

Cooling System Maintenance:

Refer to the engine OEM manual for detailed information regarding cooling system service and maintenance intervals. Services include draining and replacing the coolant, flushing the cooling system, inspecting the water pump and standpipe and replacing the thermostat, gasket or seal.

Coolant Overheated:

The engine can overheat for a number of reasons. Before engine temperature reaches a critical point, it is preceded by illumination of dash indicator lamps as well as above normal temperature gauge readings. It is best to adhere to these indicators and take immediate corrective action before the engine is subjected to extreme heat and potential damage.

If the engine should begin to severely overheat, engine protection software will begin to decrease fuel regardless of throttle position (derate) to reduce heat created by combustion. Damage to the engine will occur if engine operation continues and cause of the overheat condition is not immediately corrected. At this point it is best to shut off the engine as soon as possible to avoid further engine damage.

WARNING:

It is advised to shut off the engine should the engine overheat. It may take several hours before engine temperature has lowered to a safe operating range. DO NOT remove the coolant reservoir cap as severe burns may result. DO NOT add cold water to an overheated engine as this will cause uneven rapid cooling and possibly result in further engine damage.

Freeze Protection:

Coolant freeze protection is checked using a refractometer for accuracy. This meter checks at what point the coolant begins to freeze. Refer to the engine OEM manual for test procedures.

Coolant System - Thawing:

If the coolant system becomes frozen, the motorhome must be towed. Place the motorhome in a warm area until completely thawed. If the engine is operated when the cooling system is frozen, the engine may overheat due to insufficient coolant circulation. Once thawed, check the engine, radiator and related components for damage caused by expansion of frozen coolant.

Coolant Hoses:

Inspect coolant hoses and connections when checking engine or transmission fluids. Look for any signs of chaffing at hose restraints or sharp edges. Indications that hoses have reached the end of service life include cracking or swelling around clamps and connections. Oil leaks can also deteriorate hoses.

Overheating can be caused by a collapsed hose. Old hoses can also deteriorate on the inside causing partial clogs and reducing cooling efficiency. Replace any hose found to be cracked, swollen or damaged. Periodically check hose clamp torque.

Inspect:

Every 12 months - Inspect all hoses, clamps, and fittings for leaks due to cracking, softness and loose clamps/fittings. Look for signs of fluid leaks, damaged end fittings or ballooning; chafed, kinked, or crushed hoses, loose clamps and fittings. Correct any deficiencies found.

Radiator/Charge Air Cooler

The diesel engine uses compression to ignite the fuel/air charge. To increase compression inside the combustion chamber (resulting in increased power output) a turbocharger is added to the engine. The turbocharger is a paired housing assembly with impellers inside each housing connected by a common shaft. One impeller is propelled by the engine exhaust which drives the other impeller. The function of the other impeller is to increase compression inside the combustion chamber by forcing air into the intake manifold.

This process works well, however, the intake air charge is heated two different ways: through convection by the exhaust gases driving the turbocharger and when air is compressed. This negative effect inside the combustion chamber results in lost power potential. Therefore, a Charge Air Cooler (CAC) is installed to cool the intake air before it enters the engine. The CAC performs the same function as a radiator, cooling air instead of liquid. Ambient air passing through the CAC will cool the engine intake air charge.

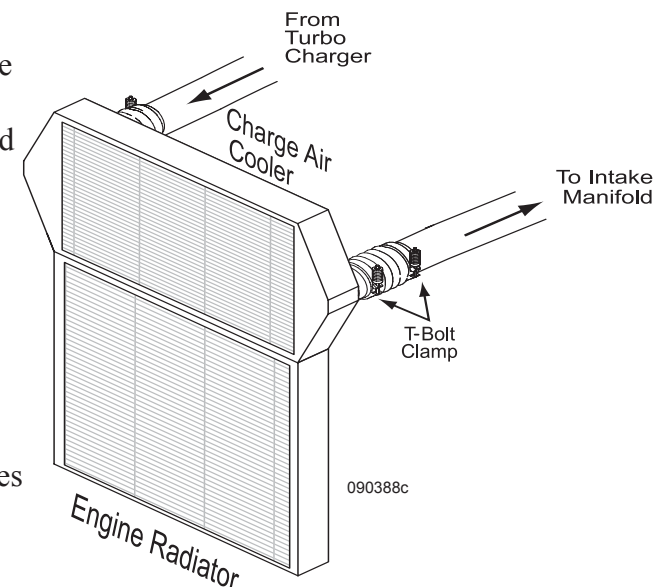
After leaving the turbocharger, intake air is compressed and heated to approximately 300° to 375° F., depending on the engine load and throttle position. Before air enters the intake manifold, the CAC cools the intake air temperature to the engine manufacturer specifications. Lowered intake air temperatures reduce exhaust emissions, improve fuel economy and increase horsepower.

Cleaning and Maintenance:

- ◆ Regular maintenance includes draining the engine coolant, flushing/cleaning the cooling system, inspecting the water pump standpipe, replacing the thermostat, gasket and seal, and replacing the coolant and SCA element.
- ◆ Inspect the charge air cooler every six months and remove dirt and debris that may block the fins. If the motorhome develops an oil leak, there is a possibility that the oil will coat the fins of the CAC. Dust will adhere to the oil film, clog the fins and reduce cooling efficiency. When the oil leak is repaired, the CAC must be thoroughly cleaned.

NOTE:

Refer to the OEM engine manual for cooling system maintenance schedules.



Representation of radiator and charge air cooler

- ◆ During each oil change inspect the engine side of the radiator/CAC assembly for foreign objects that may cause restriction.
- ◆ Spraying degreaser on the charge air cooler, as well as using a steam cleaner, will not damage the CAC. However, pressure washer and steam cleaner nozzles placed too close to the CAC can bend the fins. The recommended cleaning procedure for the CAC and the radiator is to use a bucket of mild soap and water. Carefully wash with a bristle brush then rinse with minimum water pressure, standing back a distance to avoid bending the fins.
- ◆ When performing maintenance, it is also necessary to inspect other components of the cooling system. The charge air cooler and radiator also requires an inspection for cracks, broken welds, secure mounting, and general cleanliness.

Coolant Hoses:

Inspect coolant hoses and connections when checking engine or transmission fluids. Look for any signs of chaffing at hose restraints or sharp edges. Indications that hoses have reached the end of service life include cracking or swelling around clamps and connections. Oil leaks can also deteriorate hoses. Overheating can be caused by a collapsed hose or a clog caused by rubber shedding from a rotten hose. Replace any hose found to be cracked, swollen or damaged. Connections should be inspected periodically and hose clamps tightened.

TRANSMISSION

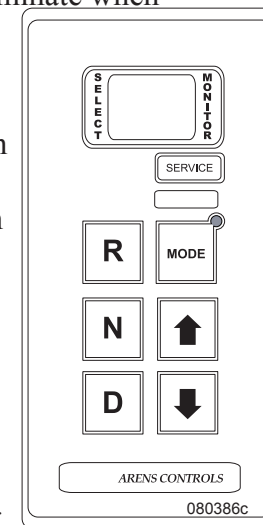
The Allison World transmission incorporates the World Transmission Electronic Control (WTEC) system. The system is comprised of four major components connected by a wiring harness: the Transmission Control Module (TCM), throttle position sensor, three speed sensors and the remote shift selector (keypad). The TCM processes information received from the throttle position sensor, speed sensor, pressure switch and shift selector to provide optimum shift quality. This is accomplished by matching transmission and engine RPM during a shift to establish a desired shift profile within the TCM. Another feature of the transmission is the ability to “learn” or “adapt.” The electronic control system optimizes shift quality by using “Adaptive Shifting.” A wide variety of varied shift conditions is required before optimizing shift quality. Generally, five typical shifts of a consistent shift type are needed to optimize shift quality.

Shift Selector

The keypads on the shift selector are R (Reverse), N (Neutral), D (Drive), Up and Down arrow, and Mode button. The digital display shows gear selection (Select), and gear attained (Monitor).

A Trans Service icon (wrench) on the instrument panel will illuminate when maintenance is due.

NN (Neutral) will appear in the display window when the ignition is turned On. This indicates the transmission is in neutral. If NN does not display when the ignition is turned on, there is no power to the shift selector and the transmission will not allow the engine to start. No display is an indicator of electrical problems with the engine batteries, TCM, or the shift selector.



Arems shift control

Keypad Functions:

- ◆ Select Reverse by pressing R. RR will display.
- ◆ Select Neutral by pressing N. NN will display.
- ◆ Select Drive range by pressing D. The highest forward gear (6th) appears on the Select (left) side of the display. The Monitor (right) side of the display will show first gear displayed as 6 1.

As the transmission up-shifts, the Monitor side of the display will show subsequent gears attained. The Up and Down buttons are used to select a higher (if not in 6th) or lower (if not in 1st) forward gear. These buttons will not select Drive when the transmission is in neutral or reverse.

Using the Up or Down buttons in Drive changes forward gear selection by one. If a button is held continuously, the gear range will continue to change up or down until the button is released or until the highest/lowest possible forward gear is selected.

Mode Button:

The Mode button enables a secondary shift schedule. This is referred to as Economy mode. Economy mode sets the transmission up-shift schedule to occur at a lower engine RPM through gear changes 3-4, 4-5, 5-6 and downshift schedule 6-5, 5-4, 4-3. During highway driving with the cruise control set between 55 and 65 M.P.H., placing the transmission in economy mode should eliminate most transmission downshifts from sixth to fifth when incurring a slight incline or overpass.

CAUTION:

Do not use Economy mode in heavy stop and go traffic or mountainous terrains. Frequent shifting while using heavy throttle occurs in Economy mode and increases transmission fluid temperature. Exit Economy mode until road conditions improve.

NOTE:

The shift schedule is altered when cruise control power is enabled. Turn off cruise power in congested traffic and mountainous terrain.

NOTE:

The transmission will not accept a manually selected gear change to occur if the gear selected is out of the specified operating range.

CAUTION:

Engine temperature may rise when ascending long grades using full throttle. Towing will increase the demand on the engine. If engine temperature or transmission fluid temperature is excessive, manually shift the transmission to the next lower gear and reduce throttle. The engine will use less fuel and RPM should increase.

NOTE:

The transmission will not shift into gear from Neutral if the engine RPM is at or above 900. The display will flash "66" indicating the engine RPM is excessive. Select "N" and lower engine RPM.

Trans Service Icon

If the electronics determine maintenance is due, the Trans Service icon (wrench) on the instrument panel will illuminate when the ignition key is turned on. The TCM will record into memory the day and time, mileage, and message reference. The Trans Service icon will turn off shortly after selecting Drive. If necessary maintenance is repeatedly ignored, the Trans Service icon and Check Trans icon will illuminate continuously. If this occurs, the motorhome must be taken to an authorized Allison service center for repairs.



NOTE:

If the Trans Service icon remains illuminated while in Drive, the motorhome must be taken to an authorized Allison service center for repairs.

Check Trans Icon

Each time the engine is started the Check Trans icon will illuminate then turn off. This momentary illumination is performing a circuit test. If the Check Trans light does not illuminate during start up, or if the light remains on after start up, the transmission system should be checked immediately.

Continued illumination of the Check Trans light during vehicle operation (other than start up) will log a fault in the TCM. The electronics inform the operator there is a problem with the transmission system and reacts automatically to protect the operator, motorhome and transmission. If the TCM detects a Do Not Shift condition, the TCM will restrict shifting and turn on the Check Trans light.

Illumination of the Check Trans light may be accompanied by a flashing display from the shift selector. The shift selector will show actual range attained and the transmission will not respond to shift requests.

Indications from the shift selector are provided to inform the operator that the transmission is not performing as designed and is operating at reduced capacity to limit likelihood of damage to the transmission.

The keypad will not respond to shift commands and the transmission generally will downshift to 4th gear. The torque converter will not "lock-up" and engine speed is automatically reduced. Direction changes (i.e. forward to reverse) will not be allowed. Locate a safe secure place to park the motorhome.

If the engine is shut off, then restarted after a Check Trans indication, the transmission remains in Neutral until the problem is corrected. Service should be performed immediately in order to minimize damage to the transmission.

NOTE:

Contact an authorized Allison transmission service center whenever a transmission related concern arises. For some problems, diagnostic trouble codes may be registered without the TCM activating the Check Trans icon. An authorized Allison service center will have the equipment to check diagnostic codes and correct problems that may arise.

Periodic Inspections:

Careful attention to fluid level and operating temperature is very important. Inspect hoses for signs of leakage or abrasion. The transmission should be kept clean. Report to an authorized Allison service center abnormalities in operation or when the Check Trans icon illuminates or Trans Service icon remains illuminated.

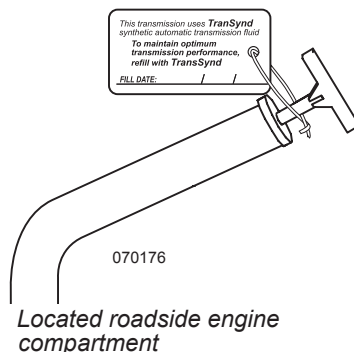
Prevent Major Problems:

Minor problems can be kept from becoming major problems by contacting an authorized Allison transmission service center when one of these conditions occurs:

- ◆ Shifting feels odd.
- ◆ Transmission leaks fluid.
- ◆ Unusual transmission-related sounds.
- ◆ The Trans Service and/or Check Trans icon illuminates frequently or remains illuminated.

Transmission Fluid

Transmission fluid cools, lubricates and transmits hydraulic power. Proper fluid levels must be maintained at all times. If fluid level is too low, the torque converter and clutches do not receive an adequate supply of fluid. If fluid level is too high, the fluid can aerate. Aerated fluid can cause the transmission to shift erratically or overheat. Check the transmission fluid level before each trip and after removing the motorhome from storage.



Fluid Type:

The transmission is filled with TranSynd™ synthetic transmission fluid at the factory. A tag is attached to the dipstick identifying the transmission is filled with TranSynd™ synthetic transmission fluid. Use only transmission fluid meeting Allison specification TES 295.

CAUTION:

The transmission is filled with TranSynd™ synthetic transmission fluid meeting Allison specification TES 295. Do not mix with other fluid types such as Dexron/Mercon ATF (Automatic Transmission Fluid). The TCM prognostics are programmed for use with TES 295 approved fluids only.

Fluid Cold Check:

A cold check is performed to determine adequate fluid level for safe operating such as after a fluid and filter change. A cold check should be performed after transmission maintenance or service until a hot fluid level check can be performed.

- ◆ Start the engine. Park the motorhome on a level surface. Set the parking brake.
- ◆ Allow the engine to run at idle (500 to 800 RPM) for one minute.
- ◆ Apply the service brakes and shift to D (Drive), then to N (Neutral), and next to R (Reverse) to fill the system. Shift the transmission to N (Neutral) and release the service brakes. Allow the engine to idle between 500 to 800 RPM.
- ◆ Remove the dipstick and wipe clean. Reinsert the dipstick then remove to check fluid level. Repeat to verify reading, if necessary.

Safe operating level is anywhere within the Cold Check band on the dipstick. This allows safe operation of the transmission until a Hot Check can be performed. If the level is not within this band, add or drain fluid as necessary to put the level to the middle of the Cold Check band. Perform a Hot Check at the first opportunity when normal operating temperatures are reached.

CAUTION:

Low or high fluid levels can cause overheating and irregular shift patterns. These conditions can damage the transmission if not corrected.

Fluid Hot Check:

Fluid level rises as temperature increases. Fluid must be at operating temperature to ensure an accurate check. If a transmission temperature gauge is not present, check the fluid level when the coolant temperature gauge has stabilized and the motorhome has been driven for at least one hour.

- ◆ Park the motorhome on a level surface and shift to N (Neutral). Apply the parking brake and allow the engine to idle (500 to 800 RPM).
- ◆ Check the fluid level. Safe operating level is anywhere within the Hot Run band on the dipstick.

The Hot Run band is approximately one quart of fluid at operating temperature (above 170° F.). If the level is not within this band, add or drain fluid as necessary to put the level within the Hot Run band. Ensure fluid level checks are consistent. Check the level more than once. If readings are inconsistent, ensure the transmission breather is not clogged. Contact the nearest authorized Allison service center if readings are inconsistent.

Fluid Change Interval:

The transmission fluid change intervals are determined by:

- ◆ When the Trans Service icon illuminates.
- ◆ Date/mileage as determined by Allison in the OEM transmission owner's manual.

There are two filters in the transmission: Main Filter and Lube Filter. Both filters are replaced as a set.

Be sure to retain the receipt for proof of the initial Main filter change. Refer to the Allison transmission OEM manual or contact an authorized Allison service center for service intervals.

NOTE:

Date/mileage change intervals still apply as specified in the Transmission OEM Manual. Fluid must also be changed whenever there is evidence of impurities or high temperature operation indicated by fluid discoloration or strong odor. Refer to the Allison transmission owner's manual or contact an authorized Allison service center for fluid and filter service intervals.

Health Monitor:

The health monitor checks the amount of service life remaining of the internal clutches. If the Trans Service icon remains illuminated, the transmission must be inspected by an authorized Allison service center for diagnosis and repair.

EXHAUST BRAKE

The exhaust brake is designed to supplement the standard wheel braking system. It is not designed to bring the motorhome to a complete stop. Use of the exhaust brake can extend service life of brake linings. The exhaust brake switch activates the auxiliary brake.

**To Engage the Exhaust Brake:**

- ◆ Turn on exhaust brake switch and release the throttle to the idle position.

When activated, the exhaust brake will restrict exhaust gases causing increased back-pressure within the engine. Increased back-pressure slows the speed of the engine resulting in braking action. The amount of engine braking force is relative to engine speed (RPM).

When the auxiliary brake is activated going down a hill, it can help control road speed or sufficiently slow the road speed until the transmission automatically downshifts to the next lower gear. Downshifting automatically occurs from high gear down to second gear. Certain road conditions and engine speeds may require the transmission be manually downshifted in order to generate adequate engine RPM and increase the engine brake effect. If the grade is steep, use the exhaust brake in conjunction with the service brakes to control road speed.

NOTE:

The brake lights will illuminate while the exhaust brake is applied.

NOTE:

With the exhaust brake applied, road speed can increase to the point the transmission will automatically upshift to prevent engine over-speed.

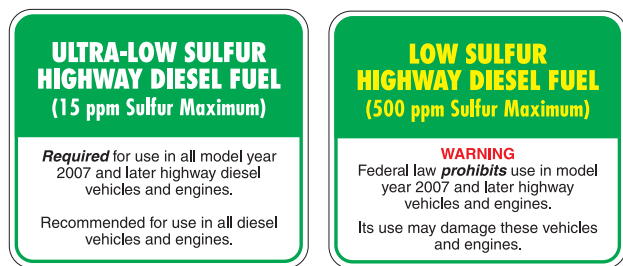
NOTE:

Activating the exhaust brake switch does not cancel cruise control.

FUEL SYSTEM

Fuel Requirements

Diesel Fuel in the United States is categorized by sulfur content. There are two categories: Low Sulfur Diesel (LSD) and Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD). LSD fuel contains a maximum sulfur content of 500 parts per million (ppm); ULSD fuel contains a maximum sulfur content of 15 ppm.



100217

LSD (Low Sulfur Diesel) and ULSD (Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel): Beginning June 1, 2006, 80% of available diesel fuel in the United States will have less sulfur. Beginning October 15, 2006, additional labeling on diesel fuel dispensing pumps will reflect the reduction in sulfur to include Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) and Low Sulfur Diesel (LSD). ULSD fuel contains a maximum sulfur content of 15 ppm (parts per million) while LSD fuel contains a maximum sulfur content of 500 ppm. 2007 and later model year engines and emission systems are designed to use ULSD fuel. Refer to the engine OEM manual for which type of fuel is acceptable for use.

NOTE:

The MaxxForce 7 engine is designed to use Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel.

WARNING:

Use of LSD fuel in ULSD engines will damage emission control systems and is subject to fine.

CAUTION:

Engines designed for ULSD fuel require specially formulated motor oil classified by the API (American Petroleum Institute) as category CJ-4.

Seasonal Requirements: Diesel fuel classified as # 2 is used in moderate and temperate climates. A winter blend of #1 and #2 diesel fuels is available during the winter months in cooler climates (or possibly year-round in extremely cold or arctic areas). The dispensing pump may not indicate winter blend.

Biodiesel: Biodiesel is a synthetic fuel made from plant oil or recycled cooking oil. Biodiesel is often sold as a biodiesel/petrodiesel blend with an alphanumeric designation that indicates biodiesel content. For example: B5 is 5% biodiesel and 95% petrodiesel while B100 is 100% biodiesel. Due to variances in biodiesel, its use is restricted by the engine manufacturer. Refer to the OEM engine manual for acceptable biodiesel tolerances.

NOTE:

Higher blends of B6 up to B20 are acceptable if the fuel meets ASTM D7467-08. Refer to the engine OEM manual for further information.

Tips: Try to obtain fuel from sources that are serviced often, such as large truck service facilities. The fuel supply is fresh and the possibility of introducing contaminants or water into the fuel system is reduced. If the engine runs out of fuel, the fuel system must to be thoroughly primed before the engine will start and run properly.

WARNING:

Do not mix gasoline, alcohol or gasohol with diesel fuel. This mixture can cause an explosion.

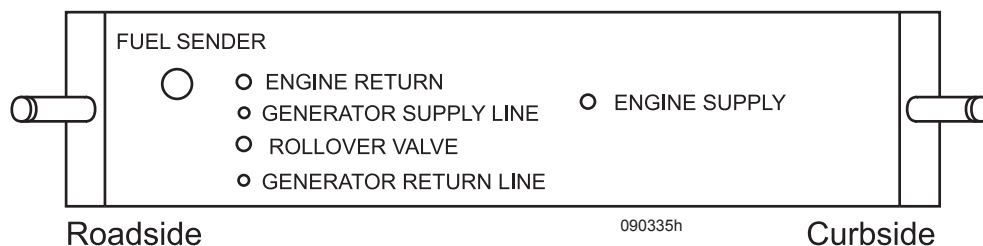
NOTE:

Due to the precise tolerances of diesel injection systems, it is extremely important that fuel be kept clean and free of dirt or water. Dirt or water in the system can cause severe damage to both the fuel pump and the fuel injectors. Fuel additives for lubricity are not recommended. There are numerous diesel fuel additives to help remove moisture from fuel, prevent microbe growth and to prevent gelling during cold weather. Before adding any type of fuel additive or extender, consult the OEM manual.

Fuel Tank

Pick-up and return lines are placed at opposite ends of the tank to inhibit fuel aeration. The engine pickup tube is cut at a 45° angle to allow optimum flow to the engine. The generator intake tube is set to approximately ¼ of a tank. This will prevent depleting the fuel supply while dry camping.

The bottom of the tank is made in a "V" configuration allowing the engine pick-up tube access to almost all available fuel in the tank.

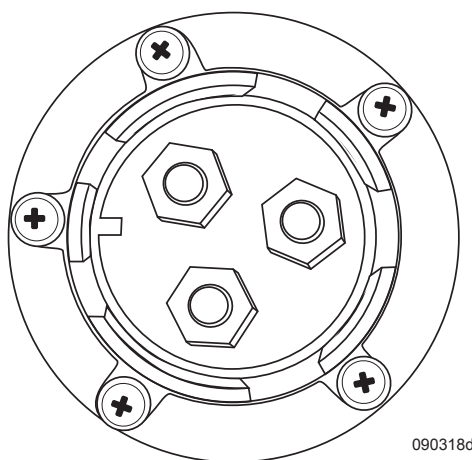


Internal baffles slow fuel slosh. A check valve placed at the bottom of the baffle, at the end of the tank with the pick-up tube, prevents fuel starvation through long corners when fuel supply is low.

NOTE:

Fill the fuel tank to reduce the amount of potential condensation if the motorhome is going to be stored for any length of time. After storage, check the vent tube for blockage. It is not uncommon for insects to plug the vent tube. If pressure or vacuum exists when the fuel cap is removed, the vent tube may be blocked. The end of the vent tube is located on the curbside of the fuel tank, near the bottom.

Fuel Sender



The fuel sender, located on the top of the fuel tank, is preset at the factory and non-adjustable.

Fuel Lines & Hoses

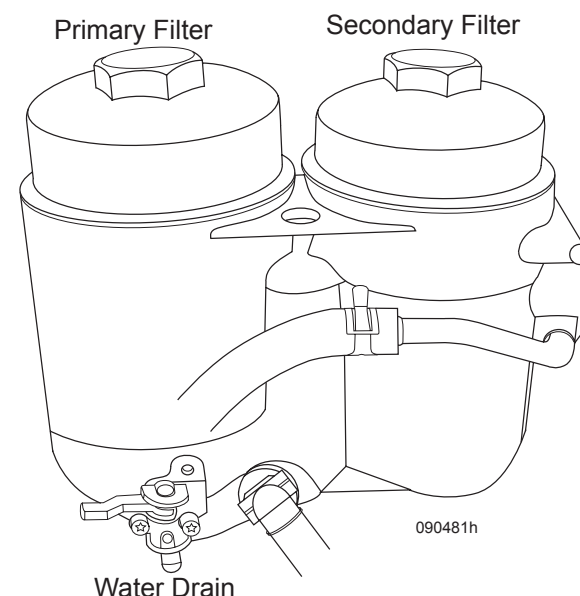
Make a visual check for fuel leaks at all engine-mounted fuel lines, connections and at the fuel tank pick-up and return lines. Leaks in this area may best be detected by checking for accumulation of fuel under the tank. Engine performance and auxiliary equipment is dependent upon the ability of flexible hoses to transfer lubricating oil, air, coolant and fuel. Maintenance of hoses is an important step in ensuring efficient, economical and safe operation of the engine and related equipment.

INSPECTION:

Check hoses for leaks daily as part of the pre-start inspection. Check all fittings, clamps and ties. Ensure the hoses are not touching shafts, couplings or heated surfaces, including exhaust manifolds, sharp edges or other obvious hazardous areas. Vibration from the engine and road can move or fatigue clamps and ties. To ensure continued proper support, frequently inspect fasteners and tighten or replace them as necessary.

Fuel Filters

Two filters are used for the engine: a primary and secondary filter. The filters are located on the engine.



NOTE:

It is recommended to wear gloves and old clothing when working with diesel fuel. Avoid getting fuel in the interior of the motorhome.

Filter Maintenance Intervals:

- ◆ Drain the primary fuel filter daily before travel.
- ◆ Change the primary fuel filter every six months, 15,000 miles or at the first indication of power loss.
- ◆ Refer to the OEM engine manual for service intervals of the secondary fuel filter.

Water in Fuel:

If the Check Engine (Warning Triangle) lamp is illuminated, engine control circuits may have detected water in the fuel filter. Do not continue engine operation. Fuel contaminated with water can damage fuel injectors. Water is heavier than fuel and will collect at the bottom of the filter or filter housing. Drain the filter using the valve on the bottom of the filter.

NOTE:

Always carry an extra filter as one tank full of excessively contaminated diesel fuel can plug a filter.

To Drain the Filter:

- ◆ Wear safety glasses.
- ◆ Shut off the engine.
- ◆ Open the drain valve. Drain water/fuel into a container and dispose of in accordance with local environmental regulations.
- ◆ Close the drain valve when clear fuel is visible.

NOTE:

Water and sediment from the filter can contain petroleum products. Consult the local environmental agency for recommended disposal guidelines.

Priming the Engine:

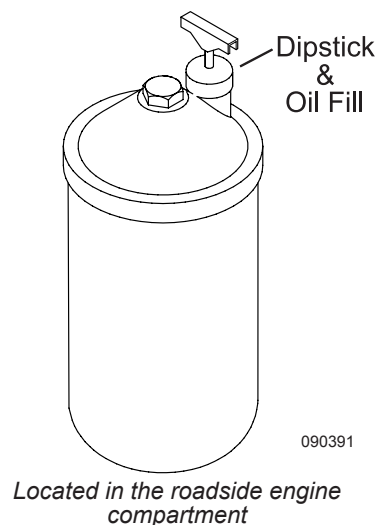
1. Fill tank with 30 gallons of fuel, or more if parked on a slant.
2. Turn key on for 10 seconds then off 15 seconds.
3. Perform cycle 3 times to prime system.
4. Attempt to start the engine. If the engine fails to start, repeat steps 2 and 3.

NOTE:

This procedure may have to be performed a few times.

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

When performing a pre-check of the motorhome, look for oil leaks under the motorhome and around hose fittings. If a hose connection appears to be leaking, clean the surrounding area. If seepage continues, have the problem corrected to prevent untimely failure.



Hydraulic Reservoir

The power steering reservoir with internal filter is located roadside in the engine compartment adjacent to the steering gear. The filter is rated at ten micron*. The reservoir is filled with AW-46 hydraulic oil.

Filter number: 84365A (ten micron*)

**One micron is one millionth of one meter.*

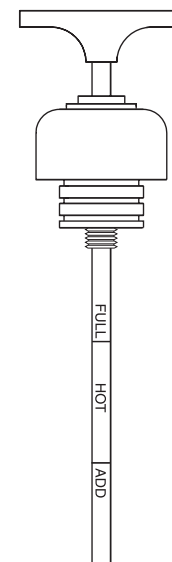
NOTE:

Filter is accurate at time of printing. Confirm part number before ordering or obtaining replacement.

The primary function of the power steering reservoir is to keep the steering system free of contamination and to dissipate excessive heat that builds during operation. Check the oil level in the reservoir prior to each trip. The oil dipstick fill is located on top of the reservoir. The oil level should be kept between the full and add marks on the dipstick.

Checking the Fluid Level:

- ◆ Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
- ◆ While the engine is at idle, turn the steering wheel left and right several times.
- ◆ Shut the engine off.
- ◆ Rotate the T-handle counterclockwise to remove the dipstick.
- ◆ Check the fluid level on the Hot side of the dipstick in the area marked Hot. Do not exceed the full mark.



100167

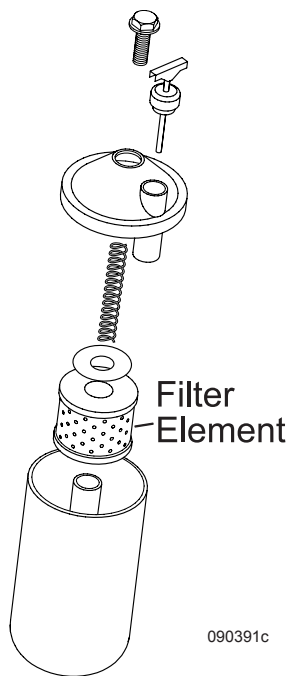
- ◆ If fluid level is low, add fluid in small amounts, continuously checking the level until the Full mark is reached.
- ◆ Insert the T-handle back in the reservoir and rotate clockwise to expand seal. Do not overtighten.

Power Steering Hydraulic Filter

A filter is located in the power steering reservoir. Replace the filter every 15,000 miles, or once a year, for cellulose element.

Changing the hydraulic oil filter:

- ◆ Loosen cover bolt.
- ◆ Remove the bolt and cover plate to access the spring and filter.
- ◆ Place a container under the reservoir. Also have rags handy to clean up any oil that may spill.



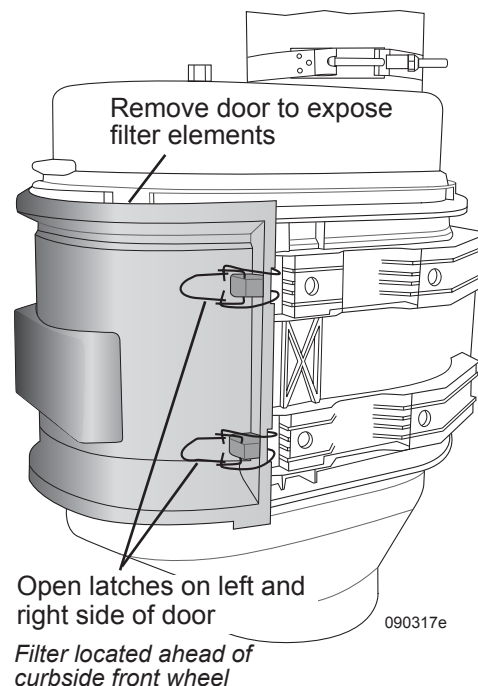
- ◆ Remove the spring and washer to remove the filter assembly. Use care because oil may spill out.
- ◆ After replacing the filter assembly, reverse the process to re-assemble the reservoir.
- ◆ When attaching the cover plate in the rubber cover seal, check for any damage.
- ◆ Fill reservoir with new AW-46 hydraulic oil only. **Do not** reuse old oil. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature to purge trapped air. While the engine is at idle, turn the steering wheel left and right several times. Shut engine off and confirm proper oil level in reservoir.

AIR FILTER

The air filters remove particulates for the engine air intake and charge air system. Air entering the engine must be as clean as possible. Contaminated air can cause destruction of major engine components. Even small amounts of contaminants can do major damage to an engine.

INSPECTION:

Inspect the air intake system on a weekly basis, looking for damage, loose connections, wear to the air ducting, clamps and filter housing. Check that the ducting is not rubbing or wearing on other components and that all components are securely in place.



To Replace the Air Filter:

- ◆ Open latches at 4 points.
- ◆ Pull down on filter then remove from housing.
- ◆ Install new filter onto housing base. Ensure filter is properly seated on base.
- ◆ Close latches.

Primary Filter: Donaldson P610788
Safety Filter: Donaldson P601560

NOTE:

Filter numbers accurate at time of printing. Confirm part numbers before ordering or obtaining replacement.

WARNING:

Do not operate the engine with the air cleaner removed. Severe engine damage can occur.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The exhaust system is equipped with a (Diesel Particulate Filter) DPF to lower emissions by trapping particulate matter (soot). Naturally occurring exhaust heat oxidizes built-up particulates and clears (regenerates) the filter. This is called passive regeneration. If heat from passive regeneration is insufficient, an active regeneration cycle will automatically initiate during travel. An active regeneration cycle can also be initiated by the operator while parked. Dash indicator lamps alert the operator of the status of the DPF.

CAUTION:

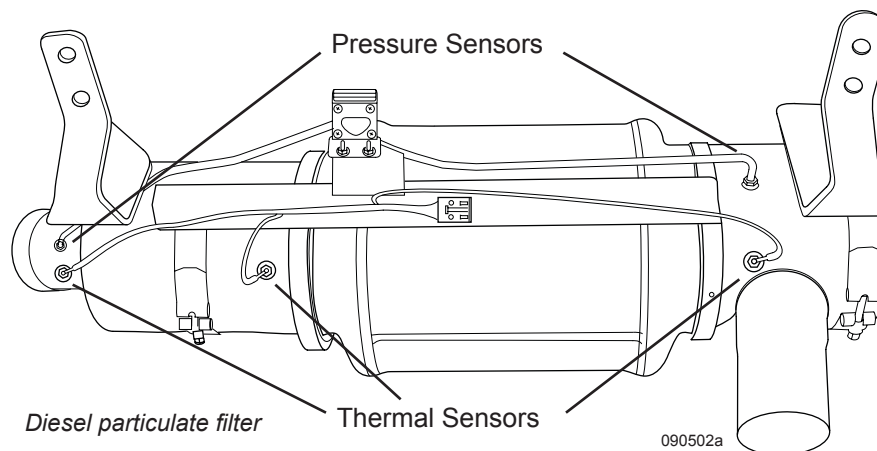
The engine and related components are designed to use Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) only. Do not use Low Sulfur Diesel (LSD) with a DPF equipped engine. LSD will damage the DPF.

Passive Regeneration:

Passive regeneration is when heat from exhaust gas oxidizes particulate matter in the DPF. Under normal freeway travel, passive regeneration is usually sufficient to oxidize particulate matter. However, particulate matter can accumulate in the DPF where an active regeneration cycle is necessary to oxidize particulate matter.

Active Regeneration:

There are two types of active regeneration, rolling and parked. Both types perform the same function but under different circumstances. A rolling active regeneration occurs automatically while traveling.



A parked active regeneration is initiated by the operator. Active regeneration injects fuel into the exhaust system to heat the DPF until particulate matter is oxidized. Active regeneration is determined by pressure sensors located on the DPF. Situations that can lead to accumulation of particulates are stop and go driving, short run periods and excess idling.

HEST Lamp:

During active regeneration, exhaust temperature can raise to over 1000 degrees F°. The HEST (High Exhaust System Temperature) dash lamp will illuminate when one of three thermal exhaust sensors reach 750° F., and the motorhome is traveling slower than 5 MPH to warn of elevated exhaust temperature. The HEST lamp will remain on until exhaust temperature cools which may not be until the engine is turned off. Illumination of the HEST lamp is part of normal operation and does not indicate a fault as long as there are no other active indicator lamps.



WARNING:

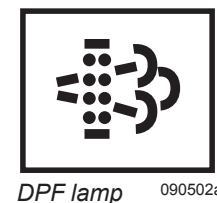
Use extreme caution if parking the motorhome while the HEST lamp is on. The exhaust system and exhaust gas will be extremely hot to the point of fire hazard. Do not park the motorhome on or around anything combustible or flammable. Use extreme caution not to enter the path of the exhaust while the HEST lamp is illuminated. Severe burns can occur.

NOTE:

If the engine is turned off during an active regeneration cycle, the cycle will automatically begin again (if necessary) when the motorhome is traveling.

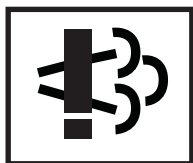
DPF Lamp:

A DPF indicator lamp on the dash illuminates when the DPF is partially clogged and restricting exhaust gasses. Driving the motorhome (preferably at freeway speed) will allow an active regeneration cycle to initiate. The DPF lamp will turn off once backpressure in the DPF is below specifications.



Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL):

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate when an emissions fault is detected in the engine control system. The emission system will need to be serviced at the earliest opportunity.



MIL lamp 090502a

DPF Lamp Warning System:

Indicator lamps will illuminate in stages of severity as to the condition of the DPF.

Stage One:

The DPF lamp glows steady. This means that an active regeneration cycle is necessary.



090502a

Stage Two:

The DPF lamp flashes. The DPF is clogged to the point that a rolling or parked regeneration needs to be performed at the earliest opportunity.



090502a

Stage Three:

The DPF lamp flashes. A warning alarm will also sound indicating an immediate necessity to regenerate the filter. The DPF is clogged to the point a parked regeneration is required as soon as possible. Engine control circuits will limit engine power to 70%.



DPF light & warning alarm 090502a

Stage Four:

The DPF lamp will extinguish and the Stop Engine lamp will illuminate. Engine control circuits will limit engine power to 20% so the motorhome can be moved to a safe location. Shut off the engine as soon as possible to avoid severe engine and/or system component damage. Do not drive the motorhome in this condition. The DPF will need to be removed for repair.



Stop engine lamp 090502a

Parked Regeneration:

Traffic and road conditions, short run periods and excessive idling can lead to clogging of the DPF by not allowing regeneration (passive or active) to occur. If the DPF indicator lamps are at Stage 2 or 3, it will be necessary to perform a parked regeneration if unable to travel at freeway speeds while in Stage 2. A parked regeneration cycle can last up to 20 minutes. During active regeneration, fuel is introduced into the exhaust system. Engine speed is automatically increased to a predetermined speed. A successful parked regeneration is indicated by the DPF lamp turning off and the engine returning to normal idle speed. The HEST lamp may remain illuminated for a period of time as exhaust system temperature will remain elevated.

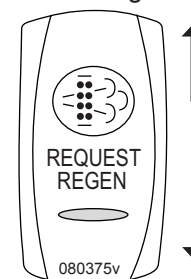
NOTE:

A parked regeneration can also be performed at Stage 1.

Request Regen Switch:

The Request Regen switch performs two functions. It is used to initiate an active regeneration when parked or cancel an active regeneration cycle when parked. If the DPF is in Stage 3, it is recommended to initiate a stationary regeneration cycle as soon as possible.

Cancel Regen



Request Regen

Initiating Stationary Regeneration:

The DPF lamp must be on before the engine control circuits will allow a stationary regeneration. The motorhome must be parked on a suitable surface and clear of surroundings that **Do Not** pose a fire or safety hazard.

- ◆ Engine is running with coolant temperature 170 F° or greater.
- ◆ Transmission is in neutral and park brake applied.
- ◆ Throttle in idle position. Foot brake pedal is not applied.
- ◆ Press and hold the regeneration switch for two seconds.

The “bar” light will glow steady. Engine speed will ramp up to a predetermined speed followed a short time later by illumination of the HEST lamp. The stationary regeneration cycle will last approximately 20 minutes. Regeneration is successful when engine speed returns to idle and the DPF lamp goes out. The HEST lamp will remain illuminated until exhaust temperature returns to normal.

If one or more of the pre-conditions are not met, the bar light will flash indicating active regeneration is unable to initiate until all pre-conditions are met. If a pre-condition changes state during active regeneration, such as stepping on the brake pedal, the regeneration process will stop and need to be restarted. If it becomes necessary to move the motorhome, the regeneration process can be cancelled by activating the Request Regen switch in the opposite direction.

NOTE:

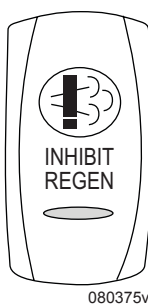
The Request Regen switch will flash if one or more pre-conditions are not met. Verify all pre-conditions then activate the switch again.

WARNING:

Extreme heat warning. Exhaust gasses exiting the tailpipe can exceed 1000 degrees F° during the regeneration cycle. Ensure the area is clear of flammable and combustible materials and people or pets.

Inhibit Regen Switch:

Turning on the Inhibit Regen switch will prevent an active regeneration from occurring while traveling or when parked. While it is preferred to allow active regeneration when necessary, situations such as nearby flammable materials or pedestrian congestion can be an unsafe environment for active regeneration.



LUBRICATION MAINTENANCE

Performing regular scheduled maintenance ensures reliable operation and optimum service life of the various chassis components. Completed maintenance brings peace of mind knowing the various components have received proper service. Failure to follow maintenance guidelines, or perform scheduled maintenance, results in inefficient operation, premature component wear or component failure resulting in breakdown. Maintenance schedules are usually performed at certain mile or time intervals. When performing high level procedures, lower level service should also be performed.

NOTE:

Maintenance schedules are based on normal operating conditions and use. Operating under unusual or adverse condition shortens service intervals.

INFORMATION:

Engine and transmission service intervals are listed in their respective OEM manuals.

Proper Lubricant Waste Disposal:

When performing service maintenance on the engine, transmission or rear axle, waste fluids and filters should be properly disposed of or recycled. Package used oils, antifreeze and other fluids in sealed containers. In many cases used oil is accepted free of charge at county disposal sites. Waste fluids are toxic to pets and other animals. Waste fluids should not be left in open containers. The sweet odor of antifreeze is attractive to pets, but highly toxic.

CAUTION:

Properly dispose of used antifreeze and waste oil. Animals like the sweet odor of antifreeze and may ingest it from open containers. Wipe up any fluid spills. Pets may lie in puddles of fluid, many of which are irritants and can cause severe chemical burns if not properly washed.

Lubricant Classification:

Lubricants are manufactured in many forms for a variety of applications. There are many different oil and grease consistencies each with a designed application. To properly select a particular type of lubricant for a specific application, the component must be evaluated.

Component stress loads, ambient temperature, working temperature and environmental exposure are just a few of the variables to consider. Select the proper lubricant for its intended application. As an example: selecting high viscosity grease to lubricate a lock cylinder results in sluggish lock cylinder operation especially in a cool environment. Conversely, using graphite to lubricate a component that is under extreme temperature and load will result in component failure. Grease ratings and their base compounds are especially important when selecting a lubricant type for an intended application. Some grease compounds are manufactured for multi-use application. These are acceptable if the grease rating is in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended lubricant type and rating.

Lubricants:

Many chassis components require lubrication. The types of lubricants used will vary with the application of the component.

A component may fail prematurely due to lack of lubrication or from using an incorrect lubricant type. The component manufacturer usually recommends a particular type of lubricant with a minimum approval rating. Most lubricants are tested under strict guidelines set by the ASTM (American Society for Testing and Materials). The NLGI (National Lubricating Grease Institute) helps disperse information to the grease production industry.

Grease containers usually have an approval rating by the SAE (Society of Automotive Engineers), Mil Spec (Military Specification), API (American Petroleum Institute) or by other recognized and accepted organizations.

The correct lubricant type with an approved specific rating must be used whenever applying, changing or adding any lubricant. When purchasing lubricants for a specific application be sure the label affirms the type of lubricant required with the tested rating by the term “meets or exceeds” in accordance with the manufacturer specifications.

Lubricating greases are made from different base compounds giving the grease different lubricating consistencies, properties and maximum operating temperatures. Most containers list the base compound and maximum operating temperature usually listed as melting point or drip point. Lubricating components, such as brake component for example, require a high temperature special base compound grease.

Lubricating this type of component with other than specified grease type will result in inadequate lubricating qualities and component malfunction or failure.

INSPECTION:

When performing any scheduled maintenance, inspect the area around the work area. For example, changing the oil, look at the rear differential. Inspect for visual signs of fluid leaks.

Most fluids and lubricants have a distinct odor, which can be used to detect early signs of trouble. Generally, odors are most detectable soon after parking. Unusual sounds are another method of detecting a problem early. There are many types of sounds that are normal, such as the cyclic purging of the air dryer. Become familiar with the different sounds. If something sounds odd, smells peculiar or looks unusual, investigate the situation.

Greasing:

Thoroughly clean all Zerk grease fittings before applying new lubricant. Keep paper towels or disposable rags handy when greasing. When lubricating items such as drive shafts and steer axle components, continued grease application is generally required until new grease appears at exit points.

Some items use sealed boots around the component to prevent moisture intrusion. When greasing these types of components, care must be given to prevent excess lubricant pressure from rupturing the seal.

WARNING:

Always chock wheels before going underneath the motorhome.

WARNING:

DO NOT allow anyone under the motorhome without first properly blocking frame (jackstands) from coming down in case of rapid deflation of air system.

Brake actuating components require lubrication to keep the actuating components freely operating. Avoid contaminating brake linings with lubricant. Particular care and attention to detail should be taken when lubricating brake actuating components. Wheel removal may be necessary to gain access to the grease fittings.

NOTE:

Suspension, steering, brake and drivetrain components are lubricated at factory using NLGI 2 Lithium Soap based grease.

To apply grease:

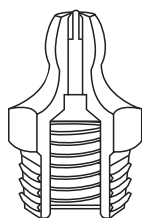
- ◆ Clean the grease fitting. Initially operate grease gun until new lubricant discharges from nozzle, then wipe nozzle clean to avoid introducing contaminants into the component.
- ◆ Snap nozzle onto grease fitting. Nozzle must remain in line with the grease fitting during the application process. If the nozzle is not in line, lubricant will collect around nozzle and grease fitting, failing to lubricate the component.

- ◆ Wrap the nozzle with a paper towel or rag to prevent contamination and accidental soiling of other areas.

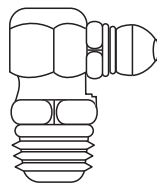
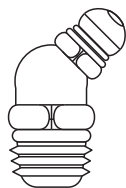
If the component does not accept grease the Zerk fitting may be plugged or damaged. Zerk fittings are replaceable and generally available at most auto supply stores. Zerk fittings come in a variety of angles depending on the application. Every effort should be made to lubricate the component, as neglect will only result in premature component failure.

NOTE

Some grease fittings may not be accessible until the steering wheel is turned or the motorhome is moved slightly.

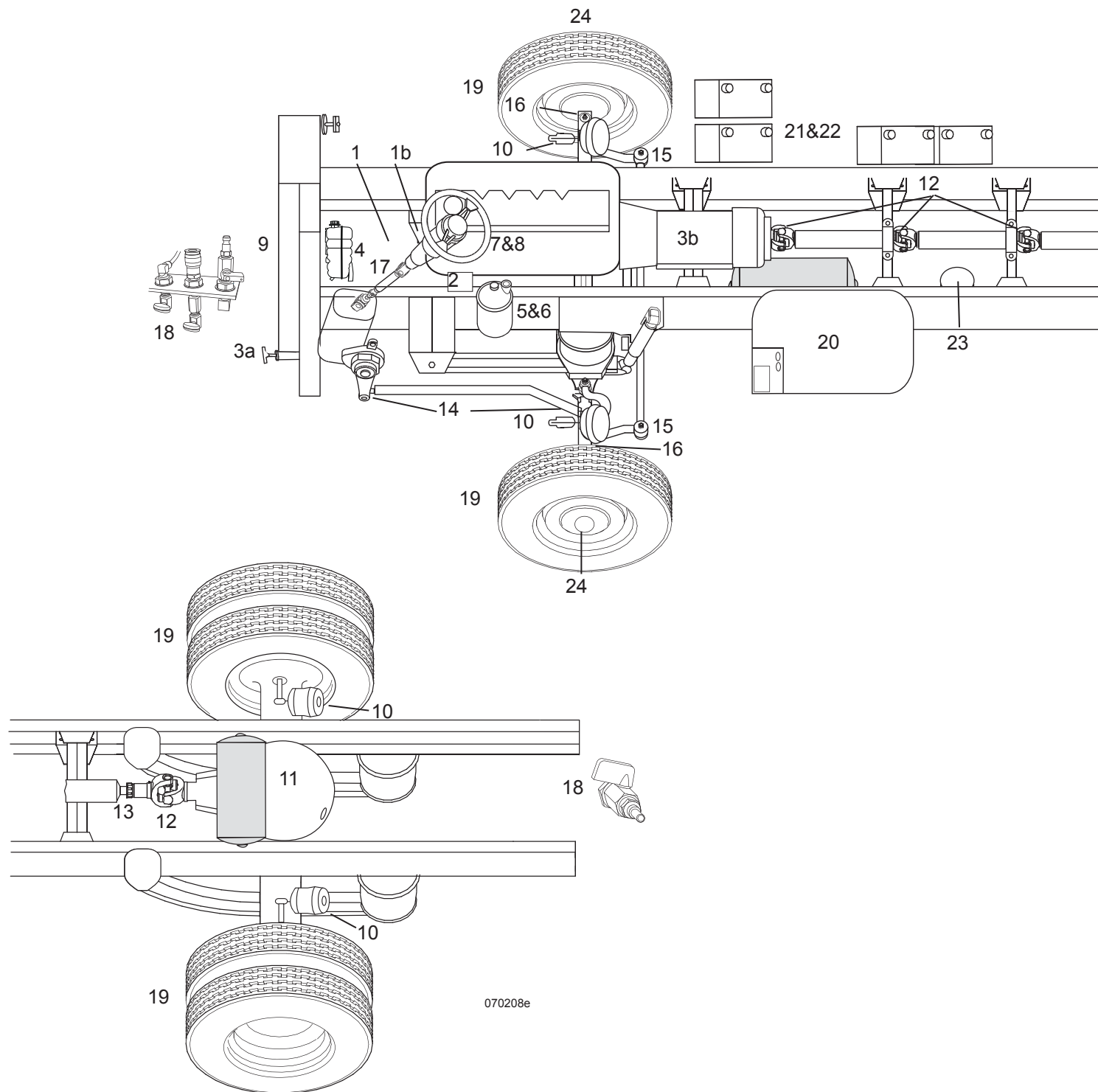


Typical Zerk Fitting



090368

LUBRICATION CHARTS



Representation of front and rear of chassis.

	Component:	Action:	When:	Code
1.	Engine Oil Dipstick	Keep to Full Mark	Before Each Trip + Daily Enroute	EO
1b.	Engine Oil Fill	Keep to Full Mark	Before Each Trip + Daily Enroute	EO
2.	Engine Oil Filter	Replace Filter	At Oil Change	OEM
3a.	Transmission Dipstick	Keep to Full Mark	Before each trip	TS
3b.	Transmission Filter	Replace	Refer to OEM Manual	OEM
4.	Engine Coolant Reservoir	Maintain Level	Before Each Trip + Daily Enroute	AF
5.	Hydraulic Fluid Reservoir	Maintain Level	Before Each Trip + Daily Enroute	HO
6.	Hydraulic Filter	Replace Filter	15,000 or Annually	HO
7.	Filter Fuel/Water Separator (Primary)	Inspect/Replace	Before Each Trip + Daily Enroute/15,000 or 6 Months	FF
8.	Filter Fuel (Secondary)	Replace	Refer to OEM Manual	OEM
9.	Radiator/Charge Air Cooler	Inspect	Weekly	OEM
10.	Slack Adjuster/Cam Shaft	Grease-2 Fittings ea.	10,000 or 3 Months	CL
11.	Rear Differential	Change Fluid	250,000 or 3 Years	MP
12.	Drive Shaft Universal Joints	Grease-5 U-Joints	5,000 or 6 Months	CL
13.	Drive Shaft Slip Yoke	Grease-1 Fitting	5,000 or 6 Months	CL
14.	Drag Link	Grease-2 Fittings	5,000 or 6 Months	CL
15.	Center Link	Grease-2 Fittings	5,000 or 6 Months	CL
16.	Spindles/Kingpins	Grease-2 Fittings ea.	5,000 or 6 Months	CL
17.	Intermediate Steering Shaft	Grease-3 Fittings	30,000 or Annually	CL-4
18.	Air Tank Drains	Drains	Monthly	-
19.	Tire Pressure	Check	Before Each Trip + Daily En route	-
20.	Generator	Refer to OEM Manual	Refer to OEM Manual	OEM
21.	Batteries	Inspect	Every 2 Weeks	DW
22.	Battery Terminals	Apply Coating	10,000 or Quarterly	P
23.	Air Dryer Filter	Replace	2 to 3 Years	--
24.	Wheel Bearings	Oil Filled	Inspect before each trip Change fluid 30,000 Miles or Annually	MP

Lubrication Code Chart:	
*EO	Engine oil as recommended by engine manufacturer. 15w-40 w/CJ-4 rating
*OEM	Refer to the Original Equipment Manufacturer's manual.
MP	API GL-5 or MT-1 type gear lubricant SAE 80w-90 non-synthetic
GO	SAE 90w
*CL	Chassis lubricant should be a high-quality non corrosive multi-purpose lithium soap base lubricant that is water resistant and designed to withstand extremely high operating temperatures.
*TF	Dexron 3 or Mercon 5 ATF
*HO	Hydraulic oil. AW-46 Pink dye added
*AF	Antifreeze as recommended by the engine manufacture.
FF	Fuel Filter
HT	High Temperature Bearing Grease
*TS	TranSynd™
DW	Distilled Water
P	Petroleum Jelly
CL-4	U-Joints located inside the motorhome under the steering cover use chassis lubricant.

*Fluids initially filled at factory.

NOTE:

Service must be performed every twelve (12) months, regardless of actual mileage, to protect seals, bearings and gaskets from drying out and failing. The motorhome must be started and driven for at least 20 miles every two weeks. It is important to remember the generator maintenance interval is based on hours of usage. Consult the OEM manual for the generator service interval.

SPECIFICATIONS

Tank Capacities

Tank Capacities (Approx. Gallons) All Models	
Water Heater	6 gal std/10 gal opt
Grey Water	61 gallons
Black Water	46 gallons
Fresh Water	50 gallons
Diesel Fuel	51 gallons
Propane*	16 gallons

*Actual filled Propane Tank Capacity is 80% of listing due to safety shutoff required on tank.

NOTE:

All tank capacities are estimated based upon calculations provided by the tank manufacturer and represent approximate capacities. The actual “usable capacity” may be greater or less than the estimated capacities based upon fabrication and installation of the tanks.

NOTE:

This chart reflects product specifications available at the time of printing. Therefore any floor plans introduced thereafter may not be reflected in the chart. All other information contained throughout the manual will still apply.

NOTE:

Filter and belt numbers were correct at the time of printing. Verify the numbers at time of removal. The manufacturer will not be responsible for incorrect filter or belt usage. Please refer to the engine OEM manual for specific maintenance information.

Engine Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS	MaxxForce 7
Cubic Inch Displacement	6.4 L/389 CI
Engine HP	260 HP@ 2600 RPM
Engine Torque	660 lbs./ft. @ 1600 RPM
Firing Order	12734568
Rear Axle Ratio	4:78:1
Alternator Amp Size	160 Amp
Idle Speed	700 RPM
Governed Speed	2200 RPM

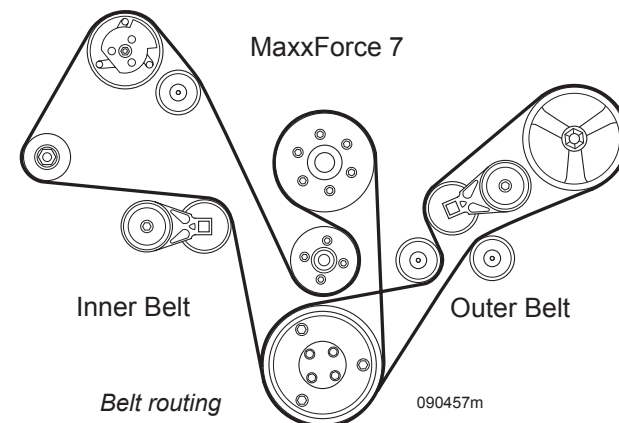
Chassis Fluid Capacities

CHASSIS LIQUID CAPACITIES	MaxxForce 7
Engine Oil	20 Qts (approx) w/ filter
Transmission Oil (with service)	10.6 Qts.w/filter
Radiator Coolant (initial amount)	6.5 Gal.
A/C Refrigerant (initial amount)	2 lbs. 134 A
Hydraulic Oil (power steering)	3.5 Qts.
Rear End	15 Qts. Approx.

Belts & Filters

BELTS & FILTERS	MANUFACTURER	NUMBER
Air Filter	Donaldson	Primary P610788
		Safety P601560
Serpentine Belt	International	1889037C1
Fuel Filter Kit	International	1884207C91
Oil (Lube) Filter	International	1893553C2
Transmission Main Filter	Allison 2500 MH	29539579
Air Dryer Filter	Meritor Wabco	R950011

Serpentine Belt Routing



Generator Specifications

6.0 KW

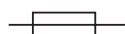
SERVICE INFORMATION

Refer to operator's manual for maintenance specifications and adjustments.

Oil Capacity 3 Qts w/oil filter
API Designation CE

Temp	SAE Viscosity
5° - 120°F	15W-40
(-13°F) - 88°F	10W-30
(-40°F) - 88°F	5W-30

If service/parts are needed the Cummins distributor can be located in the yellow pages under Generators-Electric In the USA or Canada call 1-800-888-6626 or www.cumminsonan.com DC Fuse and Radiator Cap Under Cover.



0098-7199.F *TMI*

020159va

Onan 6.0	Model HDKAH
Voltage	120
Watts	6000
Amps	50
Phase	1
Circuit Breaker	30 Amp 2 Pole

Weight Ratings

Vehicle Weight Ratings	32 Foot	35 Foot
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	29,000 lb/13182 kG	29,000 lb/13182 kG
Gross Combined Weight Rating	33,000 lb/ 15,000 kG	33,000 lb/ 15,000 kG
Front Gross Axle Weight Rating	11,000 lb/5,000 kG	11,000 lb/5,000 kG
Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating	18,000 lb/8,182 kG	11,000 lb/5,000 kG

Battery Specifications

Application	AH (20 HR)	CCA†	RC (25A @ 80° F) Minutes
12 Volt Chassis (ISB 340) Group 31p - LHD (2 each)*		750	180
6 Volt Domestic** UL16HC 2 each	420		75 Amp @ 80° F = 250 Min.

*Batteries connected in parallel. **Batteries connected in a Series/Parallel configuration.

†CCA Ratings are 0° F. These are the minimum requirements.

Approximate Minutes of Ampere Load					
UL16HC**	10 AMPS	25 AMPS	50 AMPS	75 AMPS	100 AMPS
	4980	1780	688	472	328

**Batteries connected in a Series/Parallel configuration.

Battery State of Charge vs Voltage/Specific Gravity			
Voltage	Specific Gravity	State of Charge	Depth of Charge
12.65	1.265	100%	0%
12.45	1.225	75%	25%
12.25	1.190	50%	50%
12.05	1.145	25%	75%
11.90	1.100	0%	100%

Voltage Reading: Battery fully charged at rest for one hour.

Engine Cold Cranking Amps Requirements			
MaxxForce 7	1500	CCA	12 VOLTS

CCA Ratings are 0° F. These are the minimum requirements.

MAINTENANCE RECORDS

After scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading and who performed the service in the boxes provided after the maintenance interval. Any additional information from “Owner Checks and Services” or “Periodic Maintenance” can be added on the following record pages. In addition, retain all maintenance receipts. The owner information portfolio is a convenient place to store them.

LUBRICATION SERVICE RECORD

KEY TO SERVICES

A – Lubrication & Inspection
 A1 -- Motor Oil & Filter Change
 A2 -- Transmission Oil Change

A3 -- Drive Axle Oil Change
 A4 -- Wheel Bearing Service
 B – Prescribed Service

C – Prescribed Service
 D – Prescribed Service
 E – Prescribed Service

MILEAGE	SERVICES										JOB PERFORMED	
	A	A1	A2	A3	A4	B	C	D	E	DATE	BY	
1												
2												
3												
4												
5												
6												
7												
8												
9												
10												
11												
12												
13												
14												
15												
16												
17												
18												
19												
20												
21												
22												
23												
24												
25												
26												
27												
28												
29												
30												

BATTERY RECORD

MAKE	TYPE	DATE INSTALLED	REPAIRS	DATE REPLACED	SERVICE	
					MONTHS	MILES

TIRE RECORD

MAKE	TYPE	PLY	DATE INSTALLED	REPAIRS	DATE REPLACED	SERVICE	
						MONTHS	MILES

NOTES

[illegible]

A

ABS/ATC System (Anti-lock Brakes).....	196
ABS Diagnostic	197
Alternator	174
Alternator Testing Procedure	174
Accessory Hookup.....	140
Air Conditioner & Heater Controls	181
Blend Air System	181
Maintenance	182
Operating Tips & Hints	182
System Components	183
Troubleshooting	184
Air Dryer.....	192
Desiccant Cartridge.....	193
Desiccant-Type Air Dryer	193
Air Dryer Cycle.....	194
Air Filter	220
Air Spring Inspections	194
Air Supply System.....	188
Air Governor	189
Air Storage Tanks.....	189
Accessory Air Fitting	190
Air System Charging (External)	190
Air Fittings	190
Air System Test.....	191
Awnings.....	99
Slide-out Cover	99
Rain Water.....	99
Patio Awning - Freedom	100
Patio Awning - Apex	100
Awning Care & Cleaning	101
Storm Precautions	101
Appliances - Introduction.....	72

B

Backing Up A Motorhome.....	20
Batteries - House	161
Battery Maintenance	161
Testing the Battery	163
Charge Time & Consumption Rate	165
Battery - Chassis	170
Battery Cut-off Switch.....	149
Battery Disconnect	170
Chassis	170
Battery Disconnect - House	149
Battery Maintainer	173
Relays.....	173
Bed - Air Mattress (Optional)	105
Setting the Mattress.....	105
Bedroom TV Operation.....	110
Booth Dinette	106
Booth Ensemble (Optional)	106
Brake Systems	195
Air Brakes	195
Park & Emergency Brake System.....	195
Automatic Slack Adjuster	195
Brake Systems - Backup	196
Breaking Camp	23

C

Carbon Monoxide Detector.....	42
Operation.....	43
Alarm	43
Testing.....	43
Cleaning & Maintenance	44
Ceiling	59
Chassis - Introduction.....	188
Chassis Electrical - Introduction	170

Cold Weather Conditions	128
Systems Heat.....	128
Cold Weather Storage	128
Control Center.....	116
Convection microwave Oven.....	76
Care & Cleaning	77
Cooktop	78
Safety	79
Cooktop Cover	79
Burner Grate.....	80
Care & Cleaning	80
Coolant System.....	210
Radiator/Charge Air Cooler	212
Countertops	61
Solid Surface.....	61
Repairing Cuts and Scratches	61

D

Dash	177
Instrument Panel	177
Lcd Display	178
Indicator Lights	178
LCD Controller	179
Dash Radio.....	106
Dash Radio Switch.....	106
Steering Wheel Controls	106
Satellite Radio (Optional)	107
Diagnostic Data Port.....	184
Diesel Particulate Filter	221
Distribution Panel - House 12 Volt DC ...	159
Door - Sliding.....	103
Drain Traps & Auto Vents.....	128
Drive Axle & Drive Shaft	203
Drive Axle.....	203
Drive Shaft	204

Driving & Safety	10
Inspections	10
Familiarize Yourself	10
Mirror Adjust	10
Safety Seat Belts	11
Driving Tips	12
Adjust to Driving Conditions	13
Dry Camping	22

E

Emergency Roadside Procedures	25
In Case of Flat Tire	25
Dead Chassis Battery	25
Engine - General Information.....	207
Engine “No Start” Flow Chart	185
Engine Oil	209
Engine Shutdown	209
Extended Engine Shutdown	210
Entry Door	95
Entry Step	94
Operation.....	94
Maintenance	94
Equipment - Introduction	94
Escape (Egress) Window	45
Exhaust Brake	216
Exterior Care.....	48
Corrosion.....	48
Winter Drive Protection	48
Washing	49
Drying	49
Waxing	49
Paint Codes	50
Tire Care	50
Bright Metal	50
Wheel Covers.....	50
Wheels - Polished Aluminum	51

Exterior Maintenance.....	51
Fiberglass	51
Roof Care & Seal Inspections.....	51
Sealant Types	52

F

Fabrics.....	54
General Care & Cleaning.....	54
Vinyl.....	54
Optima Leather & “O” Vinyl.....	55
Ultra-Leather.....	56
Fans	102
Automatic.....	102
Faucet Screens.....	122
Fire Extinguisher.....	44
Maintenance	44
Floors.....	56
Carpet Cleaning	56
Laminate Floor	57
Tile Floor.....	58
Fresh Water	119
Pressurized Water Fill	119
Gravity Fill.....	119
City Water Hook-Up	119
Front Axle	199
Wheel Bearings.....	199
Alignment	200
Lubrication Maintenance Safety	201
Steering Column	201
Drag Link	202
Center Link	202
Steering Spindles	202
Control Arm Bushings	202
Drum Brake Lubrication.....	202
Steering Gear	203

Fuel System.....	217
Fuel Requirements	217
Fuel Tank.....	217
Fuel Sender	218
Fuel Lines & Hoses.....	218
Fuel Filters	218
Furnace	84
Operation.....	84
Thermostat	85
If the Furnace Fails to Light.....	85
Fuses & Circuit Breakers - 12 Volt DC ...	159
Fuses & Circuits.....	170

G

Generator - 120 Volt AC	152
Pre-Start Checks.....	152
Starting the Generator	153
Stopping the Generator	153
Powering the Equipment.....	153
Generator Fuel	154
Resetting the Circuit Breaker.....	154
Generator Exercise.....	154
Glossary of Terms	5
GPS Navigation (Optional)	107
Grab Handle.....	95

H,I,J,K

Height Control Valves.....	194
Hitch	16
Using the Rear Receiver	16
Tow Plug Connection.....	19
House Electrical - Introduction	148
Hydraulic System.....	219
Hydraulic Reservoir	219
Power Steering Hydraulic Filter	220

Interior Care.....	53
Cockpit.....	53
Inverter	155
Providing AC Power with Inverter	155
Battery Charging with Inverter	155
Factory Default Settings	156
Battery Temperature Sensor.....	156
Power Assist.....	156

L,M,N,O

Leveling - Air	205
Automatic Air Leveling	206
Manual Air Leveling.....	206
Travel Mode.....	207
Service.....	207
Lights.....	166
Interior Halogen	166
Incandescent Light.....	166
Limited Warranty Transfer	7
Load Center - 120/240 Volt AC	157
Power Control System	157
Circuit Breakers	158
GFCI Breakers & Outlets.....	158
Lubrication Charts	226
Lubrication Maintenance.....	223
Maintenance Records	230
Mold & Mildew	63

P,Q

Pest Control	64
Propane Consumption	144
Propane Detector.....	137
Testing.....	138
Alarm	138
Maintenance	139
Propane Distribution Lines	144
Propane Emergency Procedures.....	139
Propane Fundamentals.....	141
Propane Hose Inspection	143
Propane Regulator	141
Manometers.....	142
Propane Safety Tips	145
Propane Systems	136
Propane Tank	139
Measurement.....	139
Tank Capacity	139
Tank Filling.....	139
Tank Operation.....	140

R

Rear Vision System	19
Refrigerator	72
Operation Specifics	72
Refrigerator Controls	73
8 Cubic Foot with Ice Maker	73
Icemaker.....	74
Refrigerator Alarm.....	74
Cooling Unit Fans	75
Doors.....	75
Storage Procedures.....	75
Interior Light.....	75
Service.....	76
Exterior Refrigerator Access Panel.....	76
Air in Propane Supply Lines.....	76

Reporting Safety Defects	4
Roof A/C.....	80
Thermostat	80
Maintenance.....	81
Roof A/C - Heat Pump (Optional).....	81
LCD Display	82
Remote Temperature Sensor	82
Air Conditioning - Roof.....	82
Fan Operation Only.....	82
Air Conditioner Operation	83
Heat Pump Operation.....	83
Air Conditioner Maintenance	83

S

Safety Terms	4
Satellite Systems	110
Satellite Prewire	110
KVH R6 (Optional):	112
Winegard Trav'ler (Optional)	112
Satellite Wiring	113
Seat Controls	103
Swivel Seats	103
Set-Up Procedures.....	21
Shock Absorber	205
Shore Power Hook-up.....	150
Shower.....	58
Slideout Operation	96
Extending & Retracting Slide Rooms.....	96
Lock Bar.....	97
Troubleshooting	97
Manual Override – Living Room.....	98
Manual Override - Bedroom.....	99
Smoke Detector	41
Operation.....	41
Testing.....	41
Maintenance.....	41
Troubleshooting	41

Sofa	104
Hide-A-Bed	104
Hide-A-Bed Air Mattress (Optional)	104
Solar Screen & Blackout Shade	102
Cockpit	102
Specifications	228
Tank Capacities	228
Engine Specifications	228
Chassis Fluid Capacities	228
Belts & Filters	228
Serpentine Belt Routing	228
Generator Specifications	229
Weight Ratings	229
Battery Specifications	229
Stainless Steel Surfaces	62
Starting Procedure	207
Normal Starting	207
Cold Weather	208
Steering Wheel & Column	175
Left Control	175
Cruise Control	175
Right Control	176
Wiper Function	176
Tilt & Telescope	176
Turn Signal Lever	176
Hazard Flashers	177
Storage	66
Short Term	66
Long Term	67
Winter Storage Checklist	68
Removal from Storage	69
Switches	179
Switch Legend	115
Systems Panel	114

T,U,V

Tires	28
Importance of Air Pressure	29
Load Inflation Table	29
Inspecting & Pressure	30
Air Pressure Checklist	31
Tire Support When Leveling	31
Tire Vibration	31
Tire Rotation	31
Tire Replacement	32
Storage of Tires - Long Term	32
Toilet	125
Pedal Flush	125
Electric Flush	126
Cleaning	127
Maintenance	127
Troubleshooting	127
Winterization	127
Towing Procedures	27
Disabling Parking Brake	28
Transfer Switch	152
Transmission	213
Shift Selector	213
Trans Service Icon	214
Check Trans Icon	214
Transmission Fluid	215
Trip Preparation	15
TV Antenna	108
Cable TV, Sat & Phone Connection	109
Front TV Operation	109
DVD Player (Optional)	109
TV Entertainment Components	108
Television (Front) Lockout Feature	108
Typical Electrical Layout	167

W,X,Y,Z

Wall Coverings	59
Warranty Information File	4
Washer/Dryer Stacked (Optional)	89
Washer	89
Test Cycle	89
Operating Instructions	90
Cleaning the Washer	90
Winterizing the Washer	91
Dryer	91
Operation	91
Dryer Maintenance	92
Waste Water Systems	123
Proper Waste Disposal	123
Do Not Put in Waste Holding Tanks	123
What to Put in Holding Tanks	123
Waste Drain Hose	123
Black Tank Flush	124
Water Filter	121
Water Heater	86
Water Heater Operation	87
Water Heater Bypass Valves	88
Water Pump	120
Water Pump Troubleshooting	120
Water Service Center	132
Water System Diagram	133
Water Systems	122
Troubleshooting	122
Disinfecting Fresh Water	122
Water Systems - Introduction	118
Water Tanks	118
Measurements & Calibration	118
Weighing The Motorhome	34
Tire Pressure	36
Scales	37
Four-Point Weighing	37
Weight Record Sheet	40

Wheel Mounting.....	33
Windows.....	62
Condensation.....	62
Window Treatments.....	63
Mini-Blinds.....	63
Day/Night Shades	63
Winterization.....	129
Using Air Pressure	129
Using Non-Toxic Antifreeze	130
De-Winterization.....	131
Wood Care	60